



**MARKHAMS**  
Maister: Peece.

Containing all knowledge  
belonging to Smith. Farrier. or  
Horse: leech. touching the  
curing of all diseases  
in Horses.

Devided into two bookes.  
The first. containing all  
cures Physicall.

The second. all belonging  
to Chyrurgery.

The Fifth. Impression. corrected  
and enlarged by the Author.

Geruase Markham.



Ren: Elstak sculpsit



740. e. 13.

17<sup>th</sup> Ed  
Markhams

# MAISTER-PEECE.

Contayning all Knowledge belonging to the Smith, Farrier, or Horse-Leech, touching the Curing of all Diseases in Horses : Drawne with great paine, and most approved experience, from the publicke practise of all the Forraine Horse-Marshals in Christendome ; and from the private practice of all the best Farriers of this Kingdome.

*Being divided into two Bookes.*

The First contayning all Cures Physicall : The Second all belonging to Chyrurgery ; with an Addition of 160. principall Chapters, and 370. most excellent Medicines, never Written of, nor mentioned in any Author whatsoever.

*Together with the true Nature, Vse, and Quality of every Simple spoken of through the whole Worke.*

Now the fifth time newly Imprinted, Corrected, and Augmented, with above thirty new Chapters, and above forty new Medicines that are most certaine and approved ; and heretofore never published, which you shall finde noted thus ↗.

---

Written by Gervase Markham, Gent.

---

*A just man hath pittie on his Beast, but the mercies of the Wicked are cruell. Prov. 12. 10.*

---

Imprinted at London by Nicholas and Iohn Okes, dwelling in the Well yard in little St. Bartholmews neere the Hospitall Gate. 1636.

8



MASTER-PEECE



431



TO THE

RIGHT HONORABLE AND MY NOBLE

LORD, Sir ROBERT

DORMER Baronet, Baron

Dormer of Wing, Viscount *Ascot*,

Earle of *Carnarvon*, and Master

of his Majesties Hawkes.

SIR:



Ver since I came to serve  
your Country in Millitary  
occasions; I accounted my  
selfe your servant, and to  
that end have made strong  
intimation:



## The Epistle Dedicatory.

intimation : But Multa Cadent , Many  
Haps binder Hopes : now left to mine own  
power , I could not finde any thing that  
could so well expresse me to your Lord-  
ship, cr shew you what I am , eyther in af-  
fection or Vertue , as the Dedication of  
this Booke , which contaynes me amply &  
fully adorned with the best of mine owne  
Feathers. And howsoever it may ap-  
peare to your Honour with an old counte-  
nance , both because my Selfe , the Title,  
and much of the matter is old, yet let mee  
give assurance unto your Noble goodnesse,  
that there is that newnesse of Truth, Art,  
and approoved experience which unto this  
day hath not beene discovered in any other  
Author. It is more (my noble Lord)  
then fifty yeares agoe since I beganne to  
saile in this Ocean , and to discover the  
fruitefull Trafficke of this needfull Art :  
Nor have I in the interim of Time beene

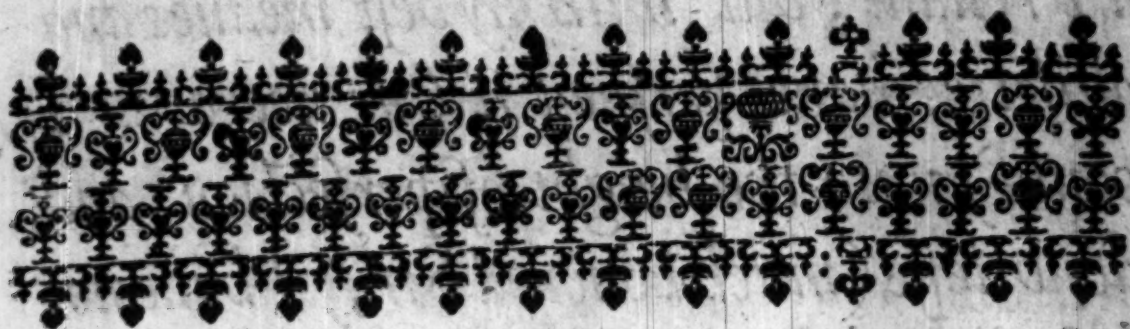
## The Epistle Dedicatory.

a Treuant, but with my best meanes and abilities haue persued it (as neere as I could) unto the height of perfection, and doubtlesse (much honored Sir,) I haue not lost all my labour, what I haue gained I haue here now newly inserted, and send it in all humility to kisse your Lordshipps hand; not as a materiall thing wortby your Study, but as a poore vertue that needes your defence. If it arrine with as good successe, as I transport it with sincere devotion, no doubt but the Worke will gaine luster, and my selfe shall finde that satisfaction which shall make me ever acknowledge my selfe

Your Honours humble devoted  
servant,

Gervase Markham.





# AN ADMONITION

*To the Reader, which I would  
wish him to read before he peruse  
the Booke.*

**T**Wo errors (gentle Reader) bath beene laid to my charge in the first Publication of this Booke, as namely a mistaking in the Table of Additions wanting direction: And the great Multiplicity, or heaping together of many Medicines for one grieve, without distinguishing their goodnesse, or foretelling the Practitioner on which to relye for his best profit and assurance.

*The*

---

To the Reader.

---

The first was but a venial escape in the printer, and may be forgotten in as much as it is in this Impression fully amended. For the second which is the multiplicity of medicines, I have for thy satisfaction to all those Medicines which of mine owne knowledge I know to be certaine and most approved, and to be the best of those which are coupled with it. I have in the Margent and over against the Medicine placed this marke ☞: As also to every new Addition and new Chapter, (never before Published,) I have in the beginning of the Chapter placed this Marke ☞: And for thy better furtherence in this Worke, I have likewise in the Table, to all the new Additions (which are the very excellencies of all my knowledge) placed this Marke also ☞: And this I have done for two Reasons.

First, to make this Worke which was  
one



To the Reader.

The faith-  
full Far-  
rier.  
The Epi-  
tomy.  
Cheap  
and good.

one of my first, and intituled my Master-peece, a true Master-peece indeede, and so exact in every part, that other stolne peeces and Pamphlets Cbristned in my name, and printed without my knowledge or assistance, with twice so many falshoods as pages, may bee knowne to bee both Bastards and Abortive: mistaking an ounce for halfe an ounce; three handfull for two: too much of one simple, and too little of another, of which whosoever maketh tryall, will, without bee bath had some knowledge already, indanger his horse; and therefore I have given many men notice my selfe of it; because they have taken one thing for another.

And that the bumbasted Title, and the illitterate and absurd Epistles, where neither the one nor the other of my invention: For I must most ingeniously confesse, that but to this booke, and my first, I was never  
so

To the Reader.

so happy as to bee made a Godfather.

And lastly, to wish all those which are abused by false and imperfect Printings, to come to this booke for Correction, which is a Cabinet that containes all and more then others struggle for, which worke I will iustifie upon my reputation to have been tryed by me, and hath wrought good effect; having these fifty yeares been a practioner in the same, and did never thinke to have disclosed these secrets that now I have; which time and my industry hath brought to light; and because old age groweth upon mee, and that the grave will bee never a whit the better; I thought therefore to divulge them to the world, rather then to have hid them in oblivion; desiring the Reader to give God the glory, and me but onely thanks and good wishes, so I rest,

Thine

G. M.



THE AUTHORS NAMES

from whom any thing in this Worke is  
collected, being the best Farriers.

These are Publicke.

Zenephon.

Russus.

Vegetius.

Pelagonius.

Camerarius.

Appolonius.

Grisson.

Grilli.

Horatio.

Gloria de Caballi.

Liball.

Stevens.

Wikerus.

La Brove.

Martine senior.

Albiterio.

Vinet.

Clifford.

Maskall.

Markham.

These are Private.

Martine Junior.

Webb.

Dallidoune Senior.

Dallidoune Junior.

Ausborne.

Stanley

Smith.

Dowling.

Day.

Barnes.

Mafeild.

Lupman.

Goodsoone.

Purfray.

White.

THE



THE  
**FIRST BOOKE**  
 CONTAINING ALL CVRES  
 Physicall, or such infirmities as being in-  
 ward, crave the Administration of Physicke,  
 and are called in Horse-Leach craft,  
*Horses Sickneses.*

CHAP. I.

*Of the naturall Composition of Horses bodies.*



T OUCHING the true Composition of  
 a Horses body, you shall under-  
 stand that it is (as the body of  
 Man,) compounded of thirteene  
 severall things; that is to say,  
 seven naturall, and sixe not na-  
 turall: The seven naturall are,  
*Elements, Temperaments, Humours, Members,*  
*Powers, or Vertues, Actions, or Operations, and*  
*Spirits*; all which bee called naturall, because  
 the naturall Profession and Excellency of every  
 sensible body, doth wholly depend upon them:  
 and hath his mooving no longer then they have  
 B power



power of working. The fixe which are not naturall, be the *Ayre, Meate and Drinke, Motion and Rest, Sleepe and Watch, Emptinesse and Fulnesse*, and the *Affects or Motions* of the minde; and these are called not naturall, becaule as (being rightly and in due order applyed) they preserve, sustaine, and fortifie the body; so being mis-governed, or used in any excessse, or disorder, they are the onely corrupt destroyers of the whole body; and of these thirteene simples which compound the Fabrick, or whole frame of the Body, I intend to speake severally.

## CHAP. II.

### *Of the foure Elements, their Vertues and Operations.*

**F**irst, for the exposition of this word *Element*, you shall understand, that it is the primere or first beginning of things, being of it selfe pure, uncorrupt, and simple; all things being first made thereof, and all things at the last being resolved into the same againe. It is also in it owne nature so bright, cleare, and without contraction of impurity, that it is not to bee discerned by any sensible eye whatsoever. Lastly, it is the least part or *Atomie* of that thing which is made, or proceedeth from it.

Now of these Elements which are the usuall first movers or beginners of all moving things, there are only foure in number, that is to say: *Fire, Ayre, Water, and Earth*; meaning not that *Fire, Ayre, Water, and Earth*, which is visible heere with us beneath, and which through the grossenesse thereof, is both palpable

pable and to bee discerned; but those which are mounted aloft, and through their purity invisible, and concealed from us, (for the other are compounded bodies, and not simple.) And of these perfect and distinct Elements you shall know, that the fire is the highest, as being fixed or joyned next unto the Moone, being hot and dry, yet naturally exceeding, or being most predominant, or ruling, in heate.

The *Ayre* is placed next unto the *Fire*, and is naturally light and hot, yet his predominant or chiefe quality is moyst.

The *Water* is adjoyned unto the *Ayre*; the disposition thereof being heavy and moyst; but his predominant or chiefe quality onely cold.

Lastly, the *Earth*, adjoyned to the *Water*, is the lowest, and it is most heavy and cold, but the predominant or chiefe quality thereof is onely drinesse.

Now for the vertues, properties, and operations of these foure Elements, you shall understand, that first the *Fire*, by meanes of his heat, moveth matter to generation, and stirreth up warmth in all living things; it is that which the Philosophers call *Heterogenea*, which is in the mixt bodies to separate things of divers kindes one from another, and also to joyne things of like kindes together, which they likewise call *Homogenea*. For by vertue of the fire the bones of Horses are separated from the flesh, the flesh from the sinewes, the sinewes from the veines, the veines from the arteries, the heart from the liver, the liver from the spleene, and so forth, in such sort as wee see the divers parts of the fuell wee burne, by



the vertue of the fire and heate to bee separated and divided one from another, as the vapour from the smoake, the smoake from the flame, and the flame from the ashes. And as in these things, so in many other things, as in the triall of Metals, and such like, where the fire by vertue of his heate separateth body from body, that is, metall from metall, and corruption from incorruption, gathering and knitting together every thing of one and the selfe same kinde. Besides, the vertue of the fire is to ripen, order, and digest things raw and undigested, mingling the dry with the moist, and opening the pores, that the ayre being somewhat more solid and grosse, may enter into the body: And lastly, it breatheth and moderateth the coldnesse of the Water and the Earth, so that it may not distemper or confound the Body.

Touching the vertue and operation of the aire, you shall understand, that by the moistnesse thereof it maketh the matter apt to receive shape, either naturall or accidentall, and by the helpe and assistance of the fire, bringeth the powers and influences of the Heavens and Stars into the inferiour Bodies, making the mixt bodies not onely subtile and penetrable, but also light and mounting, to the end they may neither be too grosse, nor too heavy. Secondly, the ayre through his moistnesse cooleth the burning heat of the heart, liver, and intrailles, as we daily see by the Office of the Lites and Lungs, which like a paire of bellowes draweth uncessantly fresh ayre unto the heart and inward members. And albeit the Ayre doth not seeme to the sense of the outward eyes,

eyes, to be any thing neerer so moyst as the Water, yet according to the opinions both of our Bookes and best Physicians, it is by much the moister, which is well proved (say they) by the abundant fluxe it containeth, which fluxe spreadeth it selfe so far abroad in the Body, that it filleth every empty part and corner thereof with the speciall properties and Characters of moistnesse; and by that reason is much harder to be kept within his owne bounds then the water is. Lastly, as the water was altered by God from his first naturall place, for the better profit both of Man and Beast; even so the Ayre, according to Schoole-mens opinions, was not left altogether in his first naturall disposition, least being over-moyst it should so confound and suffocate all Sence, that neyther Man nor Beast should bee able to breath or live.

Now for the Vertue and operation of the water, it is to be noted, that through the coldnesse thereof, it conglutinateth and bindeth in mixt bodies, both parts and members together, which bee of divers kinds; as bones with flesh and sinews, flesh with sinewes and bones, and sinewes with bones and flesh. Even as for a familiar example, wee see in the time of any great Frost, the strength of the cold how it bindeth things of divers kinds together, bringing into one masse or substance both Water, dirt, stones, strawes, stickes, and leaves: The water also with its coldnesse, doth temper and coole the inflammation and heate of the fire, gathering together those things which otherwise the violent heate would disperse and scatter abroad.



Lastly, for the vertue and operation of the Earth, it is through his drinesse in mixt Bodies, so to harden and fixe them together, that they may retayne their shapes, which otherwise by the power of the Ayre and Water, would bee so soluble and loose, that they could not hold together; as wee may see in Paste, Waxe, and such like, which whilest it is moist, will receive no print, but being once hardened, it retaineth any forme that is prest into it. And here is to bee noted, that according to the opinion of *Hypocrates*, when any sensible body dyeth, not onely every quality, but every substance and part makes his returne to the Element from whence it came; as heate to the Fire, moistnesse to the Ayre, coldnesse to the Water, and drinesse to the Earth. And thus briefly you see, that of these foure common Elements, or common beginners of things; the fire being hot, separateth; the ayre being moist, shapeth; the water being cold, bindeth; and the earth being dry, hardneth and retaineth. The use that you are to make of this knowledge, over and beside the composition of a naturall body, is, that when you finde any sicknesse or infirmity, which proceedeth from the fire, as inflammations of the body, or such like, that then you apply simples of the nature of the Aire or Water, which may moisten and coole the violence of the heate. If the infirmity proceede from the Ayre, as fluxe of blood, or too much moisture; then you shall apply simples of the nature of the fire or earth, whose heate and drinesse may disperse and harden such moisture. If the disease spring from the Water, as  
colds,

Colds, Rheumes, Apoplexies, and such like; then you shall seeke simples of the nature of the fire and ayre; that through the heate of the one, and the moist lightnesse of the other, all such cold, grosse, and solide humours may be dispersed. But if the disease proceede from the earth, as Manginess and Leprosie, or their like, that are dry and hardened infections, then you shall seeke simples of the nature of the fire onely, whose heate may dissolve and loosenthe ill knit, dry, and hard humours.

Thus you see too much heate is abated by coldnesse and moistnesse; too much moistnesse by heate and drinessse, too much coldnesse by heate and moistnesse, too much drinessse by heate onely.

Thus much of these foure common Elements, which begin all things living and unliving, sensible and unsensible; yet of sensible things, which live and have blood, there be other more necesse Elements, or beginnings, which are called proper Elements, or generation, as the ingendring seede, and menstruall blood, from whence every Beast taketh his first shape and beginning; and yet these proper beginnings have their whole dependancy and hanging upon the qualities of the first common beginnings already spoken of, which is moist, dry, hot, and cold; for without them they are nothing, nor can doe any thing.

**CHAP.**



**CHAP. III.**  
*Of Temperaments and their severall kindes, and  
 how far every way they extend in Horses.*

**T**Hese *Temperaments*, or *Temperatures*, which are the second things in a Horses composition, doe spring from the commixture of the foure Elements, and are nine in number, whereof eight are unequal, and the ninth is equal. Of the eight unequal, foure are simple, and those be hot, cold, moist, and dry, which Physicians call the first Qualities; and of these, the first two be Active, and the other two passive: the other foure are compound, and they be hot and moist, hot and dry, cold and moist, cold and dry. Now the equal temperament is divided into two, an universall and a speciall. The equal *Temperament universall*, is when the foure Elements are in an equal proportion, generally divided through the whole Body, Nature enjoying no more from the one, then from the other. The equal *Temperament especiall*, is when the Elements are proportioned according as every kinde doth most properly require, be it either Plant or Beast: In Plants, when every Plant hath that commixture of Elements which are proper to its kinde, the hot Plant being hot, the cold being cold, &c. Whereas contrariwise, to have a hot Plant cold, or a cold hot, to have Rue cold, or Sorrell hot, were a false and unequal commixture of Elements. So likewise of Beasts, that Horse, that Dogge, that Swine is said to have his due *Temperament*, when hee is of such temperature as is most

most proper unto his kinde; which onely is best discerned by his actions, or motions. As thus, the Horse is knowne to bee hot and moist by his lightnesse, swiftnesse, valiannesse, and long life; and also to bee of a temperate nature, in that he is easily tamed, docible, obedient, and familiar with the man. And so long as either Horse, or any other thing, continueth in the mediocrity and excellency of his proper temperament, so long we may truly judge him of a good temper and disposition; but if there be any over-flow of qualities, or excesse in his humours, as either in heat, coldnesse, moistnesse, or drynesse, then we say, he is either a hot cholericke horse, a cold dull Horse, a dry mischievous Horse, or a moist cowardly Horse, according to the over-flow of that quality which reigneth in him.

Againe, every Horse is said to have his due ~~Temperament~~ according to his age, and the Countrey wherein he is bred, and sometimes according to the time of the yeare wherein hee liveth. And thus a horse in his foale-age, which is till he be fixe yeares old, is naturally hot and moist. In his middle age, which is till twelve, more hot and dry then moist; and in his old age, which is past eighteene, more cold and dry, then either hot or moist. So likewise the Horses which are bred in Southerne parts, as eyther in *Spaine*, *Barbary*, or *Greece*, are naturally more hot then those which are bred either in the seven-teene Lands, *Germany* or *England*; neither is there any Horse which is in good state of body, that is so hot in the Spring-time of the yeare, as in the Summer, nor so cold in the Summer as in the Winter. All

which.

VI 13 V 3



which observations are with most curious diligence to be observed of every Horse-leach, when he goeth about to cure any sicknesse: for unlesse hee consider their natures and temperatures, and every other circumstance already declared, hee shall right soone bee deceived in the administration of his Physicke. Therefore I earnestly advise every Farrier, before hee give any drench or potion, first to enquire the kinde, race, and disposition of the Horse; next his age, then the Countrey, and lastly the time of the year: and so according to the truth thereof, to mixe his receipts.

It is most expedient also, for every Horse-leach to consider the second qualities, which are so called, because they take their beginnings, from the first qualities already declared; of which second qualities some be called palpable, or to be touched, as these, softnesse, hardnesse, smoothnesse, roughnesse, toughnesse, bracklenesse, lightnesse, heavinesse, thinnesse, thicknesse, smalenesse, grossenesse, & such other like. Some againe are not palpable, as those which appertain to hearing, seeing, and smelling, as noyses, colours, odours, and such like; and by observing well the second qualities, hee shall with much ease know whether the Horse bee disposed to any sickness or not, as shall be more largely declared hereafter in every particular Chapter.

### CHAP. IIII

*Of humours, and to what end they serve.*

**N**OW concerning *Humours*, which are the third composers of a Horses body, and so likewise of every

every other beast also; you shal understand that they are foure in number, that isto say, *Blood*, *Flegme*, *Choler*, and *Melancholy*. As touching blood, it is in its nature uncorrupted, and therefore hot and moyst, and sweet in taste, as participating of the elements fire and ayre. Flegme is cold and moyst, and either sweet or wallowish without any taste at all, as participating of the elements water and aire. *Choler* is hot and dry, and bitter in taste, as participating of the elements fire and earth. *Melancholy* is cold and dry, and in taste soure and heavy, as participating of the elements water and earth: so that these foure humours by their qualities, are every way allied unto the elements. For to speake briefly, and according to the manner of physicians, *Blood* is of the nature of the ayre, in being most predominant therein; *Flegme* of the nature of water, *Choler* of the nature of fire, and *Melancholy* of the nature of the earth. And albeit these humours are symbolized or mixt through every part of the body: yet every one of them aboundeth more in one part then in another, and have their places of residence absolute and peculiar to themselves, as *Blood* about the heart; *Flegme* in the braine; *Choler* in the liver; and *Melancholy* in the spleene. Now as these humours doe more or lesse abound, or have greater or lesser soverainty in the Horse: so is the beast naturally better or worse coloured, qualified, or disposed, as thus: That Horse in whom blood hath the greatest predominance, and may be called a Horse sanguine, is bright bay of colour, and in disposition pleasant, nimble, and of temperate or moderate motion. That horse in whom  
flegme



*Flegme* hath the greatest dominion, and may bee called a *flegmatick* horse, is for the most part of a milke white colour, and so consequently, slow, dull, and heavy. If *Choler* beare the greatest rule in his constitution, then is his colour commonly a bright Sorrell, and by that meanes of disposition hot, fiery, and of little strength. Lastly, if the earth have gotten power above the other Elements, so that hee may be called a melancholly Horse, then his colour is commonly a Mouse dunne, and his disposition cowardly, faint, and slothfull. But because these particularities are properly appertayning to the complexions of Horses, of which we shall have cause to speake more largely hereafter, I will not stand upon any greater relation; onely I give you thus much in conclusion: to understand that every one of these afore-said humors hath his proper use and end whereunto it serveth, as thus. *Blood* serveth more properly to nourish the body. *Flegme* giveth motion to the ioynts. *Melancholly* begetteth an appetite or longing to his meate. Now during the time that these humors doe possesse their naturall qualities, so long they are wholesome, and bee called by their simple names, without glosse or addition; but if by any mischance they bee disordered or corrupted, then they are unwholesome, and are no longer called by their simple names, but have other Epithetons annexed unto them, as *Melancholly blood*, *Salt flegme*, *Choler adust* or *burnt Choler*, and *fretting Melancholly*, whereof proceedeth many pestilent and dangerous diseases, as shall bee at large declared hereafter. And thus much for the state of humors.

And

## CHAP. V.

*Of Members, and their severall kindes.*

**T**Ouching *Members*, which are the fourth maine instrument in this great fabricke of a horses body, they are by Schoolmen divided into two parts: The first is called *Similiaria*, which is like, semblable, or one and the same thing: The other is called *Instrumentall*, and are contrary to the first.

*Members* alike are those, which being separated, or distributed into parts, yet every part thereof is alike in substance to the whole, neither altering in definition, appellation, or nature; as flesh, bone, sinew, and such like: for flesh being cut or incised into many parts, yet is every part still flesh, so reputed, and so called, as well as when it was in combination altogether; and as of this, so likewise may it bee said of bones, sinews, and their like.

Now for *Members Instrumentall*, they bee those which being made of parts semblable, and divided into parts; yet the parts are not alike, neither have all one name with the whole, as the head, legge, foot, and such like: for every part of the head is not called the head, nor every part of the legge, the legge; but have other appellations, as the brow, the temples, the knee, the fetlocke, &c. Now these instrumentall members, in doing of their offices and duties, are of much more perfection then the semblable members, wherfore Schoole-men have made amongst these instrumentall members, foure soveraignes or princes above the rest; that is, the *Braine*,  
the



the *Heart*, the *Liver*, and the *Stones*; of which the first three are the preservers of the singular body, and the fourth of the whole kinde: the first three giving motion and agitation to the body, the fourth generation and encrease to succeeding ages.

Now from these principall members, like branches from a well growne Tree, do spring other members which do them service: as from the braine springeth sinewes, whose office is feeling: from the heart arteries, whose office is sprightnesse, and lively-hood: from the liver veines, whose office is warmth and strength; and from the stones the seed-vessels, whose office is procreation and increase. Now forasmuch as from these doe likewise proceed a world of other members, as *Tendant*, *Ligaments*, *Lungs*, *Spleenes*, *Guts*, and such like; all which, in as much as the knowledge of them doth more properly belong to the office of the Chirurgical, then to the Physitian (though most necessary for both) I am here to advertise every studious Reader, that when hee shall have occasion to meddle with any member about a Horse, that he turne to the second booke in this Volume, which treateth onely of Chirurgery, and there he shall not onely finde every member and lineament in a Horse, but also the true Anatomies so lively demonstrated, that there shall bee nothing wanting to the perfecting of his understanding. And thus much in this place of Members.

## CHAP. IX.

*Of powers, and how a Horses Body is governed by them.*

**P**Owers, which by some are called *Virtues*, or principal faculties, and doe governe and control both the body of man or beast, and have the first place in this worke, are in number three, that is, the *power animall*, the *power vitall*, and the *power naturall*. The *power animall* is a vertue incident to the braine, which through the sinewes comming like little conduit-pipes from the braine, distributeth feeling and moving to all the parts of the body. The *power vitall* is a vertue belonging to the heart, which doth give life and spirit to all the body by meanes of the arteries; which proceeding from the heart, which is the chiefe fountain of naturall heat, carries in their little chanelles over the whole body, that ayre and spirituall blood, which makes it full of lightnesse and alacrity. The *power naturall* is a vertue belonging to the liver, which gives nourishment unto all the body, and to every part thereof, by meanes of the veines, which doe likewise proceed from the liver, like greater conduits, carrying the blood from the liver, which is the fountaine of blood, into every part of the body. Besides the *power naturall* containeth four other vertues, that is, the vertue *attractive*, which draweth food meet to sustaine the body, the vertue *retentive*, by which it retaineth and keepeth the food received: the vertue *Digestive*, where by it concocteth and digesterh the same; and lastly, the vertue *Expulsive*



*pulsive*, by which it expelleth excrements and superfluities. Thus these powers or vertues being of no lesse validity then you perceive by this discourse, it is the part and duty of every good Horse-leach, to have a most carefull and vigilant respect unto them, for if any of them faile, the horse cannot live. Therefore whensoever you see that either your horse refuseth his food, or that hee cannot retaine and keepe his food, but casteth it up againe, or that he doth not digest his food, but keeps it corruptly in his stomacke, or that hee cannot avoide his excrements in a naturall manner, but holds it burning in his body, take them for most certaine signes of mortall sickness: And thus much of powers or vertues.

#### CHAP. VII.

*Of Actions or Operations, and whereto they belong.*

**A**S touching *Actions or Operations*, which are the sixt columnne or pillar which doth uphold this naturall body of which we treat, they are not onely belonging, but even derived from the three powers immediately spoken of in the former chapter, as thus; The action and operation of the *Power animall* is to discern, to move, and to feele. Horses discern by meanes of the vertue *Imaginative, Discoursative, and Memorative*, whereof the first is placed in the forehead, the second in the middle of the braine, and the third in the hinder part of the head. All which are comprehended under the *Power animall*. Horses move by meanes of the vertue *Motive*, whose actions  
and

and operation is to stayne or let slacke the sinewes, whereby every member hath his moving. And Horses feeling is by meanes of the vertue *Sensitive*, whose action or operation is busied in the five senses, as to *See, Heare, Smell, Tast, and Touch*, and all these actions spring from the *Power animal*.

The action or operation of the *Power vitall*, is to restraine and loosen the heart, and the arteries, which proceed from the heart, which action, whether it be hurt or disturbed in a horses body, is easily known of every good *Farrier* or *Hors-marshal*, by the unequall beating of his pulse; that is to say, of the Arteries, which commeth downe from the heart to the insides of both his fore-legges a little below the knuckles of his shoulders, and likewise crosse both the Temples of his Head, a little higher then his eyes. And if any man be so simple, to imagine that the thicknes of the Horses skin shall be any impediment to the feeling of this motion, let him remember, that as a horses skin is thicker then a mans; so also are his arteries greater, and beate with more violence, and so consequently to be felt without any great difficulty.

The actions or operations of the *Power natural*, are to ingender, to increase, to nourish, to desire with appetite, to attract, to change, to digest, to retaine, and to expell, and many other of like kind. These actions therefore are carefully to be looked unto by every *Farrier* to the intent that he may learne by them, not onely the whole estate of a horses body, but also what particular member therof is evil affected, as thus: If either in your Horse you finde much forgetfulnesse, unnimblenes of his Limbes, or dulnesse upon correction, it



is a signe of *sicknesse* in the braine, and that the *Power animall* is evill affected. If you find that his *Pulses* do beate extraordinarily flow, or much too fast, it is a *signe* that his heart is grieved, and his *Power vitall* evill affected: but if you finde that he doth consume, pine away, and looseth his stomacke, it is a *signe* that his *Liver* is perplexed, all his inward parts out of frame, and his *Power naturall* evill affected.

Now you shall againe understand, that of *Actions* some be *voluntary*, some not *voluntary*.

The *voluntary* actions be those which a horse may either further or hinder, stay or let when themselves pleaseth, as the mooving of the Legges: for they may goe, stand, or lye downe at their owne pleasure.

The actions not *voluntary* are those which depend not upon the will of any Beast, but be done of their owne accord and naturally, as the mooving of the Heart and of the arteries, and the passage of the blood: the first whereof beateth *sleeping* and *waking*: and the other hath his course every minute. And thus much of the actions and operations.

#### CHAP. VIII.

*Of Spirits, and in what parts of the Horses body they remaine.*

**S**Pirits, which is the seventh naturall builder of this naturall Worke, are to be understood to bee that fine, pure, cleare, and ayery substance which is ingendred of the finest part of the blood, whereby the vertue of every principall member may visite all the other

ther parts of the body, making them to doe their duties according to the rules of nature. Now of spirits, according to the opinions of some Physitians, there are but two kinds, that is, the *Spirit animal*, and the *Spirit vitall*: The *Spirit animal* is that which giveth power of feeling and mooving to a Horse, and hath his resting place in the Braine, from whence through the Sinewes, it is dispersed into all other parts of the Body: and it is ingendred of the vitall spirit, being more vehemently wrought and laboured, and partly of continuall breathing: Even so it is partly preserved by the *Chaulc* of the braine, which doth hourelly water and nourish it.

The *Spirit vitall* is contained in the heart, from whence it floweth into every part of the body, being the chiefe cause of all naturall heate; and it is preserved and nourished both by breathing and blood.

To these two spirits, there be some *Farriers*, both *Italians* and *French*, which adde a third spirit, and call it the *Spirit naturall*, saying it hath his residence in the *liver* and the *veines*, but the two former are of such power, and have such superiority, that the body cannot live without them, nor have any being at all: wherefore it is the office of the *Farrier* continually, in all his Medicines to have ever some comfortable Simple, which may maintaine and keepe the Spirits in their full strength, lively-hood, and vertue. And thus much touching Spirits, and those seven naturall things which compact a naturall body.



## CHAP. IX.

*Of the sixe things not naturall, how they profit, and how they hurt.*

**H**AVING spoken of the naturall things whereof a horses body is compounded, it is needfull now that we speake something of the other sixe which be not *Naturall*, so farre forth as they concerne the office of the *Farrier*, and no further; for with other matters we have not to doe. The first thing then which is not naturall, yet preserveth a Horses body in good state, is the ayre, which being pure, sharpe, cleare, and piercing, giveth great life and nourishment to a horse: but being contrary, that is, grosse, thicke, and full of putrifaction, it cannot chuse but alter the good Habit of his body, and breed in him many infirmities. Therefore every *Farrier* shall have great respect to the ayre wherein a horse either liveth, or was bred in, as if a Horse that was bred in a hot aire, come to live in a cold, and through the exchange grow sicke, the *Farrier* shall by warme diet, close house, and moderate cloathing, bring his nature to a stronger acquaintance: Also when a horse exceedeth in any of the foure qualities, that is, in heate, moistnesse, coldnesse, or drinesse, it is best for him to live in that ayre which is contrary to that quality, wherein he exceedeth. Lastly, in many diseases, the change of the aire is most wholesome, as shall be shewed at large in the particular diseases.

For the meate and drinke of a Horse, which is the second thing not naturall in a horses composition, it is

is not to be doubted, but whilst it is sweet, cleane and good, as Bread well made and baked, dry Oates, dry Beanes, dry Pease, sweet Hay, sweet Straw, or short grasse, so long it nourisheth and preserveth the horses body: But if it be fusty, raw, corrupt and uncleane, or if he eat Tares, Fitches, Rye, or Barley, then must he needs be unsound, and full of infirmities: Therefore the *Farrrier* shall bee carefull to keepe him from all such foods as breed naughty evill Blood; as for his water, the more pure, it is the better, and the more muddy, thicke, and pleasant, so much the more unhealthfull.

Now for this moving and rest, that is, either his travell or standing still, which is the third thing not naturall in a horses composition, doubtles they be great *preservers* of a horses health; for as moderate exercise dissolveth grosse humours, ingendreth appetite, and addeth strength unto the limbes, so likewise indifferent Rest causeth digestion, comforteth the Sinews, and maketh the heart chearful against ensuing labor. But on the contrary part, immoderate travell or exercise, when a horse is ridden beyond his strength, breedeth many dangerous and mortall sicknesses, as the foundring in the *Body*, the Consumption of the *Lungs* and *Liver*, molten grease, and such like, besides the pissing of blood, manginess, farby, and such like: All which inward diseases crave strong *Purges*, and the outward *sharpe* and *corroding* medicines. Immoderate Rest, which is when a Horse doth stand long still without any Exercise. Feeding foule and grossly is as great an enemy to a horses health as the other: for it congregateth and bindeth together all sorts of



ill humours, breeds corruption in the Blood, rottenness in the flesh, and generally as many diseases as any ill diet whatsoever.

The sleepe or watch of a Horse ( which is the fourth thing in our Composition ) is so necessary a comfort to a horse, that he cannot live without it ; it is the greatest moover of digestion : and so consequently gives comfort to the whole body. For whilest the Horse sleeps, the *power animal* doe take their rest, which otherwise would be over-wearied, and neither able to discharge their duties, nor to continue their actions and operations, which is the giving of feeling and moving only : and whilest a horse doth sleepe, the powers naturall have more liberty to doe their worke, in concocting the meate, and comforting the body ; In so much, as I account sleep to be the onely quieting of the senses, ordayned by Nature to ingender strength. Sleepe is begotten by sweete, fatty, and grosse vapours, ( and not by their Contraries ) which are raised from the heart to the braine ; with the coldnesse of which braine, those vapours being congealed and thickned together, doe stop the pipes of the sensitive spirits, so as they cannot relort to the instruments of the Senses, to give the body feeling & moving, wherby the body at that time is deprived of those motions. And according as those vapours do more or lesse fill the pipes, so is the horses sleep more or lesse sound and undisturbed, but when this sleep shal at any time grow into excesse, & you shal perceive a horse to sleep beyond both nature and custome, then you shall know that such sleepe cometh from an evill habite of the body, and is a  
signe.

signe either of a *Lethargy* and a numbnesse of the spirits, or else that he hath some inward griefe and pain in his limbs when he standeth; which being eased by lying, makes him covet a continual rest and sleeping. Now for the watch of a horse, because it is the meere contrary to sleepe, there needs little to be said more then this, that as the excesse of the one sheweth the want of the other, so the unnaturall working of eyther shewes the evill state of a horses body, and gives the *Farriers* warning to expect ensuing sicknesse.

Now for emptinesse and fulnesse ( which is the fifth not naturall Compositor ) forasmuch as it is onely an adding to, and a taking away, some *Farriers* have held opinion, that all physick belonging to a horses body, consisteth in them two only; and truely I am of this minde, that whosoever can take away corruption and adde perfection, shall without doubt ever kepe an able and substantiall body. But to our purpose of this fulnesse there are two sorts, the one fulnesse by excesse of humours, the other fulnesse by excesse of meat; either of which perturbing the spirits, are the grounds of sicknesse. Againe, excesse of humours are of two kinds, the one an equall encrease of all manner of humors gathered together, and the other a particular excesse either of too much *Melancholy flegme*, or other watrish humours whatsoever, the first being tearmed an abundance of humours, the latter an excesse of evil juyce or nutriment: lastly, there is fulnesse in quantity, and fulnesse in quality. Fulnesse in quantity is when a horse is full of blood, or any other simple humour. Fulnesse in quality, is when any of those humours are too hot, or too

C 4

cold,



Cold, too grosse, or too thiane. Now for emptinesse, as all diseases of fulnesse must bee cured by it onely, so all diseases of emptinesse must be healed by fulnesse, as by taking of *Blood*, by *Purge*, *Friction*, *Scarification*, *Boxing*, *Sweating*, *Bathing*, and a world of such like, as shall be very largely set forth hereafter.

Lastly, touching the affections of a horses minde, you shall understand, that so far forth as the sensitive Soule doth stretch, so far they have sence and feeling of affections, as namely, to love, to hate, to be angry, to rejoyce, to be sorry, and to feare: For all which there needs no great *Apology*, sith we have it in daily experience: as who seeth not the love of some Horse to their Keepers, their hate to strangers, their anger in their fights, their joyes in their prides and wooings, their sorrows in their sicknesses, and their feares unto their Riders: now these affections, sith many times they are the grounds of strange motions in the body; therefore they ought carefully to bee looked unto by the *Farrier*, and that the Horse be not over-oppressed with any of them; especially feare and hatred, the first whereof compelleth the blood and spirits to fly to the inward parts, and to leave the outward without sence or feeling: and the latter makes him to be unquiet, fierce, and raging, both together breeds distemperature in a Horse, and those distempers ingender mortall sicknesses. *And thus much for these sixe things, being held not naturall in a Horses composition.*

## CHAP. X.

## Of Horses complexions.

**H**AVING spoken of those thirteene Naturall and not naturall things, whereof a Horses body is compounded, we will now in a somewhat more particular manner speake of the complexions of horses, which is one of the most necessary Faces that a *Farrier* can behold, both for the judging of a horses infirmities, and also for the true compounding of his medicines for every disease: Therefore you shall first understand, that by the colour of the Horse you shall ever judge his complexion: For looke which of the Elements is most predominant in him, for that Element we draw his complexion, as thus. If he participate more of the fire then of any of the other Elements, then we hold him to be a cholerick Horse, and his colour is eyther a bright *forrel*, a *coale black* without any white, or an *Iron gray* unchangeable, that is such a Gray as neither will ever turne a Daple gray, a White, or a Flea-bitten, and these Horses are of nature *light, hot, fiery*, and seldome of any great strength: these Horses are much subject to pestilent Fevers, Yellows, and inflammations of the *Liver*. Therefore every *Farrier* shall be carefull in the composing of any medicine for such a Horse, to purge choler, yet very moderately, and not with any extraordinary strength in the potion or Drench: Because the Horse being in his best strength, not reputed strong, should you apply any violent thing to him that little strength being abated, there were great danger



danger in the confounding of the whole body.

If the horse participate more of the aire then of the other Elements, then is he of a sanguine complexion, and his colour is either a bright Bay, or darke Bay, which hath neither skouling Countenance, mealy mouth, nor white flanke, or a white flea-bitten, white lyard like Silver, or a black with a white *Star*, white rach, or white *foote*. These horses are of nature *pleasant, nimble, free*, and of a good *strength*. The Diseases to them most incident, is Consumption of the *Liver, leprosie, glanders*, or any disease that is infectious. They are of a good strong constitution, and may endure strength in their Medicines, especially any thing that cooleth the Blood.

If the Horse participate more of the water then of the other Elements, then is he of a flegmatick complexion, and his colour is either a milk-white, a yellow *Dun, Kiteglewd*, or a *Pydepall*, in whom there is an equall mixture of colours, that is, as much white as of the other colour: Otherwise if the Bay, the Blacke, or the Dun exceed the White, he is said to be of that complexion of which the colour is greatest. These horses are of nature slow, and apt to lose flesh: The Diseases which are most incident unto them, are *colds, head-ache, rheumes, staggers*, and such like. They are able to endure the reasonable strength of any Medicine, because the abundance of *flegme* which is in them, sufficeth both Nature, and the potion to worke upon: All cold simples are to them exceeding hurtfull, so are also they which are violently hot in the third degree: the first because it bindeth too soone; the latter because it disperseth too  
sud-

suddainly, therefore simples of a moderate meane are the best.

If the Horse participate more of the earth then of the other Elements, then is he of a melancholy complexion, and his colour a *Mousse-dunne*, *Russet*, *Chestnut*, *Ashie gray*, *darke Bay*, with *mayly mouth*; *red* or *white* flanke, or a *reddish Bay*, having long white haire, like *Goats* haire, growing on his legs. These Horses are of nature heavy, and faint hearted: The diseases to them most incident, are inflammations in the *Spleene*, *Frenzie*, *Dropfie*, and such like. They are commonly of better strength then they will suffer to appeare by their actions, and are able to endure the strength of any reasonable medicine: all cicatrizing and dry simples are hurtfull unto them; the cold and moist are the most profitable.

Having thus shewed you these foure Complexions, *Cholerick*, *Sanguine*, *Flegmatick*, and *Melancholy*, together with their qualities and strengths, you shall understand now that amongst *Farriers* there is another Complexion, or fifth Constitution, which is called the composition or mixture of complexions: That is, whensoever a Horse doth participate of all the foure Elements equally, and in due proportion, none being greater or lesser then another, and this complexion of all other is the best, and most perfect, and the Horse which is of this Complexion, is ever of one of these colours; that is to say, either a faire Browne Bay, dapled or not dapled, a Daple gray, a Blacke full of Silver haire; or a faire Roane Red or Blacke. And these Horses are of nature most excellent, most temperate, strongest, gentlest, and most health--



healthfull : though they may have any disease, yet are they naturally inclined to no Disease : But what infirmity soever falleth unto them, is meerely accidentall, and not through any over-flow of naturall distemperature. All medicines must be compounded for them according to the nature of the sicknesse, and the time of their languishment : For if the sicknesse be young and new bred, then are they able to receive any well composed Receipt ; but if it be old, and the inward Powers and Faculties feebled, then you must be carefull to helpe *Nature*, by adding to every medicine of what nature soever, some *simple* of Comfort, that as evill humours be cleansed, so strength may still be repaired and maintained. And thus much for Complexions.

## CHAP. XI.

*Of inward sicknesse, the causes and severall kinds thereof.*

**S**ith I have already passed over all those things which have a naturall & perfect working in a horses body, and do maintaine, uphold, and preserve the same in good state and health, except accidentally they be encountred and crossed by some excesse, either in diet or in exercise : it shall now be meet, that we begin to speake of the things which bee contrary and against nature, which are all those things whereby at any time the healthfull estate of the horses body is any way impeached : and they be three in number, that is, the *Causes*, the *Sicknesse*, and the *Accidents* which follow every sicknesse.

Now

Now the *Causes* of sicknesse are all unnaturall affects, and evill dispositions, which going before, doe as it were by violence, bring sicknesse after them: and of these causes there be two sorts, some internal, some externall: The internal be those which breed within the body of the Horse, as evill humours, evill obstructions, and evil juyce. External are they which communicate with the outward parts of the body, as heat, cold, wormes, and such like, of which I shall speake more in the second booke: And for so much as I intend at the beginning of every particular disease, to shew the cause of that disease, I will at this time speake no more of that subject.

Now for *sicknesse* it selfe, which is any thing that is contrary to nature, it is divided into three generall kinds: the first, an *Evil temperature*, the second, an *evill state and composition*; and the third a *loosening or dividing of an unity*. Now of these two latter, I intend not to speake in this place, because they appertain to Chirurgery, which I reserve for the second booke: But for the first kinde, which is an evill temperature, it is taken two-fold, that is, either simple or compound: Simple, when one quality only doth abound, or exceed, as to be too moist, or too dry: compound, when more qualities then one do grow into excesse, as for a Horse to bee too hot, and too dry, or too cold, and too moyst. Againe, sicknesse are sayd some to be long, as Consumptions, Glanders, and such like, which linger and weare a Horse away by small degrees. Some short, as the *Staggers*, *Yellowes*, *Anticor*, and such like, which as soone as they be perceived, so soone they be mortall.

Now.



Now of inward sicknesses, some do occupy all the whole body, some but particular parts: those which occupy the whole body, are *Fevers*, the *Pestilence*, *Convulsions*, and such like: those which occupy parts or members, are colds which annoy the head; surfeits which perplex the stomach: and so likewise all outward infirmities proper to every particular member, as *Splents* upon the Legges. *Spavens* on the Hoofes, *Pearles* in the eyes, and such like, as shall be amply shewed hereafter. And thus much for sickness and the severall kindes thereof.

## CHAP. XII.

*Of the signes of sickness, and of what nature it consisteth,*

**T**He signes and faces by which sickness is discerned, are many, and almost numberlesse: yet in the best sort that I may, I will shew you such, and so many, as shall amply serve for any mans understanding. Know then first that there be, according to the rules in Physick, foure speciall wayes to judge of inward and outward infirmities. First, by accidents, as by the shape, number, quantity, and place of the member grieved: for if it carry not his true proportion, or be more or lesse in number or quantity, or out of his proper place, when questionlesse it is diseased. Secondly, by alteration of the quality, as when it is eyther too hot, too cold, too moyst, or too dry. Thirdly, when any member of the body is hindred from doing his Office; as when the Eye cannot see, or the foot cannot tread. And fourthly, by excrements,

ments, as by his dunge or Urine. But forasmuch as in the speculation of these qualities, many of the ignorant sort may be either amazed, distract, or deceived, and that my desire is to give an absolute satisfaction to all sorts of people, I will briefly and plainly shew you the most undeceivable signes of all sorts of inward sicknesses, as thus: If a horse be slower in labour, or duller to the *Spurre* then hee hath bene accustomed; if hee bee shorter breathed, if his eares hang downe more then they were wont: if his haire be more staring: if his Flankes be more then usually hollow: if hee burne betwixt his Eares, or about his Pasternes: if in travaile his stomacke faile him; or his Mouth, that in labour was usually wont to bee Foaming become dry: all these are most apparant signes of inward Sicknesse.

When a horse holdeth downe his head, which was wont to be of a cheerefull countenance, it is a signe eyther of a *Fever*, *Head-ach*, or else *Foundring* in the *Body*.

If a horse dimme of sight which was cleare sighted, is a signe either of *Head-ach*, the *Staggers*, or *Sore eyes*.

When a horse turneth his head backward to the place grieved, if it bee to the *right side*, it is a signe of *obstructions* in the *Liver*: but if he turne it downe to his belly, that it is a signe eyther of *Cholicke*, *Bots*, or *Wormes*.

When a Horse hath Water running from his mouth, it is a signe of the *Staggers*, or *wet cough*.

If a horses breath stinks, or foule matter issues from his Nostrills, it is a signe of an *Ulcer* in the Nose or Head:



Head; but if the matter be white, then it is a signe of *Glanders*: if the matter be blacke, then it is a signe of the mourning of the *Chine*; but if the matter bee yellow, then it betokens the Consumption of the *Liver*: but if hee cast little lumpes out of his mouth, then it betokens the Consumption or rottennesse of the *Lungs*.

If a horses body and breath be hot, it is a signe of a *Fever*, and heate of the stomack, if therewithall he forsake his meate, it is a signe of inflammation in his *Liver*, and either of dry or moist *Yellowes*.

If the temple of a horses head be very hollow, it is a signe either of the *Strangle* or old age.

Shortnesse of breath, and a beating flanke, is a signe either of a *Fever*, or the *Strangle*, but if the passage of the throat be stopped, it is a signe the filme of the *Lungs* is broken, and the *Spleene* troubled, or else broken-winded.

If any thing lye on both sides the fore-head, which may be felt beat, it is a signe of the *Staggers*.

If there be any swelling betweene the eares, it is a signe of the *Pole-evill*: swelling under the eare, is a signe of the *Vives*; and swelling in the mouth, a signe either of *Canker*, *Flaps*, *Lampasse*.

Swelling under the throate is a signe of the *Glanders*; and swelling about the tongue roots, a signe of the *Strangle*: But if there bee about the tongue roots nothing but little small knots, like waxe kernels, then it is a signe but of cold onely.

Swelling on the left side, is a signe of a Sicke *Spleene*. Swelling in the belly and legs a signe of the *Dropsie*, and swelling in the flanke of *Cholicke* onely.

To

To cough, or to offer to cough, is a signe either of the Glanders, of the Mourning of the Chinc, of a feather in the weasand, of the wet or dry Cough, of the filme broken, of the dry malady, of a consumption, or of foundring in the body.

Staggering is a signe either of a *fever*, of the Staggers, or of swaying in the necke: but if he stagger, or rolle behind onely, then it is a signe either of foundring in the body, or of paine in the Kidneys.

Trembling is a signe of a *Fever*, or of foundring in the body: and here is to be noted, that a horse which trembleth after the drinking of cold water, hath, during that time of trembling, a very certaine fit of an Ague, and if any *Farrier* or other, will but observe it, he shall find that the horse, after he hath done trembling, will burne and glow in as great extreanmy at least an houre and an halfe after; and some horses after their burning, will sweat also.

The hollownesse of a horses backe is a signe of the dry malady, or the Dropsie.

Haire-staring is a signe either of a cold *Stomacke*, or of foundring in the body, but generally of a cold, or want of Cloaths.

If a horse stale with much paine, it is a signe either of foundring in the body, the winde *Cholicke*, or the Stone: and if the Urine which comes from him bee yellow, it is a signe of the Glanders, but if it be blackish and thicke, it is a signe of paine in the Kidneys.

Leanneffe and gauntnesse is a signe of Hide-bound, or of the Consumption, of the dry malady, of foundring in the body, inflammation of the liver, the yellowes, *Cholicke*, or *Wormes*.



Laxativenessse, or loosenessse of the body, is a signe of a hot Liver.

Costivenessse in the body is a signe of dry Yellows, or of diseases in the Gaule.

If a horses dung stinke, it is a signe of a hot Liver: if it have no smell, then of a cold Liver; but if it be undigested, then either of a Consumption, or of a dry Malady.

If a horse go stiffe, it is a signe either of wrinching, hiping, stifling or foundring either in body or legs: if he goe crouching behind, and stiffe before, then the griefe is in his fore-legs, but if he goe onely weake behinde, then is the griefe in his hinder Legges onely.

If a horse desire extraordinarily to lye downe on his right side, it is a signe of heat in the Liver. If on the left side, then of a diseased Spleene, if he be oft up and downe, finding no rest, then it is a signe of Bots, Wormes, Cholicke, or griping in the belly: if when he is downe he spread himselfe abroad, it shewes the Dropisie, if he groane when he is downe, it shews either a sicke Spleene, moist Yellows, Cholicke, Bots, or filme-broken: if he be not able to rise when hee is downe, then either mortall weaknesse, foundring in the body or legs.

To be troubled with much winde, is a signe either of griefe in the Spleene, or losse of much blood.

If a horse forsake his meate, it is a signe either of a Fever, Head-ache, Strangle, Staggers, Consumption, or dry Malady, Anticor, foundring in the body, a hot and consumed liver, moist Yellows, Cholicke, or the Wormes, but if when he forsaketh his provender, he  
doth

doth as it were, chavell or chaw a little Hay, and in his Chawing doth make a certaine sharpe noise in his Mouth, as if his tongue could not well part from the rooffe without a kind of chanking, it is then a certaine *signe* that the Horse is troubled with the falling of the Palate of the Mouth, a disease which onely commeth by over-much travaile, or too fore a burthen.

If a horse desire to eat much, and drinke little, it is a *signe* of a cold Liver, but if he desire to *drinke* much and eat little, it is then a *signe* either of a *Fever*, rotten *Lungs*, heat in the *Stomacke*, heate in the *Liver*, or the dry *Yellows*.

If a horse both *eat* and *drinke* with an extraordinary greedinesse, it is *signe* of rotten *Lungs*, or a diseased *Spleene*.

Lazy and heavy going, contrary to true nature, is a *signe* either of a *Fever*, *sicke Spleene*, *Yellows*, or else obstructions of the *Liver*.

If a horse strike with his foot at his belly, it is a *signe* of the *Cholicke*: but if when hee *strikerh*, hee *fiske* with his tayle also, then it is either *Bottes*, or rough *Wormes*.

If a horse be scabby, and ulcerous all over his body, and about his necke, it is a *signe* of the *Mangy*: if it bee an Ulcer full of *knots*, creeping alongst a veine, it is the *Farcy*: if spreading abroad only in one place, it is a *Canker*: if the Ulcer be hollow and crooked, it is a *Fistula*: but if it be a spongy Wart, full of blood, it is then an *Anbury*.

If a horses tongue hang out, and be swolne, it is a *signe* of the *Strangle*.



To conclude, if a horse in health beate short, thicke, and fast in the flanke, it is a signe of *sicknesse* in the Lungs and Lights, which wee call *Broken winded*, with a world of other such like signes and tokens, as shall be more amply declared in every particular Chapter.

## CHAP. XV.

*Generall Observations in the physicking of Horses.*

**A**fter you can by these Signes and Characters, judge and approve either the health or sicknesse of a Horse, it is then necessary that you learne some generall Rules and Observations which belong to the *Physicking* of a Horse; lest that either by your rashnesse, unskilfulnesse, or uncleannesse in what you go about to do, you commit errors more grosse then the Medicine you administer hath power to doe good. Know then first, that whensoever you goe about to give your Horse any inward potion or drench, you must first take very carefull heed, that your *drinke* be no more then *Milk* warme: for there is nothing more mortall to a horse then the scalding of his stomacke. Next, you must be very carefull that you give the Drench easily and gently, least in making too much haste, the drinke passe into his wind-pipe, and so force him to an extreame coughing, and almost suffocate him: which if it doe, you must then let his head loose, and walke him up and downe till the passion be past. Lastly, you shall observe, in giving a Drench, to draw out the horses tongue

tongue before you put in the horne, and then presently let it loose againe: for that will compell him to swallow whether he will or no. And this is principally to be used when you give your Horse pilles, as Butter and Garlicke, Butter and Sanders, or Butter and Saven. Also, every drench will worke the better, the longer you keepe the sicke horse fasting, both before and after his medicine; wherein is likewise to be observed, that moderate exercise (as gently walking, or trotting up and downe, according to the horses strength after his drench received) is most wholesome, and makth the medicine worke a great deale the better.

You shall likewise observe if your horses *sicknesse* be a Fever, to mixe alwayes your simples either with warme water, with hony, or with oyle; but if the disease be Coughes, Rhumes, or any thing that proceedeth of cold causes, then you shall mixe your simples with good Ale, or Wine; and if your horse be brought low and weake with *sicknesse*, then you shall mixe your simples with Milke or Egges.

You shall also observe, that in blood-letting, you must take but halfe so much from a young Colt, as from an old Horse, and but the fourth part from a yearling foale: also in letting blood, you must carefully regard the age and strength of your horse, taking more or lesse according to his ability of body. Lastly, letting of blood is either to divert *sicknesse* and preserve *health*, or to refresh and coole the spirits, or to diminish blood, or else to purge grosse and bad humours.

Observe before you let your horse blood, first moderately



derately to chafe or exercise him : then let him take rest a day before his letting blood , and three dayes after , not forgetting that *Aprill* and *October* are the two principall seasons of the yeare for that purpose, except urgent occasion be ministred.

Observe whensoever you Rake your horse with your hand (which is to draw his Ordure out of his Fundament when he cannot dung ) that then first you annoint all your hand with Sallet-oyle , or Butter : the like you must ever doe when you put up any Suppositary ; but when you administer any Glister, you shall then but anoint the Glister-pipe only. Many other observations there are, which be more particular, and those you shall finde annexed to the severall cure of every disease. Thus much then of these generall observations.

#### CHAP. XIII.

##### *Of the Urine and Excrements of a Horse.*

**A**fter you have made your memory acquainted with the Signes and observations before specified, and so in the end finde a Horse, which by the demonstration of some of these Signes appeareth most certainly to be sick and diseased : My advice is then (if conveniently you may , and that the violence of the Sicknesse doe not urge the contrary) that before you administer any thing unto him , in any case you see his urine, from which urine you shall reape these knowledges.

First, if the urine of a horse be of a pale, whitish, yellow colour, like unto Amber, and therewithall somewhat

what strong smelling, and not very cleare, then you shall be assured that the Horse is in good state of body, strong and healthfull; but if it bee extraordinary white, and as it were creamy, then it is a signe the horse hath weake Reines, and is subject to the Stone, and the stopping of the Kidnies.

If the urine of a horse be somewhat high coloured, bright and cleare like Lamber, and not like Amber, or like a cup of strong March-beere; then it sheweth the Horse hath inflammation in his blood, and that hee hath either a Fever, or else some great surfeit; but if it be red like blood, then is his inflammation more great, and his surfeit is onely an over heate, taken by over-riding; insomuch that if present remedy be not applyed, either by scouring, or other healthfull physicke, the Horse cannot chuse but fall into some mortall sicknesse.

If the urine of a horse be of a pale greenish colour, thicke and slimy, it is a signe of a weake backe, and consumption of the Seed.

Lastly, if the horses urine be high coloured, yet therewithall cloudy, and full of blacknesse, then it is a Signe that the Horses sicknesse is mortall, and hardly to be preserved by any Physicke; but if the Blacknesse and Cloudinesse of the urine doe not remaine, (as it were) bound up together in one body, but is broken and dispersed, shewing many Clouds in one Water, then it is a signe that the violence of the sicknesse departeth away, and there is great hope, by good government, that the Horse wil recover his health, as at the beginning.

Now for the Excrements or dung of a horse, which



is no lesse worthy of note then the urine. You shall first understand, that if his dung be ever of alliance with his food, I meane either in part or whole, coloured like unto that he eateth, as thus for example: If your horse go at grasse, his dung wil ever be *green*, and the brighter such *greenenesse* is, and being in a meane betweene hardnesse and softnesse, the sounder and in more perfect estate the horse standeth; but if the greenenesse be bright, yet the ordure so soluble and loose, that it commeth from the horse like water, then you shall understand, that either the horse hath eaten up some feather, or else hee hath an inward coldnesse both in his stomacke and bowels.

If a horses dung be of a reasonable thicknesse, neither too costive nor too soluble, yet the greenenesse inclined to some blacknesse, it is a signe that the horse hath a hot stomacke, and is easily subject either to the yellows or staggers.

If the horses dung be in round hard pellets, and of a blackish greene colour, like the dung of a sheepe, or a Deere, then it is without faile, that the horse hath had some great furfeit, either by over-riding, or by ill food, or else is certainly possesst either of the yellows or fever, or foundred in the body.

Now if your horse be fed onely upon straw, then his colour will be of a high coloured yellow, rather costive then soluble, and the graine thereof long, and not well couched together: And all these be good signes of great healthfulnesse, but if the colour bee inclined to rednesse, or if it be exceeding dry without moysture; or if it be thinne, like the dung of an Oxe or Cow, they all be apparant signes of inward sicknesse;

sicknesse; but if the rednesse turne to blacknesse, and that his ordure doth loose the strength of its smelling, then it is a great signe of death and mortality.

If your horse be fed with hay and provender, then your perfect and sound dung will bee of a browne yellow colour, the graine somewhat long, yet moyst and well fixt together; but if the brownnesse turne to rednesse, it is a signe of distemperature; and if it turne to blacknesse, then of death. Now for the smell of this dung, you must understand, that the more provender you give, the greater will be the smel, and the lesse provender the lesse smel.

Lastly, if you feed your horse onely upon provender, as bread, oates, and such like, then the dung which shewes a perfect and a sound body, will be of a pale yellow colour, like course honey, firme, like a thicke salve, having within it, when you tread upon it or breake it, little white graines, like those which are in sope; or if the dung be harder, like the ordinary ordure of a man, it is not amisse. For both be signes of health and strength; and if the dung looke redde, then it is a signe that the horse hath taken some inward heat, and his stomacke and bowels doe rest still inflamed.

If his dung be browne and slimy, or if it shine and looke greasie, it is a signe that he hath had some of his inward grease molten, and that it resteth and putrieth in his body; but if with his dung you see him voyd great clods and lumps of grease, then you may bee assured that his grease was molten; but nature hath overcome infirmity, and the worst danger is  
past



past already; but if the dung be matter undigested, so that you may either perceive therein whole cornes, or whole bits of bread, it is a signe the horse hath either a late surfeit, or is entring into a mortall consumption. Lastly, if his dung be blacke, or have lost the *Smell*, it is an apparant Signe of Death. And thus much for Urine and Excrements, and the severall Knowledges attained by them.

### CHAP. XV.

*Of Fevers in generall, and the divers kindes thereof.*

**T**Hat horses have Fevers, and those Fevers of divers and fundry natures, there is nothing more certaine, as by strict observation may dayly be perceived, especially when either we use much travel, or disorderly diet: for questionlesse from these two, and none other heads, doe spring most Fevers whatsoever. But first, that I may give you an account what a horses Fever is, you shal know that it is an unnaturall and immoderate heate, which proceeding first from the heart, disperseth it selfe not onely through all the arteries, but even the veines of a horses body, and thereby hindreth all the actions and wholesome motions of the same. Now of Fevers some *Farriers* make three sorts, the first, those which breed in the spirits, being inflamed and set on fire beyond the ordinary course of nature: The second, those which breed in the humours, being likewise distempered by heate: And the third, those which breed in the firme parts of the body, and are continually

usually hote. Now I for your better memory, will divide them onely into two parts, that is to say: Ordinary, and Extraordinary. The ordinary *Fevers* are all those which are bredde eyther in the spirits, or in the humours: as namely, *Quotidians*, *Tertians*, *Quartans*, *Fevers continuall*, *Fevers Heetick*, *Fevers in Autumne, Summer, or Winter*. And the *Fevers extraordinary*, are all those which are bred in the firme parts of the body, and are ever hot, as *Pestilent Fevers* and the *Plague*, which are ever accompanied with *Ulcers*; and the *Fever accidentall*, which proceedeth from the anguish and paine of some mortall wound.

Now for the causes from whence these *Fevers* doe proceed: you shall understand that all these which I call Ordinary *Fevers*, do generally spring either from surfeit by extreame labour, or some surfeit by naughty meate, as *raw Pease*, *raw Fitches*, *raw Oates*, *mouldy* and *unwholesome Bread*, and such like: Sometimes they doe proceede from the extreame violence and heate of the Sunne beames; when travailing with disorderly haste in the extreamest heate of the day, those two heats mixed together, *Labour* and the *Sun*, there cannot chuse but be bred in the horse some *mortall inflammation*; and for mine owne part, I have scene horses fall downe dead in the high way: For whose deaths, I could find no reason more then their *labour* and the heate of the Sunne. *Fevers* sometimes spring from a contrary cause, as from extreame cold, in this manner: When a horse in the Winter-time hath beene travailed sore all the day, and is brought into the house hot, if after his blood and inward po-  
wers



wers are settled and cooled: you then presently, or the same night give him cold water as much as hee will drinke, you shall see him out of hand fall into an extreame quaking, and from that quaking into a violent burning, with all other distemperatures of a Fever.

Now for extraordinary Fevers, they ever proceede eyther from corruption of blood, or from infection of the ayre; and albeit these Fevers are not usually knowne unto our Farriers, yet they are as common as the former; onely the violence of them is so great, and the poyson so strong, that they ever carry with them some other mortall sicknesse, as namely, the *Staggers*, *Yellowes*, *Anticor*, and such like, which never are, but a pestilent Fever ever goeth before them. And they, like the markes of the plague, are seldome seene till the cures be desperate; and then the unskillfull Farrier, neither noting, nor knowing if hee did not, the effects of the Fever doth ever mis-call the name of the horses infirmity, and taking the lesser for the greater, failes many times to doe the good office and cure which he intendeth.

Now the signes to know the Fever, be these: First, hee will ever hold downe his head; hee will quake and tremble; but when his trembling is past; then will his body burne, and his breath be hot, he will breath fast, and his flanke will beate, hee will reele, hee will forsake his meate, his eyes will bee swolne and closed up, yet therewithall much watring; his flesh will, as it were, fall from his bones, and his bones will hang downe low, he will oft lye downe, and

rise up againe : all his desire will be to drinke ; yet at no time drinke much , neyther will he at any time sleepe.

Now for the generall cure of these generall *Fevers*, you shall understand , that some *Farriers* use to let the horse blood in the Face, Temples, and palate of the Mouth , and the first day to give him no meate, but warme drinke onely, by a little at a time : and after the finest grasse, or finest hey wet in water, keeping him warme , and often walking him up and downe in a temperate Ayre , and giving him good store of Litter, then when he begins to mend, to feed him with Barley sodden, huskt and beaten; as you do Wheat before you make Furmety. And this cure is not amisse , for it agreeth with the ancient experience of the *Italians* : but in our English Horses, (through the *Clime* as I suppose) it often faileth,

The best cure therefore that I have found , is, as soone as you perceive him to begin to shake, to give him the yolkes of three or foure egges , beaten with seven or eight spoonefull of *Aqua-vitæ* to drinke, and then chafe him up and downe till his shaking be past, and then set him up close and warme, and with many clothes make him sweate an houre : Let his food be oats very wel dried & sifted, and once a day some washt in Ale. If his shaking fit be past before you perceive his sicknesse, you shall onely give him a pinte of *Muskadine*, and an ounce of Sugar-candy beaten to powder, and brewed together to drinke, and so let him rest, feeding him by little and little, as afore-said, and giving him no water but such as is warme : and this Order you shall observe at the beginning of every



every fit, if you can note them or else every morning if his sicknesse have no ceasing.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of the Quotidian, or every dayes Fever,  
and the cure.*

**T**He *Quotidian*, or every dayes *Fever*, is that which taketh a Horse, and holdeth him with one fit once every day; and will at first appeare somewhat violent, but seldome or never endureth long, if the *Farrier* have any discretion. It proceedeth most commonly from extreame riding, either after water, or a full stomacke; and then suddainly after his heate, being thrust into a stable, and neither stopt nor rubbed, a suddaine coldnesse to that suddaine heat begets a shaking, and so consequently the effects of a *Fever*.

The signes to know it, are watrish and blood-shot-ten eyes, short, and hot-breathing, panting, loathing of his meate, and stiffenesse in his limbes; but above these, to know it is a *Quotidian*, you shall observe that these signes, together with the sicknesse, will not last above fixe or eight houres in one day, and then he will be cheerefull and in health againe, till very neere the same houre of the next day, at what time his fit will beginne againe. And heere is to bee noted, that the more it altereth the houres, the more hope there is of his health, as if it take him at seven of the clocke of the one day, and at three of the clocke of the other, and so forth. The cure is, you shall onely during his fit, give him nothing but a sweete

sweet Mash made of Malt and Water, being luke-warme, and walke him gently up and downe in a temperate ayre; then as soone as his fit is past, you shall set him up, and rub his body and legges exceedingly: then foure houres after you shall give him this drinke: Take of strong Ale a quart, and boyle therein halfe a handfull of Worm-wood, of long Pepper and Graine two ounces, of the best Treacle two ounces, and of the powder of dried Rue one ounce: Now when a third part of the Ale is consumed, take it from the fire and straine it, then put therein three ounces of Sugar-candy beaten to powder; then when it is luke-warme, give it him with a Horne to drinke, Do this twice at the least, or thrice, if his fits continue, and there is no doubt but hee will recover.

CHAP. XVII.  
*Of the Tertian Fever.*

**T**He *Tertian Fever* is that which commeth every other day, holding the Horse with one sicke day, and one sound: it is not so violent as the *Quotidian*, but much longer lasting; it happeneth ofttest in the Springtime of the yeare, when blood beinnew to encrease, and most commonly to colts and young horses: it proceeds of the same causes that the *Quotidian* doth, and sometimes of ranknesse, and ill blood. The signes to know it, are all the signes formerly spoken of, and this as the chiefest, that the horse will bee apparantly sicke, as it were on the Mundy, then apparantly well on the tuesday, and sicke on the Wed-



Wednesday following. This *Fever* is never seene, but it beginneth with shaking. The cure therefore is, as soone as you perceiue the horse to beginne to shake, you shall take a certaine hearbe, or rather a weede called Stone-crop, and bruising it in a Mortar, take some foure spoonfull of the iuyce thereof, and infuse it in a quart of strong Ale, and give it the Horse to drinke: then walke him gently up and downe in some temperate ayre for an houre, then set him up, and with the helpe of cloathes put him into a sweate for an other houre, then coole him; and in any wise till his fits leave him, let him drinke no cold Water, and let his Provender be the oldest and dryest Oates you can get, onely upon his good daies before his fits come, keep him very long fasting and empty.

CHAP. XVIII.  
*Of the Quartan Fever.*

THE *Quartan Fever* is that which some *Farriers* call a third dayes sicknesse, as thus: If his fit begin on the Munday, hee will be well on the Tuesday and Wednesday, and sicke againe on the Thursday. It proceedeth from the same causes that the *Tertian fever* doth, yet in his working is not so apparently violent, but of much longer continuance: for if great care and helpe be not, these *Fevers* will last some a quarter of a yeare, some halfe a yeare, and some a whole yeare. There needs no other signe to know it, then the comming and going of the fits, as hath beene declared already. And for the cure; it is the  
selfe





keepe him from cold water, and let his provender be dry oates.

CHAP. XX.  
*Of the Heſtique Fever.*

**T**He *Heſtique* Fever in horſes, is a dangerous and mortall Fever, being in a horſe the firſt originall breeder of a conſumption: it is a certaine hot and dry humour which runneth betweene the ſkinne and the fleſh, proceeding from a ficke ſtomacke, which having bin ſcalded with hot drinckes, (as thoſe ill dieted running horſes be, which feed upon much ſpice, or thoſe which take hot drenches upon every fooliſh and ſlight occaſion) hath almoſt cleane loſt the power of digeſtion: It ſometimes happens to thoſe horſes which men too carefully teaching to drinke Beere and Wine, doe ſo continually apply them thereunto, that in the end they become ſubject to this ſickneſſe. The ſignes to know it; the horſe will never eate with any appetite, and when you draw out his tongue, you ſhall finde it raw, and almoſt ſcalded; his fleſh will be looſe and flaggy, and his body ſubject to a continuall trembling. The cure is, firſt waſh his tongue either with the ſirrop of Mulberries, or with Allome, running water, ſage & woodbinde leaves boiled together, then give him faſting in a morning, this drinke. Take of Aloes one ounce, of Garlick halfe an ounce, of Licoras and Aniſeſeeds of each a dram, beaten to powder, and let him drinke it with a quart of white Wine, luke-warme, and made ſweet with ſugar-candy or honey: let him  
drinke

drinke no drinke but warme mashcs of malt and water, and let his meate be sweer hay, or greene Corne blades: and ever after his medicine let him be chafed a little, kept fasting two or three houres, and stand warme and well cloathed.

## CHAP. XXI.

*Of the Fever taken in Autumne, or the fall of the leafe.*

**A**L these Fevers before spoken of, do for the most part, commonly happen to horses in the spring-time of the yeere, by reason that the new blood is ever aptest to be inflamed: yet notwithstanding wee find by experience, that fevers will sometimes come at the fall of the leafe, which we call *Autumne*, & they are of longer continuance then the other. The signes are none other but such as I have already declared: For they are the same fevers, onely altering the time of the yeere. If therefore your horse doe chance to catch a fever at the fall of the leafe, you shall let him blood on his necke-veine, and in the palate of his mouth, and you shall give him to drinke the same drinke which is formerly set downe for the Fever continuall, and there is no doubt of his recovery.

## CHAP. XXII.

*Of the Fever taken in the Summer season.*

**A** Fevertaken in the Summer season, is the worst of all ordinary Fevers whatsoever, especially all such as are taken in the Dogge-dayes; because according



according to the opinion of Farriers, all accidents are then most furious; the especiall signes of this Fever are, that his Arteries will beate most palpably, and wheresoever he stalet, there you shall perceiue hee sheddeth his seed also. The cure, according to the Ancients, is to let him blood on the great veine which he hath on his hinder haunch, almost foure inches beneath his fundament; but for mine owne part, because that veine is not easily found of every ignorant Smith, and that many times by mistaking, they may cut the Artery instead of the veine, I hold it fully as good to let him blood on the necke-veine: which done, give him this drinke two houres and an halfe after; take the iuyce of a handfull of Purflaine, and mixe it with Gum-dragant, Aniseeds, and Damaske rose-leaves beaten to powder; then put them into a quart of strong Ale, made sweet either with Sugar-candy, or honey, and faile not to give him this drinke three mornings together, keepe the horse warme during his sicknesse.

### CHAP. XXIII.

#### *Of the Fevertaken in the winter-season.*

**A** Fevertaken in the Winter, is not so dangerous to the life of a Horse, as the Fever before mentioned; yet it is a Fever which will continue long, and aske great circumspection in the cure: the causes thereof are the same which are formerly described; and the signes are no other then hath beene already declared. Touching the cure, it is thus: you shall first purge his head by making him neese, that done, you shall

shall let him blood both in the necke and the palate of the mouth, and then two houres and a halfe after give him this drinke. Take of Rue three ounces, of round pepper halfe an ounce, of bay berries, and the seed of Smallage, of each halfe an ounce, boyle these in white wine, and give it him to drinke luke-warme. Other Farriers use to take a pint of new milke, and to put therein two ounces of sallet-oyle, of saffron one scruple, and of Myrrh two scruples, of the seede of Smallage a spoonfull, and to make him drinke it luke-warme, but the horse which taketh this drinke, must be in good strength, for if he be brought low, it is somewhat too strong.

The ancient *Italians* did use for this Fever, to give this drinke: Take of *Aristolochia* halfe an ounce, of *Gentian*, of Hysope, of wormwood, of Sothernwort, of each halfe an ounce, of dry fat Figs three ounces, of the seed of Smallage an ounce and an halfe, of Rue halfe an handfull, boyle them all with running water in a cleane vessell, till almost halfe be consumed, then when it begins to thicken, take it from the fire, straine it, and give it the horse luke-warme. Now there are not any of these dringes but are sufficient for the Cure; but the first is best. Now for his dyet, be sure to keepe him fasting long before his fits come, and let his drinke be onely warme mashes of malt and water. Now if you perceive that his fits continue, and bring the horse to any weaknesse, you shall then to comfort and quicken the naturall heate of the horse, rub and chafe all his body over, either in the Sunne, or by some soft fire, with some wholesome friction, of which frictions you shall finde choice in a particular



ler Chapter hereafter following, together with their severall natures and uses.

## CHAP. XXIII.

*Of the Fever which commeth by Surfeit of meate onely.*

**T**HE Fever which commeth by surfeit of meat onely, without either disorder in travaile, or corruption of blood, is knowne by these signes: the Horse will heave and beate upon his backe, his breath will be short, hot, and dry, and his Winde he will draw onely at his nose with great violence. The cure therefore is, you shall let him blood in his necke, under his eyes, and in the palate of his mouth, you shall also purge his head by making him neese, then keepe him with very thinne Dyet, that is, let him fast for more then halfe of the day, and let him not drinke above once in foure and twenty houres, and that drinke to be warme Water: You shall also once or twice chafe his body with a wholesome friction; and if, during his cure, he chance to grow costive, you shall cause him to be raked, and afterward give him either a suppositary, or a glister, of both which, and of their severall natures, you shall read sufficiently in a Chapter following.

## CHAP. XXV.

*Of Fevers extraordinary, and first of Pestilent Fevers.*

**W**E find by many ancient *Italian* writers, that both the *Romans*, and others their Countrey-men,

men, have by experience found many horses subject to this pestilent Fever, which is a most contagious and pestiferous disease, almost incurable; and for mine owne part, I have seene it in many colts and young horses. Surely it proceedeth, as I judge, either from great corruption of blood, or from infection of the ayre. The signes thereof is, the horse will hold downe his head, forsake his meate, shed much water at his eyes, and many times have swellings or ulcers rising a little below his eare-roots. The cure is, first you shall not faile to let him blood in the *necke-weine*: then two or three houres after you shall give him a glister: then make him this plaister: Take of Squilla five ounces, of Elder, of *Castoreum*, of Mustard-seede, and of *Euforbium*, of each two ounces; dissolve the same in the juyce of Daffadill and Sage, and lay it all about the temples of his head, and between his eares: then give him to *drinke* for three or foure daies together, every morning, two ounces of the best Treacle dissolved in a pint of good *Muskadine*.

The *Italians* use to give him divers mornings, a pound of the juyce of Elder-roots, or in stead of his hay, a good quantity of that hearbe which is called *Venus Haire*, but if the time of the yeere be such, that they cannot have it greene, then they boyle it in water, and straine it, and give it him to *drinke*, but I hold the first *drinke* to bee most sufficient, his diet being thinne, and his keeping warme.



## CHAP. XXVI.

*Of the Plague or Pestilence in Horses, of some called the Gargill or Murraine.*

**T**His Pestilence, Murraine, or Gargill in horses, is a contagious and most infectious disease, proceeding either from surfeit of heate, cold, labour, or hunger, or any other thing breeding corrupt humours in a horses body, as the holding too long of his urine, drinking when he is hot, or feeding upon grosse, foule, and corrupt foods, as in low grounds after floods, when the grasse is unpurged, and such like. Sometimes it springs from some evil influence of the Planets, corrupting the Plants and fruits of the earth, and Cattell too sometimes, and from divers other such like causes; but howsoever, when the disease beginneth, certaine it is, that it is most infectious, and if there bee not care and prevention used, of multitudes it will not leave one. Not any of the ancient *Italian* Farriers, nor any of our *English* Farriers that I have met with, doe or can yeeld me any signe or token to know this disease, more then that one or two must first die, and then by their deaths I must adjudge and prevent what will follow, but they are mistaken: For this disease is as easily knowne by outward signes, as any disease whatsoever; as namely, the horse will begin to lowre and hang downe his head; and within two or three dayes after such lowring, you shall see him begin to swell under his care-roots, or under the roots of his tongue, and that swelling will run universally

versally over all one side of his face, being very extreame hard and great. Moreover, all his lips, mouth, and whites of his eyes will be exceeding yellow, and his breath will be strong, and stinke exceedingly.

The cure of this disease according to the manner of the *Italians* and *French-men*, is first to separate the sound from the sicke, even a farre distance from that ayre where the sicke breatheth; then let them blood in the necke-veines, and give every one severally to drinke, two spoonefull of the powder of *Diapente*, brewed in a pinte of strong *Sacke*, of the composition of which *Diapente*, and of the particular vertues thereof, you shall read in a Chapter following. If you cannot readily get this *Diapente*, you may then take a pint of *Muskadine*, and dissolve it into two ounces of the best *Treacle*, and it will serve the turne. Questionlesse these medicines are both exceeding good, for they are great preservatives against all infections.

Now that which I have found farre to exceede them, and to be most excellent, not onely for this plague amongst horses, but for the plague or murraine (of some called the Mountaine evill) amongst beasts; is this. Take a good quantity of old Urine, and mixe therewithall a good quantity of hens-dung, stir them well together till the dung be dissolved: then with a horne give to every horse or beast a pinte thereof luke-warme. This have I seen helpe hundreds.



## CHAP. XXVII.

*Of the Fever accidentall, comming by some  
wound received.*

**I**F a Horse shall receive any grievous and sore wound, either by stroke or thrust, by which any of the vitall powers are let and hindred: certaine it is, that the paine and anguish of such wounds will bring a Horse to a hot Fever, and then his life is in great danger: Besides, a horse being naturally subject to moyst Distillation in his throat, there will many times rise therein great swellings and Ulcers, through the paine whereof, a horse will fall into a burning Ague.

The signes whereof are, that he will covet much to drinke, but cannot drinke, and his flesh will fall away in much extraordinary fashion.

The cure besides the remedies before mentioned, is to let him blood under his eares, and in the mouth: And then to take a fine Manchet: and cutting it in slices, steepe it in Muskadine, and compell him to swallow them: It shall also be good if once in three dayes you steepe your Manchet in Sallet Oyle, and make him eat it. As for his drinke let it bee onely warme Mashies of Malt and Water, which if hee cannot drinke, you shall then give it him with a Horne, And thus much touching Fevers both ordinary and extraordinary.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

*One generall, certaine, and approved Cure for all the Fevers and Sickneses formerly rehearsed, never yet disclosed from the Authors brest.*

I Have in the former Chapters shewed you the Names, Diversities, Natures, Signes, and ordinary Cures for all sorts of Fevers whatsoever: Now because I know the ignorance of some so greate, that they cannot discern: the Sloath of other such, that they will not indeavour to discern: and the folly of many so peevish, that they will mistake what they may discern, I will shew you here one generall, certaine, and approoved, for all Fevers of what nature or violence soever.

When therefore at any time you shall finde by any of the Signes formerly rehearsed, that your Horse droopeth, you shall presently let him blood in the necke-veine, and let him bleede well, then three mornings together after (the Horse being fasting) give him halfe an ounce of the powder called *Diapente* (the Composition whereof you shall finde in a particular Chapter, together with the vertues,) and this *Diapente* you shall brew in a pinte of Muscadine, and so give it the horse to drinke with an horne: then let him be ridden or walked abroad for an houre, after he commeth in give him any meate whatsoever that hee will eate: At noone give him a sweet Mash. In the evening perfume his head with a sweete perfume: the Composition whereof you shall



shall finde in a particular Chapter ; at night rubbe all his limbes well with hard wispes, and his head and nape of the necke with a course harden rubber, then feede as aforesaid. And thus doe three dayes together, and without doubt health will come suddenly.

CHAP. XXIX.  
*Of the diseases in the head.*

AS a horses head is composed of many parts, so are those many parts subject to many and sundry grievances; as namely, the panicles or thin skins, which cleaving to the bones, doe cover the whole braine, are subject to head-ach, mygram, dizinesse, and amazes; the whole braine it selfe is properly subject to breed the frenzy, madnesse, sleeping evill the taking and forgetfulnesse. And here is to be noted, that many Farriers, and those of approved good skils, have strongly held opinions, that horses have very little, or no braines at all: And my selfe for mine owne part, being carried away with their censures, did at last, upon good considerations, cut up the heads of divers horses, some dead, some in dying, and could never find any liquid or thin braine, as in other beasts, but onely a very thicke, strong, tough, and shining substance, solide and firme, like a tough jelly, which I ever held to be onely a panicle, and so resolved with others, that a horse had no brayne, but after, uppon further discourse with men of better learning, I had this resolution given mee: That a horse being a beast of extraordinary strength and ability,

bility, made even to endure the worst of all extremities either by sore labour or heavy burthen, that nature in his creation had endowed him with members answerable to such vigor: As namely, that his braine was not liquid and moyst, as subject to fleete, or to be distempered with every small disorder, but tough and hard, even unpenetrable, and not to be pierst by any reasonable motion. And for the panicles, they shewed mee those thin skins over and besides that great substance: so that by experience I saw, and now know, that a horse hath both braine and a panicle, and in them two are bred the diseases before mentioned. Now in the ventricles, or cels of the braine, and in those conduits by which the lively spirits give feeling and motion to the body, there do breed the Turne-sicke, or Sturdy, the Staggers, the Falling evill, the Night-mare, the Apoplexie, the Palsie and Convulsion, or Cramp, the Catharre, or Rhume, and lastly the Glanders. And thus much of the head in generall.

## CHAP. XXX.

*Of head-ach or paine in the head.*

**T**He Head-ach is a paine that commeth either of some inward cause, or of some cholericke humor gathered together in the panicles of the braine, or else of some extreame heate or cold, or of some suddaine blow, or of some noysome savour. The signes are, the hanging downe of the horses head and eares, dropping of his urine, dimnesse of sight, swolne and watrish eyes. The cure according to the opinion.



opinion of some of our English Farriers, is to let him blood in the eye-veins; and to squirt warme water into his nostrills; and for that day give him no meate; the next morning fasting, give him warme water and some grasse: at night give him barley and fitches mixt together, and to keepe him warme till hee be sound: But this cure I doe not fancy. The best helpe is, first to make him sneez by fuming him, then let him blood in the palate of the mouth, and keep him fasting at the least twelve houres after: then powre into his nostrills wine, wherein hath been sodden *Enforbium* and *Frankinsence*, and after feed him, and keepe his head warme.

#### CHAP. XXXI.

##### *Of the Frenzy and Madnesse in a Horse.*

**T**He madnesse of a Horse by the most ancient and best approoved Farriers, is divided into foure passions: The first is, when some naughty blood doth strike the panicle of the braine but in one part onely, it presently makes the horse dull both of mind and sight: and you shall know it by this signe, the Horse will turne round like a beast that is troubled with the sturdy, the reason being, because the outside of the head is grieved onely. The second is, when the poyson of such blood doth infect the middle heart of the braine: Then the Horse becommeth Franticke, leaping against walls or any thing. The third is, when that blood filleth the veines of the stomacke, and infecteth as well the heart as the braine: then hee is said to be mad. But the fourth and last is, when

when that blood infecteth not onely the braine and heart, but even the panicles also, and then is he said to be starke mad, which you shall know by his biting at every man which comes neere him, by his gnawing of the manger and walles about him. And lastly, by tearing his owne skin in peeces.

Now for the cure, you shall cause him to bee let blood in all the lower parts of his body, to draw the blood from his head; as namely, on the shackle-veines, the spur-veines, the plat-veines, and the thigh-veines, and you shall let him blood abundantly, then give him this drinke; take the root of wilde Cowcumber, and where that cannot be gotten, take a handfull of Rue and Mints, and a handfull of blacke Eleborus, and boyle them in strong red Wine, and give it luke-warme to the horse in a horne.

Some use to give mans dung with Wine three mornings together: and also to rubbe his body over with a friction at least twice a day, and not to faile to give him moderate exercise.

Others use to pierce the skin of his head with a hot Iron, to let out the ill humours.

Others, as the most certaine of all medicines, use to geld him of both, or one stone at the least, but I like it not for mine owne part.

The cure I have ever used for this grieve, was eyther to make him swallow down hard Hennes-dung, or else to give him to drinke the roote of *Virga Pastoris* stamped in water: and for his ordering during the cure, I would have his stable quiet, but not close, and his food onely warme Mashcs of Malt and Water,



ter, yet but a very little at one time, for the thinnest dyet is best.

### CHAP. XXXII.

#### *Of the sleeping evill, or Lethargy in Horses.*

**T**He Sleeping evill is an infirmity which maketh a horse to sleep continually, depriving him thereby both of memory, appetite, and all alacrity of spirit. It is most incident to white and dun horses, because it proceedeth onely from *flegme*, cold & grosse, which moystning the braine too much, causeth heaviness and sleepe: there needs no other signe more then his sleeping onely. The cure is, to keepe him waking whether he will or no, with great noises and affrights: then let him blood in the necke, and the palate of the mouth, and give him to drinke water luke-warme, wherein hath been boiled Camomill, Mother-wort, Wheate, Bran, Salt, and Vineger: you shall also perfume his head, and make him sneeze, and annoynt the palate of his mouth with hony and mustard mixt together: It shall not bee amisse, if with the ordinary water which hee drinketh, you mixe either Parsley seed, or Fennell seede, for that will provoke Urine: you shall also bathe his legges, and stop his hooves with Bran, Salt, and Vineger boyled together, and applyed as hot as may be, and his stable would be lightsome and full of noyse.

### CHAP.

## C H A P. XXXIII.

*Of a horse that is taken, or of Shrow-running.*

**T**Hose horses are supposed by Farriers to bee taken, or as some call it, Planet-strooke, which are deprived of feeling or of moving, not being able to stirre any member, but remaineth in the same forme as he was at his time of taking. Some hold it proceedeth of choler and flegme, when they are superaboundantly mixt together, or of melancholy blood, which being a cold dry humour, doth oppresse and sicken the hinder part of the braine. Other ancient Farriers hold, it commeth of some extreame cold, or extreame heate, or raw digestion, striking into the empty veines suddenly: or else of extreame hunger caused by long fasting. The signes thereof are numbnesse, and want of motion before spoken of: As for the cure, it is diverse; for first you must note whether it come of cold, or heate: If it come of cold, you shall know it by the stuffing and poze in the head, which is ever joyned with the disease: if of heate, by the hotnesse of his breath, and cleare fetching of his wind. Now if it proceed from cold, you shall give him to drinke one ounce of *Lacerpitium* mixt with Sallet Oyle and *Muskadine* luke-warme: if it proceed of heat, you shall give him one ounce of *Lacerpitium* with water and hony luke-warme: but if it proceede of crudity, or any raw digestion, then you shall helpe him by fasting: and if it proceede of fasting, then you shall heale him by feeding him often with good meate, as with wholesome bread, and dry

F

Oates:



Oates ; yet but a little at a time, that he may ever eate with a good stomacke.

Now for the *French Farriers*, as *Monsieur Horace* and the rest, who call this disease *Surprius*, they hold it commeth onely from cold causes, following hot accidents; and they use for their cure to let him blood on the breast-veines, and then put him into a sweate, either by exercise, or multiplicity of cloathes, but many cloathes are better, because the horse is not capable of labour: and sometimes they will bury him all save the head in an old dung-hill, till through the heate thereof his limbes receive such feeling that he begins to struggle out of the same. All which cures are not much amisse: Yet in mine opinion, this is the best, easiest, and surest way: First, to let him bloud in the necke and breast, then to anoint all his body with oyle *Petroleum*, then give him this drinke Take of Malmsey three pints, and mixe it with a quarterne of sugar, Cynamon, and Cloves, and let him drinke it luke-warne: then take old rotten wet litter, and for want therof, wet hey, and with clothes, fursingles and cords, swaddle all his whole body over with the same of a good thicknesse, and renew it once in three dayes till he be whole, let his stable be warme, his exercise moderate, and if hee grow costive, let him first be raked, & after give him either a glister, or suppositary, according to his strength. There is also another kind of taking, and that is when a horse is Planet-strooke, or stricken with *Thunder*: but it is utterly incurable, and therefore I will omit to speake further of it. The last kind of taking is when a horse is Shrow-runne, that when a horse lieth sleeping,

ping, there is a certaine venemous field-mouse called a Shrow, whose head is extraordinary long, like a Swines head, and her feet shorter of the one side then the other. This Mouse if she happen to runne over any of the limbes of the horse, presently the horse loseth the use of that limbe shee ran over; and if she runne over his body, he commonly loseth the use of his hinder loynes: and these accidents having beene often found unexpected, common Farriers have held the horse to be taken, or Planet-strooke. As for the cure thereof, the best is to seeke out a brier which groweth at both ends, and take the horse or beast that is thus vexed, and draw him under the same, and it is a present remedy. For mine owne part, I have heard much, both of the infirmity, and of the cure, but I have had no experience of it, but onely in one yong foale, which being suddenly lame, was as suddenly helped to my much contentment.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

*Of the Staggers.*

**T**He *Staggers* is a dizzy madnesse of the braine, proceeding from corrupt blood, or grosse, tough, and heavy humors, which oppresse and make sick the braine, and from whence proceedeth a vaporous spirit, dissolved by a weake heat which troubleth all the whole head: it is almost of all diseases the most common, yet very mortall and dangerous: it commeth many times from surfeit of meat, surfeit of travell, or from corruption of blood. The signes



to know it, is dimnesse of sight, Iwolne and watrish eyes, a moist mouth, staggering and reeling of the horse, and beating of his head against the walls, or thrusting it into his litter. The cure is divers: for almost every Smith hath a severall medicine, yet these which I shall rehearse, are the most approved. The ancient Farriers, both *Italians* and *French*, use to let the horse blood in the temple-veines, and then with a *knife* make an hole an inch long over-thwart his fore-head, underneath his fore-top, and raising the skin up with a cornet some two or three inches about, stop the hollownesse with a rent dipt in turpentine and Hogges grease molten together; but some of our Smiths finding this cure faile, except the disease be very yong, use to stop the hollownesse with a docke-roote. Others with a clove or two of *Garlicke*. Others use for this disease to take *Selladine*, and stamping it, to stop it into his eares, and to tye up his eares, or stich the tips of his eares together, that he may not shake the medicine out. Others use to mixe salt and water together thicke, and to put it into his eares. Others use to mixe *Groundsill* and *Aqua vite* together, and to put that into his eares. Others use to take *Garlicke*, *Rue*, and Bay-salt, and beate them grossly, then mixe Vinegar with them, and put it into the horses eares, then wet wool or tow in the medicine, and stop that in his eares also: let the medicine rest so foure and twenty houres, and if he forsake his meate, wash his tongue with vinegar, and it will recover his stomacke. Others use first to perfume the horses head to make him neese, then to take halfe a handful of *Selladine*, and as much hearbe

herbe of *grace*, three or foure cloves of *garlick*, and a little bay-salt, and stampe them together: then mixe therewith two or three spoonefulls of vinegar or verdeg, and thrust it hard into the horses eares: then tie up his eares with a soft inkle string, that no aire may come in, and let this medicine remaine the space of a day and a night: then let him blood in the necke veine, and give him a comfortable drench, of which drenches you shall find great plenty, together with their uses, in a chapter following. There be some Smiths which only take Rue and Sal-ladine, of each a like quantity, and stamping them with white salt, thrust it into the horses eare, and it helpeth. Others take an ounce and an halfe of the oyle of bitter almonds, two drams of oxe-gall, an halfe penny in black *Ellaber* stamped, and five drams of the graines of *Castoreum*, vinegar and verdeg, seeth them all together till the vinegar be consumed, then straine them, and put it into the horses eares. All these medicines have beene divers times approoved to be singular good, and for mine owne part, I have found great effect in them: Yet that which I have found at all times most excellent, is, if the disease be young and early taken, (that is, before the horse be growne into an extremitie of weaknes) to take onely verdeg and bay salt, and mixing them well together, to stoppe it into the horses eares. But if the disease bee old, and the horse brought to a desperate state of mortality, then you shall take *Affaserida*, and having dissolved it in vinegar, warme it upon a chafingdish of coales, and with round ballies of towe, stuffe it hard into the horses eares, and so bind them



up for foure and twenty houres, after which time  
 give him a comfortable drinke. Now whereas some  
 Smiths doe use to stampe *Aqua vita* and *Garlicke*  
 together, and stoppe that into his eares: I for my  
 part thinke it too strong, except the horse bee in  
 great lust, and full of flesh, which if he be, doubt-  
 lesse it may doe well enough: onely for a generall  
 rule you must observe, ever to let the horse blood  
 in the necke-veine, two or three mornings toge-  
 ther, and every time to take great aboundance of  
 blood from him.

CHAP. XXXV.  
 Of the Falling evill.

**T**His *Falling evill*, or as the *Italians* call it, this  
*Malcaduco*, is nothing else but that which we call  
 in men the *falling sicknesse*, in beasts the falling evill:  
 for it doth for a certaine season, deprive them of  
 all sense whatsoever, it is a disease not common-  
 ly incident to our *English* races; but amongst the  
*Italians*, *Spanish*, and *French* horses, many times  
 found.

Now considering that the most of our best *Eng-  
 lish* stables are furnished ever with some horses of  
 these Countries, I thinke it good to write something  
 touching the disease. It proceeds from cold & grosse  
 flegme gathered together in the fore-part of the  
 head, betwixt the panicle and the braine, which be-  
 ing by any hot vapour disperst over the whole brain,  
 it doth instantly cause this falling. There be others  
 which suppose that it is governed by the Moone;  
 and

and that by a certaine course thereof both horses and other beasts doe fall, and as it were dye for a small time. The signe to know the disease, is, the horse will fall suddenly, both through the resolution of his members, and the distention of his sinewes; all his body will quake and quiver, and they will foame much at their mouthes; yet when you thinke them past all hope of life, they will still start up suddenly and fall to their meate. Now if you will know whether these fits will come often, or but seldome, you shall feele the gristle betwixt his nostrils, and if it be cold, he will fall oft; but if it be warme, hee will fall seldome. The cure is, you shall first let him blood in the necke-veine, taking good store of blood away: then within foure or five dayes after, you shall let him blood on his temple-veines, and on his eye-veines: then anoint all his body over with a comfortable friction, then bathe his head and eares with oyle de Bay, liquid pitch and tarre mixt together, and of the same put some into his eares: then make him a cap or biggin of canvass, quilted with wooll, to keepe his head warme: then give him a purgation or scouring, of which you shall finde plenty in a chapter hereafter: you shall also force him to neeze: but if the disease notwithstanding continue still, you shall then with a hot Iron pierce the skinne of his forehead in divers places, and after anoint it with sweete Butter: for thereby you shall draw out the grosse humours which doe oppresse the braine; and in any wise during the time that he remaineth in Physicke, let his stable be kept exceeding warme, and his dyet thinne.



## CHAP. XXXVI.

*Of the Night-mare.*

**T**His disease which we call the *Night-mare*, is an infirmity which onely troubleth the horse in the night-season, stopping the drawing of his breath, in such violent sort, that with the struggling and striving he will be driven into a great sweate and faintnesse: It proceedeth, according to the opinion of ancient Farriers, from a continuall crudity, or raw digestion of the stomacke, from whence grosse vapours ascending up into the head, doe not onely oppress the braine, but all the sensitive parts also. Now for my part, I rather hold it an infirmity of the *stomacke* and *inward bowels*, which being cloyed with much glut and fat, doth in the night season so hinder the spirits and powers from doing their naturall office, that the beast having, as it were, his breath strangled, doth with an unnaturall struggling in his sleepe, put his body into an extreame sweate, and with that passion is brought to much faintnesse; of which I have had much and continuall experience, onely in horses exceeding fat, and newly taken from the grasse, but especially from such horses as are either fatted upon eddish grasse, which in some Countries is called after maths; or such as are taken up fat in the winter season. The signes to know this disease is, that in the morning when you come early to your horse, you shall finde him all of a great sweate, and his body something panting; or perhaps you shall but onely finde him sweate in his flanks,  
upon

upon his necke, and at the roots of his eares : eyther of both are signes of this sicknesse, especially if at night when you litter him, you finde that he is dry of his body, and giveth no outward signe of inward sicknesse. Now there bee some that will object against me, and say : that this infirmity is not the Night-mare, but an ordinary infirmity ingendred by superfluity of cold, grosse, and unwholesome foode, got in the Winter season : which nature, through the helpe of warme clothes, and a warme house, expels in this manner, in the night season. To this objection I answer, that if they do disallow this sicknesse to be the Night-mare, that then without all contradiction, there is no such disease as the Night-mare at all, and that it is but onely a name without any substance or consequence ; but forasmuch as this sicknesse is not only very usual, but also carrieth with it all the effects and attributes ascribed unto the Night-mare, & that it is as yet a disease unnamed. I doe not thinke I can give it a more proper terme then to call it the Night-mare. The cure whereof is, every morning and evening, both before and after his water ; to give the horse some moderate exercise, as to make him go at least a mile and more for his water ; and after hee is watered, to gallop him gently on the hand a good space : then when hee is brought into the house, and well rubbed, to give him his provender, (being oats) and to mixe therewith a handfull, or better, of hemp-feed ; onely in this cure you must bee carefull, that your exercise do not enforce him to sweat, nor shall you have need to use it longer, then you finde that he sweateth much in the night season. This exercise and  
medicine



medicine will not onely cure this infirmity, but also any cold that is newly gotten whatsoever.

## CHAP. XXXVII.

*Of the Apoplexie, or Palsie.*

**T**Hese Palsies, or Apoplexies which happen unto horses, are of two sorts: the one *generall*, the other *particular*. The *generall* palsie is when a horse is deprived of all sence and mooving generally over his whole body, which is seldome or never found out by our *Farriers*: because the mortality and suddenesse of death which pursues the disease, takes from them all notes and observations of the infirmity: and indeed for the *generall* palsie, there is no cure, and therefore there needs no description of signe or cure. For this *particular* Palsie, that is, when a horse is deprived but of some part or member of his body, and most commonly it is but the necke only, as both my selfe and others have found by daily experience. This disease proceedeth from foulenesse of food, or from fen-feeding, which breedeth grosse and tough humors, which joyneth with crudities and raw digestions, oppresse the braine violently altogether: it also commeth many times by meanes of some blow or wound given upon the temples of the Head. The signes to know the disease are the gathering together of his body, going crookedly, and not straight forward but seldome, and holding his necke awry without motion: yet never forsaking his provender or meat, but eating it with greedinesse and much slavering. The cure is to let him

him blood on his necke-veine, and temple-veine, on the contrary side to that way hee wryeth: then annoynt all his necke over with the oyle *Petroleum*, and with wet hay ropes swaddle all his necke over, even from his breast to his eares, but having before splended his necke straight with splents of wood, made strong, smooth, and flat for the purpose: then for three mornings together give him a pint of old *Muskadine*, with two spoonefull of this powder to drink. Take of *Opoponax* two ounces, of *Storax* three ounces, of *Gentian* three ounces, of *Manna Succary* three ounces, of *Myrrh* one scruple, and of long Pepper two scruples, beate all these into fine powder.

Now there bee some *Farriers*, which for this disease use to draw the *Horse* necke on the contrary side with a hot Iron, even from the necke to the shoulder, and on the temple of his head of that side also, a long strike, and one the other a little star in this manner ✱, and from his raines to his middle backe, small lines in this manner ← ← ←

But I that know this sicknesse proceedeth from the braine and sinewes, cannot conceive how any helpe should come from burning of the skin, because it is the sinews themselves, and not the skinne, that is drawne up and straightned: And therefore I would wish every *Farrier* to forbear this tormenting, unlesse he apparently see that the skin it selfe through dislike and weaknesse, is shrunk also, and then the cure is not amisse.



## CHAP. XXXVIII.

*Of the generall Crampe, or convulsion of  
sinewes.*

**T**Hese generall Crampes, or convulsions of sinewes, are most forcible contractions, or drawings together of the sinewes and muscles: and they happen sometimes generally into many parts of the body, sometimes particularly, as but into one member and no more: When they are generally dispersed in horses, they proceed commonly from some wound, wherein a sinew is halfe cut and no more, and so there runneth a generall contraction over the whole body by degrees. When they are particular, as but in one member, then they proceed either from cold windy causes, or from the want of blood. For the generall contraction which cometh by a wound, you shall read the cure thereof in the booke of Chirurgery following, where the sinewe being cut in two peeces, the contraction ceaseth. For this particular, where but one member is grieved, you shall know it by these signes: The member will be starke and stiffe, insomuch that neither the beast, nor any man will be able to bow it: the sinewes will be hard like stickes, and the horse being downe, is not able to rise during the time of the contraction, hee will also halt extremely whilst the fit is upon him, and presently goe well againe, as it were in one moment. The cure is, to chafe the member exceedingly, cyther with linsed oyle, sheepes-foote oyle, or neates-foote oyle; and during the time of his chafing, to hold up the  
contra-

contrary foote that hee may stand upon the limbe which is most pained. There is also another Crampe or convulsion of sinewes, which doth extend into the necke and raines of the horses backe, and so almost universally over the horses whole body: It proceedeth ever, either from some extreame cold, as by turning a horse suddainly out of a warme stable, and warme cloathes into the piercing rage of the cold winter, or by the losse of much blood, whereby great windinesse entreth into the veines, and so benumbeth the sinews: or else by too much Physicking and drenching of a horse, whereby the naturall heat is much weakned or dried. The signes of this convulsion is, his head and necke will stand awry, his eares upright, and his eyes hollow, his mouth will be clung up that he cannot eate, and his backe will rise up in the midst like the backe of a Camel. The cure hereof is, with great store of warme wollen cloathes, as Blankets, and Coverlids, some folded double about his body, and some girded all over from his head to his taile, to force him into a sweat; but if the clothes will not force him to sweat, then you shall either fold all his body over with hot wet horse-litter, or else bury him all save the head in a dunghill or mixon, then when he hath sweat an houre or two, and is moderately cooled, you shall annoynt him all over with this oyntment, (holding hot barres of Iron over him, to make the oyntment sinke into his body.) Take of Hogges-grease one pound, of Turpentine a quarter of a pound, of Pepper beaten into powder halfe a dram, of new waxe halfe a pound, of old oyle Olives one pound; boyle all these together, and use it, being.



being made warme. There be other *Farriers* which use this oyntment: take of new waxe one pound, of Turpentine foure ounces, of oyle de bay as much, *Opoponax* two ounces, of Deeres suet, and of oyle of *Sterax* of each three ounces, melt all these together, and use it warme.

There be others which use after his sweat, nothing but oyle of *Cipresse*, or of *Spike*, and oyle de Bay mixt together, and with it annoynt his body over. After this unction thus applied, you shal take twenty grains of long Pepper beaten into fine Powder, of *Cedar* two ounces, of *Nitre* one ounce, of *Lacerpitium* as much as a beane, and mingle all these together with a gallon of white Wine, and give him a quart thereof to drinke, every morning for foure dayes. Now for his diet and order, let his food be warme Mashcs, and the finest Hay, his stable exceeding warme, and his exercise gentle walking abroad in his cloathes, once every day about high noone.

#### CHAP. XXXIX.

##### *Of the Cold or Poze in the head.*

**T**HE Cold or Poze in a horses head is gotten by divers suddaine and unseene means, according to the temper and constitution of the horses body, inso much, that the best keeper whatsoever cannot sometimes warrant his horse from that infirmity. Now according as this cold is old or new, great or small, and according to the aboundance of humors which abound in the head, and as those humours are of thicknesse or thinnesse, so is the disease  
and

and the danger thereof greater or lesser, stronger or weaker. For you shall understand that if the horse have but onely a cold that is newly taken, the signes are, hee will have many knots like waxe kirkels betweene his chaules about the rootes of his tongue; his head will be somewhat heavy, and from his nostrills wil runne a certaine cleare water, but if about his tongue roots be any great swelling or inflammation, like a mighty botch or bile, then it is the strangle, but if from his nostrills doe issue any thicke, stinking, or corrupt matter, then it is the *Glanders*, of both which we shall speake hereafter in their proper places. Now for this *ordinary* cold, which is ordinarily taken (the signes whereof, besides his much coughing, are before declared) you shall understand that for the cure being very easie, it is helped sundry wayes: Some cure it onely by purging his head with pills of *Butter* and *Garlicke*, the manner whereof you shall finde in the Chapter of *Purgations*, Other *Farriers* cure it with purging his head with fumes, and forcing him to neeze, the manner whereof is in the Chapter of neezing; which done, you shall give him to drinke, water wherein hath beene sodden *Fenugreeke*, Wheate-meale, and Aniseeds; and then to trot him up and downe halfe an houre after. Others use to give him Neezing-powder blown up into his nostrills, and then this drinke: take a pinte of Malmsey, and the whites and yolkes of foure or five Egges, a head of Garlicke bruised small, Pepper and Cynamon, and Nutmegges, of each a like quantity beaten to fine powder, and a pretty quantity of sweet Butter, mixe them together, and give it luke-warme with



with a horne three dayes together : then keepe him fasting at least two houres after. Others use to let the horse blood in the veine under his taile, and to rub all his mouth over with a bunch of sage bound to a stickes end, and then to mixe with his provender the tender crops of blacke-berries : But I take this medicine to be fittest for such horses who with the cold rhume are troubled with paine in their chaps, and not with stuffing in their head.

Now albeit none of these medicines are fault-worthy, yet some for mine owne part, I have ever found to bee most excellent for these slight colds, moderate exercise, both before and after a horses water, in such sort as is declared in the Chapter of the Night-mare, without any other fuming or drenching, except I found the cold to be more then ordinary, and that for want of heed-taking it was like to grow to some Ulcer about the rootes of the tongue. In this case I would for one time and no more give the horse a pint of Sacke, and halfe a pint of Sallet oyle, made luke-warme, and well brewed with good store of *Sugar-candy*, to drinke in the morning fasting, and then exercise him moderately thereupon, without putting him into any sweate, and it hath never failed to worke the effects I wished in ample sort, without hindring me at any time of my travaile or journey. But if you cannot conveniently come by this medicine, you must notwithstanding travaile your *Horse*, if then you take a spoonefull of *Tarre*, and folding it in a fine cloth, fixe or tye it fast to the mouth of your bit, or snaffell, and so travaile your horse therewith, and it will take his cold

cold cleane away. But yet it will a little abate and lessen his Stomacke.

## CHAP. XL.

*How certainly to take away any cold, poze, or rattling in the head, how violent soever, without giving any inward medicine.*

**I**F your horse have taken any extreme cold or poze in his head, and being matcht either to hunt, or to runne for any great Wager, the day is so neare that you dare not give him any inward drench, without which none of our *Farriers* know how to cure any Cold: you shall then, or at any other time (for there is no medicine in the world more soveraigne) take as much sweet butter as a bigge wall-nut, and with the powder of Brimstone finely beaten and searst, worke them either with your Knife, or a Splat-ter together, till the Butter bee brought to a high gold colour: then take two cleane Goose-feathers, the longest in all the Wing, and first at the quill-ends, with a needle, fasten two long threeds: Then with your Salve anoint all the Feathers cleane over: which done, in the dry powder of Brimstone role them over and over: then putting the Feather ends formost, open the horses nostrils, and thrust them up into his head: then take the threeds which are at the quill-ends, and fasten them on the top of the horses head: which done, ride him abroad for an houre or two, ayring him in this manner morning and evening, and when you bring him into the stable, after hee hath stood tyed up a pretty season, untye the threeds,



threeds, and draw out the feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up till you have next occasion to use them. This cure of all others is most certaine, and taketh away any stopping in the head how extreame forever.

#### CHAP. XLI.

*The perfection and best of all Medicines for  
Poze or Cold.*

**T**AKE (if you can get it) an ounce of the fine and pure paste of Elicampane, which hath the strings of the roots taken from it, or for want thereof, an ounce of the conserve of Elicampane, and dissolve it in a pinte and an halfe of Sacke, and so give it the horse with an horne in the morning fasting, and then ride him halfe an houre after it, and let him fast two houres more, then feede him as at ordinary times: and thus doe for two or three mornings together.

#### CHAP. XLII.

*Of a horse that is hide-bound.*

**T**HIS disease which we call hide-bound, is when a horses skinne cleaveth so hard to his ribbes and backe, that you cannot with your hand pull up or loosen the one from the other. It proceedeth sometimes from poverty and ill keeping, sometimes from surfeit of over-riding; especially if when hee is extreame hot, he be suffered to stand long in the raine or wet wether: and lastly, it proceedeth from a corrupt drinessse of the blood, which wanting his natu-  
rall

fall course, forceth his skin to shrinke up and cleave to the bones. The signes, besides the cleaving of his skin, is, leanness of body, gauntnesse of belly, and the standing up of the ridge-bone of his backe: it drieth up the intrailes, torments the body, and makes his dung stinke extraordinarily: and if be not remedied, manginess will presently follow after it. The cure of it is divers, according to the opinion of divers workemen: the most ancient Farriers did use to let him blood on the spurre-veines of both sides his belly, somewhat towards his flanke, which done, they give him this *drinke*: Take of white Wine, or strong Ale a quart, and adde thereunto three ounces of sallet oyle, of *Comen* one ounce, of Aniseeds two ounces, of Licoras two ounces, beaten all into fine powder, and give it him luke warme with a horne; when he hath drunke, let one chafe his back, from the huckle bone upward by the space of an houre, or more: then set him in a warme stable, with good store of litter: then fold about his body a thicke blanket soaked in water and wrung, then over it a dry blanket, then gird them both fast, and stop the fursingle about with great wispes, for the wet blanket, will put him into a great heate; and for want of a wet blanket, if you fold his body in wet hay it will doe the like, and loosen his skin; this you shall do the space of a weeke, during which time he shall drinke no cold water.

There be other Farriers, which before they lay on the wet blanket, will anoint all the horses body over with wine and sallet-oyle, and surely it is good also. There be others which for this disease use to let



the Horse blood in the necke, then bathe his sides with warme water, wherein hath beene sodden Bay leaves: then anoint him all over with the oyle of Rue or Camomill, holding a hot Iron over him to make the oyle fine into his skinne, then give him this drinke: Take of carrets, Rue, wild mint, of each an ounce and a halfe, of worme-wood two ounces, dry them and beate them to powder: then give two spoonfull thereof in a pint of Malmsey. There be other *Farriers* which take *Fenugreeke*, *Turmerick*, *Anise seeds*, *Bayes*, *Licoras*, and *Comen*, of each like quantity, dry them, and beate them to powder, and give the horse two spoonfull thereof with a quart of Ale or Beere luke-warme: use this at least three mornings together, and it will not onely helpe the disease, but if it be formerly used, it will prevent the comming thereof: this *drinke* also is good for a Cold. Now although every one of these medicines are very good, yet for mine owne part, I have found this which followeth to exceed them all.

First, let him blood in the *neck-veine*, then give him this *drinke*. Take two handfals of *Selladine*, if it be in the Summer, the leaves and stalks will serve, but if it be in Winter, take leaves, stalkes, roots and all; chop them small, then take a handful of Wormwood, and a handfull of Rue, chop them likewise, put all these into three quarts of strong Ale or Beere, and boyle them till it come to a quart: then take it from the fire, and straine it till you have left no moisture in the hearbs: then dissolve it in three ounces of the best Treacle, and give it the horse luke-warme to *drinke*: then for a *weeke* together, once a day, rub all

all the horses body over with oyle and beere, or butter and beere, against the haire, and feede him with warme mashes of malt and water, and for his provender, let him have barley sodden till it bee ready to breake, provided that you keepe it not untill it sowre.

## CHAP. XLIII.

*Of the Glanders.*

**T**ouching this disease which wee call the *Glanders*, my Masters, the old *Farriers* and I, are at much difference: for some of them do hold opinion, that it is an inflammation of the Kirnels, which lie on each side the throat, underneath the rootes of the tongue neere the swallowing place, and their reason is, that because those Kirnels are called of the *Italians*, *Glandule*, that thence we borrow this word *Glanders*; adding moreover, that a horse which is troubled with this disease, hath great Kirnels underneath his jawes easie to be felt, paining him so, that hee cannot eat, or swallow any thing. Others say, it is a swelling upon the jaw bones, great and hard, which being inflamed, doth putrifie and rot; but both these Opinions I hold in part Erroneous: for although our old *Farriers* might (according to the custome of our Nation, which loveth imitation of strangers) borrow this word *Glanders* from the *Italian Glandule*: yet these inflammations under the chappes of the tongue rootes, is that disease which wee call the *Strangle*, and not the *Glanders*; and whereasthey would call the *Strangle* the *Quinzie*



or *Squinancy*, there is no such matter, neither hath a horse any such disease, except they will call the *Vives* by that name, which is farre more fitter for the application.

Now for the Glanders, you shall understand that it is a running impostume ingendred either by cold, or by famine, or by long thirst, or by eating corrupt and musty meate, or by being kept in unsavory places, or is taken by standing with infected horses. It is a gathering together of moist and corrupt humours, which runneth at the nose; or may be sayd to be a fluxe of rhume, which issueth sometimes at one, sometimes at both the nostrils: the cause being the widenesse of the passage, so that the cold liberally entring into the braine, bindeth and crusheth it in such manner, that it maketh the humours there to distill; which descended to the spirituall parts, and possessing them, in the end suffocates the horse, either by their abundance, or killeth him by corrupting the principall parts; or else by congealing there by little & little, over runneth the natural heat. Now that distillation that by cold commeth from the braine, and breedeth this glanders, is of 3 forts. The first is a cold which maketh indigest humours to passe from the braine, which commeth by taking off the saddle suddenly when the horse is hot, or by letting him drinke before hee bee inwardly cooled, or before his body be dryed: this distillation commonly is slimy matter that smells not, and is easie to be cured: for it is no inward ulcer, but onely abundance of humour, the substance whereof is grosse and white. The second is a great cold ingendred

gendred and congealed, causing humours something thinne and slimy, of the colour of marrow, or the white of an Egge: this descendeth to the throate, and lyeth there till it bee discharged through the Nostrils. The third is by long continuance thicker, and therefore harder to be cured; if the colour thereof be yellow, like a Beane, then is the Glanders most desperate, and lyeth also in his throate: but if it be a browne or darkish yellow, then commonly a Fever will accompany the disease. To these three distillations there is commonly added a fourth, which is, when the matter which comes from his Nose, is darke, thin, and reddish, like little sparkes of blood; but then it is not said to be the Glanders, but the mounring of the Chine, which is a Disease, for the most part, held incurable. It is therefore most necessary for every good *Farrier*, when he shall take this cure in hand, to consider well the matter which issueth from the Horses nose: For if the humour bee cleare and transparent, so that it may bee scene thorough, then it is not greatly hurtfull, or of much moment. If it be white, it is worse, yet with much ease cured. If it be yellow, separate him from the sound Horses, for he is infectious, yet to be cured: If that yellow be mixt with blood, it is with much difficulty helped, or if the matter be like unto Saffron, the Horse is hardly to be saved. He must also consider whether the matter stinke, or have lost the smell: The first is the signe of an Ulcer, the latter of Death: also whether he cougheth with straightnesse in his chest, or no: for that also is a signe of an inward ulcer, and that the disease is past cure. Now for



the cure of these three distillations, which are all that make up a compleat Glanders, you shall understand, that when the Glanders is of the first sort, it is easily helped by moderate exercise, and warme keeping: but if it bee of the second sort, you shall give him warme mashes of malt and water, and perfume his head well, and purge it by sneezing: and into his mashes you shall put Fennell seede bruised. Others will take a pint of white Wine, and a handfull of foot, a quart of milke, and two heads of garlick bruised: brew them together, and give it the horse to drinke. Others will take a pottle of urine, a handfull of bay salt, and a good quantity of browne Sugar-candy, boile it to a quart: then adde licoras and aniseedes beaten to fine powder, and give it luke-warme to drinke. Others will take lard, or swines grease, and boyle it in water: Then take the fat from the water, and mingle it with a little oyle olive, and a good quantity of urine, and halfe as much white wine, give a quart of this luke-warme to drinke. Others use to give of Ale a quart, or grated bread one ounce and a halfe, the yolkes of two egges, or Ginger, Saffron, Cloves, Cynamon, Nutmegs, *Cardimonium*, *Spike-nard* or Lavender, Galingall and hony, of each a pretty quantity, mixe these together, and give it to drink. Now if the distillation be of the third sort, which is the worst of the three, you shall take halfe a pound of Swines blood, and melt it at the fire, adde to it a pound of the joyce of Beets; with three ounces of *Euforbium* finely beaten; and when it hath boyled a little, take it from the fire, and adde another ounce of *Euforbium* to it: Keepe this oymment, and annoynt

noynt therewith two very long featers, or little rodde, lapt with linnen about, and so anoynted, put them into his nostrills, and after rubbing them up and downe, tye them to the nose-band of the bridle, and walke him abroad: Doe thus three dayes together, and it will either absolutely cure him, or at least take away the eye-fore. Others use to take a quart of Ale, an halfe penny worth of long Pepper, a little brimstone, and a peny-worth of *Galingal*, two penny worth of Spygnard of *Spaine*, two peny weight of Saffron brayed, with two ounces of butter boyled in the Ale: When it is luke-warme cast the horse, and holding up his head, powre it equally into his nostrills: then hold his nostrills close till his eyes stare, and that he sweat, which done, give him Bayes and Ale to drinke: then let him rise, and set him up warme, feeding him with warme grains and salt, or with sweet mashes, but the best is, if the weather bee warme, to let him runne abroad at grasse. Other Farriers use to dissolve in vineger three drammes of Mustard-seed, and as much *Euforbium*: then to give him one dramme at his Nostrill every day before he drinke. Others use to take of *Myrrh*, *Iris Illirica*, seeds of Smallage, *Aristolochia*, of each three ounces, *Sal-niter*, *Brimstone*, of each five ounces, Bayes two ounces, Saffron one ounce; make this into powder, and when you give it, give part in pills, made with paste and wine, and part by the nostrills with strong Ale: doe this for the space of three dayes at the least. Others use to take of Malmsey a pint, of strong Ale a pint, of *Aqua-vitæ* foure spoonefull, and brew them together,  
with



with a pretty quantity of Aniseedes, Lycoras, Elicampane rootes, long Pepper, Garlicke, and three or foure new laid egges, and a little butter; give this luke-warme to drinke: then walke him abroad, and set him up warme: doe thus every other day for a weeke together. Others use to take stale urine that hath stood three or foure daies, and ten Garlicke heads, and seething them together, give it the horse to drinke. Others use to take Swines-grease well clarified, and as much oyle de bay as a walnut, and give it the horse to drinke, with faire water luke-warme.

✚ But better then all these, it is to take of Elicampane, Aniseedes, and Licoras, of each one peny-worth, boyle them in three pints of Ale or Beer till one pint be consumed, then adde unto it a quarter of a pint of Sallet oyle, and give it him to drink luke-warme, then with a quill blow *Euforbium* up into his nostrils, and within three daies after rake of Mustard foure spoonfull, Vineger a pint, butter three ounces, boyle them together, then adde thereto halfe an ounce of Pepper, and give it the horse luke-warme to drink: Use this medicine a fortnight. Others use to take a handfull of pill'd Garlicke, and boyle it in a quart of Milke till a pint bee consumed, then adde thereto two ounces of sweet butter, and a pint of strong Ale, stirre them well together, and give it the horse fasting to drinke luke-warme: which done, ride him a little up and downe, and use this the space of nine dayes.

✚ Thus I have plainly shewed you the opinion and practice of all the best *Farriers* both of this Kingdome and of others, and they be all very good and effectuell

effectuall: yet for mine owne part, that which I have found ever the best in my practice is, if the disease be of the first or second sort, to give the horse to drinke fasting every morning for a fortnight together, a pinte of strong Ale, and five spoonefull of the Oyle of Oates, the making of which Oyle, you shall read in a particular chapter following; but if the disease be of the third sort, which is most desperate; you shall then take of Tanners Ouse a pint, and of new Milke a pint, and of Oyle Olive halfe a pint, and the quantity of a head of Garlicke bruised, and a little Turmericke, mixe these well together, and give it the horse to drinke: Do this thrice in one fortnight, and it will helpe if any helpe be to be had.

## CHAP. XLIII.

*Two most certaine and lately found out medicines, which will without all faile cure any Glanders, though our Farriers hold it impossible.*

**I**F your horses cold be come to the worst Glanders, which is a continuall running at the nose, and hath runne by the space of divers moneths, so that your Farriers can doe you no good: you shal then take better then two handfull of the white cankerous mosse which growes upon an old Oken pale, and boyle it in two quarts of Milke till one quart be almost consumed; then straine it, and squeeze the mosse wel, which done, give it the horse luke-warme to drinke: then take the goose feathers, brimstone, and butter, in such manner as is set downe in the new Additions for the cold,



cold or poze in a Horses head (*page 81*) and having put them up into his nostrils, ride him forth an houre or two gently, and after he is come home, draw forth the feathers, and keepe his body warme. This disease you shall understand commeth not suddenly, but growes out of long proceffe of time; so likewise the cure must not bee expected to be done in a moment, but with much leasure: therefore you must continue your medicine as your leasure will serve, either every day, or at least thrice a weeke, if it be for foure or five moneths together, and be assured in the end it will yeeld your desire.

Now the second certaine and well approved medicine is to take Elicampane Roots, and boyle them in milke till they be soft, that you may bruise them to pappe: Then with a horne give them to the horse, together with the milke luke-warme, being no more then will make the roots liquid: Then having anointed your Goose feathers, put them up into his nostrils, and ride him forth, as is before shewed.

## CHAP. XLV.

*Of the mourning of the Chine.*

**T**HIS Disease which wee call the *mourning of the Chine*, or as some *Farriers* terme it, *the moist Malady*, is that fourth sort of corrupt distillation from the Braine, of which wee have spoken in the Chapter before, shewing from whence it proceeds, and the signes thereof: *to wit*, that the corrupt matter which issueth from his nostrils will bee darke,

darke, thinne, and reddish, with little streakes of blood in it. It is supposed by some Farriers, that this disease is a foule Consumption of the Liver, and I doe not derogate from that opinion: For I have found the liver wasted in those horses which I have opened upon this disease: And this Consumption proceeds from a cold, which after grows to a poze, then to a Glanders, and lastly to this mourning of the Chine.

The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the oldest *Farriers*, is to take cleare water, and that Honey whic is called *Hydromel*, a quart, and put thereunto three ounces of Sallet oyle, and powre it into his nostrils each morning, the space of three dayes, and if that helpe not, then give him to drink every day, or once in two dayes, at the least, a quart of old wine mingled with some of the soveraign medicine called *Tetrapharmacum*, which is to bee had almost of every *Apothecary*. Others use to take Garlick, Houslicke and Chervil, and stamping them together, to thrust it up into the horses nostrills.

Others use to let the Horse fast all night, then take a pint and a halfe of milke, three heads of Garlicke pild and stamped, boyle them to the halfe, and give it to the horse, some at the mouth, and some at the nose: then gallop him a quarter of a mile, then rest him: then gallop him halfe a mile, and rest him againe: thus do twice or thrice together, then set him up warme, and give him no water till it bee high noone: then give him a sweet mash: use this cure at least three dayes together. Others use to take half a pecke of Oates, and boyle them in running water  
till



till halfe bee consumed, then put them into a bagge, and lay them very hot upon the navell place of his backe, and there let it lie thirty houres, using thus to doe three or foure times at the least. Others use to take worme-wood, *Peusedanum* and *Centory*, of each like quantity: boyle them in wine, then straine them, and powre thereof many times into his nostrills, especially into that which most runneth. Others use to take hare-hound, Licoras, and Aniseeds, beaten to powder: then with sweet butter to make pills thereof, and to give them fasting to the horse. Others use to take wheate flower, aniseeds, and licoras stamped in a mortar, five or sixe cloves of garlick bruised, mixe all these together, and make a paste of them, then make it into pills as bigge as wall-nuts, and taking out the horses tongue, cast the balles downe the horses throat three or foure at a time, then give him two new layd egges shells and all after them.

Now after all these, the best and most approoved medicine is, to take as much of the middle Greene barke of an Eldertree growing on the water side, as wil fill a reasonable vessell, putting therunto as much running water as the vessell will hold, and let it boile till halfe be consumed, and then fill up the vessell againe with water, continuing so to doe three times one after another: and at the last time, when the one halfe is consumed, take it from the fire, and straine it exceedingly through a linnen cloath; then to that decoction adde at least a full third part of the oyle of oates, or for want of that, of oyle olive, or of hogs grease, or sweet butter; and being warmed againe, take a quart thereof, and give it the horse to drinke,

one

one hornefull at his mouth, and another at his nostrills, especially that which casteth out the matter. And in any case let the horse be fasting when he taketh this medicine: For it not onely cureth this, but any sicknesse proceeding from cold whatsoever: It shall be also good to use to his body some wholesome friction, and to his head some wholesome bath; of which baths you shall read more hereafter in a Chapter following. For his dyet, his food would be sodden barley, and sweet hay, and his drinke warme water, or mashes: but if it bee in the Summer season, then it is best to let him run at grasse onely.

## CHAP. XLVI.

*A most rare and certaine approved Medicine to cure any high running Glanders, called the Mourning of the Chine, held of all men incurable.*

**T**HIS disease, to my knowledge, there is not any Smith or Farrier in this Kingdome, can tell how to cure: For it comes not to the extremity till the horse have runne at his nose a yeare or more: and have at the rootes of his tongue a hard lumpe gathered, which will not be dissolved. Now for mine owne part, it is well knowne I have cured many with this medicine onely. Take of *Auripigmentum* and of *Tussilaginis* beaten into fine powder, of each of them foure drammes: Then beating them with fine Turpentine, bring them into a paste, then make of it little cakes or trotches, as broad as a groat, and dry them: This done, lay about two or three of them  
on



on a chaffing-dish of coles, and cover them with a Tunnel, so that the smoake may come out onely at the end thereof, and so without any losse ascend up into the Horses head through his nostrils, then ride the horse till hee begin to sweat: doe this once every morning before water til the running be stopt, which will bee in a very short space, considering the greatnesse of the disease.

### CHAP. XLVII.

#### *Of the Cough.*

**C**oughing is a motion of the Lungs, raised naturally from his expulsive power, to cast out the hurtfull cause, as neezing is the motion of the braine. Now of Coughes, there be some outward, and some inward: those are said to bee outward which proceed of outward causes, as when a horse doth eate or drink too greedily, so that his meat goeth the wrong way, or when he licketh up a feather, or eateth dusty or sharpe bearded straw, and such like, which tickling his throate, causeth him to cough: those which are said to be inward, are either wet or dry, of which wee shal speake more hereafter. Now of these outward coughes, they may proceede from the corruption of the ayre, which if it doe, you shall give him hafe an ounce of *Diapente* in a pint of Sacke, and it will helpe. It may also proceed from dust, and then you must wash it downe by powring into his nostrils Ale and Oyle mingled together. It may come by eating sharpe and sowre things; and then you must put downe his throat pills of sweet butter, whose softnesse

softnesse will helpe him. It may proceed from some little or slight taken cold, and then you shall take the whites and yolkes of two egges, three ounces of sallet oyle, two handfull of beane-flower, one ounce of *Fenugreeke*, mixe them with a pint of old Malmsey, and give it the Horse to drinke three dayes together: or else take Tarre and fresh butter; mixe them together, and give pilles thereof to the horse foure times in seaven dayes, that is, the first, the third, the fifth, and the seaventh day. There be others which use to take a gallon of faire water, and make it ready to seeth: then put thereto a pecke of ground malt, with two handfulls of Box leaves chopt small, and a little groundsell, mixe them all together, and give him every morning and evening a pint for a weeke together. If to the Box leaves you adde Oates and Betony, it is not amisse, so you keepe the Horse warme. Others use to give a horse a pint of Swines blood warme: Others use to boyle in a gallon of water one pound of *Fenugreeke*, then straining it, give the water morning and evening by a pint at a time to drinke, then drying the *Fenugreeke*, give it the horse with his provender. Others use for all manner of coughs to take a quarterne of white Currants, and as much clarified Honey, two ounces of sweete Marjoram, with old fresh grease, and a head of Garlicke, melt that which is to be molten, and punne that which is to be beaten; mixe them together, and give the horse better then a pint thereof three mornings together. Others use to give the Horse the gut of a yong pullet dipt in honey and being warme, and certainly there is not any of these medicines but are



most soveraigne and well approoved. Now whereas some *Farriers* use to thrust downe the throat of the horse a willow wand, rolled about with a linnen cloath, and annointed all over with honey, (I for my part,) doe not like it: for it both torments the horse, more then there is occasion, and doth but onely goe about to take away that which is gone in the struggling, before the medicine can be used: for it is onely for a cough which commeth by a feather, or some such like matter.

#### CHAP. XLVIII.

##### *Of the inward or wet cough.*

**T**ouching inward coughes, which are gotten and ingendred by colds and rhumes of long continuance, being not onely dangerous, but sometimes mortall, you shall understand that they are divided into two kindes, the one wet, the other dry: the wet Cough proceedeth from cold causes taken after great heat; which heat dissolving humours, those humours being againe congealed, doe presently cause obstructions and stopping of the Lungs. Now the signes to know this wet cough, is, the Horse will ever after his coughing, cast out either water or matter out of his nostrills, or champe and chaw with his teeth the thicke matter, which hee casteth out of his throat, as you shall easily perceiue, if you heedfully note him: he will also cough often without intermission; and when he cougheth hee will not much bow downe his head, nor abstaine from his meate: and when hee drinketh, you shall see some of his wa-

ter

ter to issue out of his nostrills. The cure is, first to keepe him exceeding warme; then forasmuch as it proceedeth of cold causes, you shall give him hot Drinckes, and Spices, as Sacke, or strong Ale brewed with cynamon, Ginger, cloves, treacle, long pepper, and either swines grease, faller oyle, or sweet butter; for you shall know that all cold causes are cured with medicines that open and warme; and the hote with such as cleanse and coole. Some use to take a pretty quantity of *Beniamine*, and the yolke of an egge; which being well mixt together, and put into an egge-shel, cast all downe into the horses throat, and then moderately ride him up and downe for more then an quarter of an houre: and doe this three or foure mornings together. Others use to keepe him warme, and then to give him this drinke. Take of Barley one pecke, and boyle it into two or three gallons of running water, till the Barley burst, together with bruised Lycoras, Anyseeds, and Raisins, of each a pound, then straine it, and to that liquor put of honey a pint, and a quarterne of Sugar-candy, and keepe it close in a pot to serve the horse therewith foure severall mornings, and cast not away the Barley, nor the rest of the strainings, but make it hot every day to perfume the horse withall in a close bag; and if he eate of it, it is so much the better: and after this, you shall give the horse some moderate exercise; and for his dyet let him drinke no cold water till his cough abate, and as it lesseneth, so let the water be the lesse warmed.

Now for mine owne part, though all these receits bee exceeding good, and very well approved,



ved, yet in this case, thus hath beene, and ever shall be my practice: if I found either by the heaviness of the horses head, or by the rattling of his nostrils, that the Cough proceeded most from the stopping of his Head, I would onely give him foure or five mornings together, three or foure good round pilles of Butter and Garlicke, (well knoden together) fasting, and then ride him moderately an houre after; but if I found that the sicknesse remained in the chest or brest of the Horse, then I would give him twice in foure dayes, a pint of *Sacke*, halfe a pint of *Sallet Oyle*, and two ounces of *Sugarcandy* well brewed together, and made lukewarme, and then ride him halfe an houre after, and fet him up warme, suffering him to drinke no cold water till his Cough begin to abate and leave him.

But for all wet coughes, frettized and broken Lungs, putrified and rotten Lungs, or any such moist disease, see the new Additions for the mourning of the chine, and it is a certaine cure.

#### CHAP. XLIX.

##### *Of the dry Cough.*

**T**His disease which wee call the dry Cough, is a grosse and tough humour, cleaving hard to the hollow places of the Lungs, which stoppeth the winde-pipes, so that the horse can hardly draw his breath. It doth proceed by ill government from the Rhume, which distilling from the head, falleth down

to the breast, and there inforceth the horse to strive to cast it out.

The especiall signes to know it, is by eating hot meates, as bread that is spiced, straw, dry hay, or such like, his extremity of coughing will increase: by eating cold and moist meates, as grasse, forrage, graines, and such like, it will abate and be the lesse: he cougheth seldome, yet when he cougheth, he cougheth violently, long time together, and drily, with a hollow sound from his chest: he also boweth his head downe to the ground, and forsaketh his meate whilst he cougheth; yet never casteth forth any thing eyther at his mouth or nostrils.

This cough is most dangerous, and not being taken in time, is incurable: for it will grow to the purficke or broken-winded altogether. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancientest Farriers, is, that forasmuch as it proceedeth from hot humors, therefore you shall perfume his head with cold simples, as *Camomill, Mellilot, Licoras, dried red Roses, and Camphire* boyled in water, and the fume made to passe up into his mouth and nostrils.

Others use to take a close earthen pot, and to put therein three pints of the strongest vinegar, and foure egge-shells and all unbroken, and foure heads of Garlicke cleane pild and bruised, and set the pot being very close covered in a warme dunghill, or a horses mixion, and there let it stand 24 houres, then take it forth and open it, and take out the egges which will be as soft as filke, and lay them by untill you have strained the Vinegar and Garlicke through a linnen cloath: then put to that liquor a quarterne of honey,



and halfe a quarterne of Sugarcandy, and two ounces of Lycoras, and two ounces of Aniseedes beaten all into fine powder, and then the horse having fasted all the night, early in the morning, about seaven or eight a clocke, open the Horses mouth with a drench-staffe and a cord, and first cast done his throat one of the eggs, and then presently powre after it a horne full of the aforelaide drinke, being made luke-warme: then cast in another egge, and another hornefull: and thus doe till he hath swallowed up all the eggs, or three at the least; then bridle him, and cover him warmer then he was before, and set him up in the stable, tying him to the bare racke for the space of two houres: then unbridle him, and give him either some oates, hay, or grasse; yet in any case give him no hay, untill it hath beene somewhat sprinkled with water: for there is no greater enemy to a dry cough then dry hay, dry straw or chaffe; then let him have cold water the space of nine dayes. Now if you chance the first morning to leave an Egge untaken, you shall not faile to give it him and the remainder of the drinke the morning following. If you finde by this practise that the cough weareth not away, you shall then purge his head with Pils,, of which you shall read in the chapter of *Purgations*: after his Pils received, you shall let him fast three houres, standing warme cloathed and littered in the stable: you shall also now and then give him a warme mash, and once a day trot him moderately abroad.

There be other *Farriers* which for this dry Cough take onely the herbe called *Lyons foote*, *Ladies mantle*, *Spurge*, and *Smallage*, of each like quantity; seeth

leeth them in a quart of old wine, or a quart of running water till some part be consumed, and give it the horse to drinke; if instead of the hearbs themselves, you give the juyce of the herbs in wine, it is good. There be others which take a good quantity of white Currants, and as much Honey, two ounces of Marjoram, one ounce of Peniriall, with five pounds of fresh grease, and nine heads of *Garlicke*; beate that which is to be beaten, and melt the rest; give this in foure or five dayes like Pils dipt in Hony. Others use to take *Myrre*, *Opoponax*, *Iris Ilyrica* and *Galbanum*, of each two ounces, of red *Storax* three ounces, of *Turpentine* foure ounces, of *Henbane* halfe an ounce, of *Opium* halfe an ounce, beate them to a fine powder, and give two or three spoonfull with a pint of old wine, or a quart of Ale.

Others use to take forty graines of Pepper, foure or five roots of Raddish, foure heads of *Garlicke*, and fixe ounces of sweete Butter; stampe them all well together, and give every day a ball of it to the horse for a weeke together, making him fast two houres after his taking it: and surely it is a most excellent approved medicine for any old over-growne cold, or cough. Other Farriers use to take of Oyle *de Bay*, and of sweet Butter, of each halfe a pound, of *Garlicke* one pound, beate it together unpild; and being well beaten with a pestle of wood, adde your oyle and Butter unto it: then having made it into balls, with a little Wheat flower, give your horse every morning for a weeke and more three or foure balls as bigge as Walnuts, keeping him fasting after from meate three houres, and from drinke till it be night, provided



ded that still his drinke be warme, and his meate, if it possible may be, grasse, or hay sprinkled with water: as for his provender, it would be Oates and Fenugreeke sprinkled among it. Now if you perceive that at a fortnights end, his cough doth nothing at all abate, you shall then for another *weeke* give him againe the same Physicke and dyet, but truely for mine owne part, I have never found it to faile in any horse whatsoever; yet I would wish all Farriers not to be too busie with these inward medicines, except they be wel assured that the cold hath beene long, and that the cough is dangerous.

#### CHAP. L.

*Two excellent true and well approved medicines for any old Cold, dry Cough, shortnesse of breath, purfinesse, or broken-winded.*

**T**He first is, take of Tarre three spoonfull, of sweet butter as much, beat & work them wel together with the fine powder of Lycoras, Anise-seeds, and Sugar-candy, till it be brought to a hard paste: then make it into three round balls, and put into each ball foure or five cloves of Garlick, and so give them to the horse, and warme him with riding both before and after hee hath received the pills, and be assured, that he be fasting when he takes it, and fast at least two houres after he hath taken it.

The second is, take of the white fat or lard of Bacon, a peece foure fingers long, and almost two fingers thicke both wayes: then with your Knife making many holes into it, stop it with as many cloves  
of

of *Garlicke* as you can conveniently get into it, then rowling it in the powder of *Licoras*, *Aniseedes*, *Sugar-candy*, and *Brimstone*, allequally mixt together, give it your horse fasting in a morning at least twice a weeke continually, and ride him after it, and bee sure that all the Hay hee eats be finely sprinkled with water.

## CHAP. LI.

*The best of all other Medicines for a dry*

*Cough, never before mentioned, nor revealed.*

**T**AKE of the Syrrup of *Colts-foot* two ounces, of the powder of *Elitampape*, of *Aniseedes*, and of *Lycoras* of each halfe an ounce, of *Sugar-candy* divided into two parts two ounces, then with sweet butter worke the Syrrup and the powders, and one part of the *Sugar-candy* into a stiffe paste, and thereof make pills or small balls and roule them in the other part of the *Sugar-candy*, and so give it to the horse fasting, and exercise him gently an houre after it, and thus doe for divers mornings till you finde amendment.

## CHAP. LII.

*Of the frettized, broken, and rotten*

*Lungs.*

**C**OUGHES doe many times proceede from the corruption and putrifaction of the *Lungs*, gotten either



either by some extreame cold, running, or teaping, or by over-greedy drinking after great thirst; because the lungs being inclosed in a very thinne filme, they are therefore the much sooner broken; and if such a breach be made, without instant cure, they begin to inflame and apostume, oppressing and sickning the whole lungs. Now the signes to know this disease, is, the horses flanks will beat when he cougheth; and the slower they beate, the more old and dangerous is the disease: he will also draw his winde short, and by little at once: he will groan much, be fearefull and loath to cough; and often turne his head to the place grieved: To conclude, he will never cough but he will bring up something which he wil champ in his mouth after. The cure is, give him two or three ounces of hogs-grease, and two or three spoonful of *Diapente* brewd in a quart of barley water, wherein Currants hath beene sodden. Other *Farriers* use to take a pound of Licoras, & being scraped and sliced, to steepe it in a quart of water foure and twenty houres; then to straine it, then to boyle three or foure ounces of Currants in it, and so give it the horse to drinke, and keepe him fasting three or foure houres after. There bee other *Farriers* which use to take of *Fenugreeke*, and Lenseed, of each halfe a pound, of Gum-dragent, of Masticke, of Myrrh, of Sugar, of Fitch-flowre, of each one ounce; let al these be beaten into fine powder, and then infused one whole night in a good quantity of warme water, and the next day give him a quart of this luke-warme, putting thereunto two ounces of the oyle of Roses, and this you must do many dayes together: and if the disease

bee

be new, it will certainly heale; if it be never so old it will assuredly ease him, but in any case let him drinke no cold water: And for his foode, grasse is the most excellent.

Others use (and it is the best cure) to take of Malmsey a pint, of Hony three spoonefull, mixe them together; the take of *Mirr*, of *Saffron*, of *Cassia* and *Cynamon*, of each like quantity, beate them to a fine powder, and give two spoonefull thereof in the wine to drinke, doe this at least a fortnight together, and it is certaine, it will helpe these frettized and broken lungs; but for the putrified and rotten lungs, we will speake more in this next Chapter.

### CHAP. LII.

#### *Of the putrified and rotten Lungs.*

**T**His disease of rotten and exulcerate lungs, you shall know by these signes: hee will cough oft and vehemently, and ever in his coughing hee will cast little reddish lumpes out of his mouth: hee will decay much in his flesh, and yet eate his meate with more greedinesse then when hee was found: and when he cougheth, hee will cough with more ease and clearenesse then if his lungs were but onely broken. The cure whereof, according to the practise of our ordinary English *Farriers* is, to give the horse divers mornings together a pint of strong Vinegar warme, or else as much of mans Urine, with halfe so much Hogs-grease brewed warme together.

But the more ancient *Farriers* take a good quantity of the juyce of Purslaine mixt with the oyle of  
Roses,



of Roses, adding thereunto a little *Tragacanthum*, which hath before beene layd to steep in goats milke, or for want thereof in barley, or oaten milke strained from the corn, and give him a pint therof every morning for seaven daies together. This medicine is but onely to ripen and breake the Impostume, which you shall know if it hath done, because when the sore is broken his breath will stinke exceedingly: Then shall you give him for other seaven daies this drinke: Take of the roote called *Costus* two ounces, and of *Basia*, or *Cynamon*, three ounces beaten into fine powder, and a few Raisins, and give it him to drinke with a pint of Malmsey. Others use to take of *Frankinsence* and *Aristolochia*, of each two ounces beaten into fine powder, and give the horse two or three spoonefuls thereof with a pint of Malmsey. Others take of unburnt brimstone two ounces, of *Aristolochia* one ounce and halfe beaten to powder, and give the horse that with a pint of Malmsey.

#### CHAP. LIIII.

*Of shortnesse of breath, or purfinesse.*

**T**HIS disease of short-breath, or purfinesse, may come two severall wayes, that is, naturally, or accidentally: naturally, as by the straightnesse of his Conduits, which convey his breath, when they want liberty to carry his breath freely, or being cloyed up with fat, force stoppings and obstructions in his winde-pipe, and thereby makes his Lungs labour and worke painefully. Accidentally, as by hasty running after drinking, or upon full stomacke, by which humours

humours are compelled to descend downe into the throat and Lungs, and there stoppeth the passage of the breath. The signes of this disease are continuall panting and heaving of his body without any coughing, great heat of breath at his nostrils, and a squeeking or drawing in of his nose when he breatheth: besides, a coveting to hold out his head whilst hee fetcheth his winde. The cure, according to the opinion of some of our best *Farrriers*, is to give him in his provender, the Kernels of grapes, for they both fat and purge; and you must give them plentifully. The warme blood of a sucking Pigge is excellent good also. Other *Farrriers* use to take Venus-haire, Ireos, Ash-keyes, Licoras, Fenugreek, and Raisins, of each a dram and a halfe, Pepper, Almonds, Borage, Nettle-seed, Aristolochia, and Coloquintida, of each two drammes, Algaritium one dram and an halfe, honey two pound, dissolve them with water, wherein Lycoras hath beene sodden, and give him one pint every morning for three or foure mornings. Others use to take Molline, or Longwort, and make a powder thereof, and give two spoonefull thereof with a pint of running water, or else powder of Gentian in the foresaid manner, and do it for divers mornings.

Others use to take of Nutmegs, Cloves, Gallin-gall, graines of Paradise: of each three drammes, Caraway seed, and Fenugreece, a little greater quantity, as much Saffron, and halfe an ounce of Lycoras, beate them all into fine powder: Then put two or three spoonefull thereof to a pint of white wine, and the yolkes of foure egges, and give it the horse to drinke:



drinke: then tye his head up high to the racke for an  
houre after: that done, either ride him, or walke  
him up and downe gently and keep him fasting foure  
or five houres after at the least: the next day turn him  
to grasse and he will doe well. There be other which  
use to let the horse blood in the necke-veine, & then  
give him this drinke: Take of wine and oyle of each  
a pint, or *Frankinsence* halfe an ounce, and of the  
juyce of *Hare-hound* halfe a pint; mixe them well to-  
gether, and give them to drinke.

Others use to give him onely somewhat more then  
a pint of honey, Hogs-grease and Butter molten to-  
gether, and let him drinke it luke-warme. Egges  
made soft in Vineger, as is shewed in the Chapter of  
the dry cough, is excellent for this shortnesse of  
breath, so you give the eggs increasing, that is the  
first day one, the second day three, and the third five:  
and withall to powre a little Oyle and Wine into his  
nostrils is very good also. There be other *Farrriers*  
which use to take a *Snake*, and cut off her head and  
taile, and then take out the guts and intrailles, boyle  
the rest in water till the bone part from the flesh:  
Then cast the bone away, and give every third day  
of this decoction more then a pint, till you have  
spent three Snakes: and this is excellent good for the  
dry cough also.

Now the last and best medicine for this shortnesse  
of breath (for indeed in this case I doe not affect  
much physicking) is onely to take Aniseeds, Licoras,  
and Sugar-candy, all beaten into very fine powder,  
and take foure spoonefulls thereof and brew it well  
with a pinte of white wine, and halfe a pint of Sallet-  
oyle:

oyle: and use this ever after your horses travell, and a day before he is travelled.

## CHAP. LV.

*Of the broken-winded, or Parsicke horse.*

**T**His disease of broken-winded, I have ever since I first began to know either horse or horse-leach craft, very much disputed with my selfe: and for many yeares did constantly hold (as still I doe) that intruth there is no such disease: onely in this I found by daily experience, that by over-hasty or sudden running of a fat horse (or other) presently after his water, or by long standing in the stable with no exercise and foule food, that thereby grosse and thicke humors may be drawne downe into the horses body so abundantly, that cleaving hard unto the hollow places of the Lungs, and stopping up the wind-pipes, the winde may be so kept in, that it may onely have his resort backward, and not upward, filling the guts, and taking from the body great part of his strength and lively-hood: which if from the corruption of our old inventions, wee call broken-winded, then I must needs confesse, that I have seene many broken-winded horses. The signes of which disease are these, much and violent beating of his flanks, especially drawing up of his belly upward, great opening and raising of his nostrills, and a continuall swift going too and fro of his tuell: besides, it is ever accompanied with a dry and hollow cough. The cure, I must needs say in so great an extremity (for it is the worst of all the evils of the lungs.



Lungs which are before spoken of) is most desperate, but the preservations and helps both to continue the horses health and his dayly service, are very many, as namely ( according to the opinion of the Ancient *Farriers*) to purge your horse by giving him this drinke. Take of *Maiden-haire*, *Ireos*, *Ashe*, *Licoras*, *Fenagreeke*, *Basnis*, of each halfe an ounce, of *Cardanum*, *Pepper*, bitter *Almonds*, *Borage*, of each two ounces, of *Nettle-seed*, and of *Aristolochia* of each two ounces, boyle them all together in a sufficient quantity of water, and in that decoction dissolve halfe an ounce of *Agaricke*, and two ounces of *Coloquintida*, together with two pound of honey, and give him a pint and a halfe of this at a time, for at least a weeke together, and if the medicine chance at any time to proove too thicke, you shall make it thin with water, wherein *Licoras* hath beene sodden; and some *Farriers* also besides this medicine, will with a hot Iron draw the flanks of the Horse to restrain their beating, and slit the Horses nostrils to give the winde more liberty, but I do not affect eyther the one or the other: The best diet for a horse in this cause, is grasse in Summer, and hay sprinkled with water in Winter. There be other *Farriers* which for this infirmity hold, that to give the horse three or foure dayes together sodden wheat, and now and then a quart of new sweet wine, or other good wine, mixt with *Lycoras* water, is a certaine remedy. There be other *Farriers* which for this disease take the guts of a Hedge-hog, and hang them in a warme Oventill they be dry, so that a man may make powder of them: Then give your horse

two

two or three Spoonfull thereof with a pint of wine, or strong Ale: then the rest mixe with Anise-seeds, Lycoras, and sweete butter, and make round bals or pils thereof, and giue the horse two or three after his drinke: and so let him fast at least two houres after. Now when at any time you give him any Proven-der, bee sure to wash it in *Ale* or *Beere*; then take *Comin*, *Anise-seeds*, *Lycoras*, and *Sentuary*, of each a iust quantity, make them, being mixt together, into fine powder, and strew two Spoonfull thereof vpon the *Proven-der* beeing wet. This *Physicke* must be used for a fortnight at the least. Others vse to take of *Cloves* and *Nutmegs* three drams, of *Galingale* and *Cardomonum* three drams, of *Soot*, of *Bay-seeds*, and *Comin*, of each three drams, and make them into fine powder, and put it into white wine, being well tempered with a little *Saffron*: then put to so many yolke of *Egges* as may countervaille the other quantity: then mixe them with Water wherein *Lycoras* hath beene sodden, making it so thin, that the Horse may drinke it; and after he hath drunke the quantity of a pint and halfe of this *drinke*, tye up his head to the *racke*, and let him so stand at least an houre after, that the *drinke* may descend into his guts, then walke him gently abroad, that the Medicine may worke; and in any case giue him no Water for the space of foure and twenty houres after: The next morning giue him some grasse to eate, and the branches of Willow or Sallow, which will coole the heate of the potion.

Now there be other *Farriers* which take of *Pances*, *Longwort*, *Maiden-haire*, the crops of *Nettles*, *Car-*



*du* *Benedictus*, herbe *Pluetin*, the rootes of *Dragon* bruiled, the rootes of *Elicampane* bruiled, of water-hempe, of *Peniriall*, of *Lightwort*, of *Angelica*, of each of these a good handfull, or so many of these as you can conveniently get: bruise them and lay them all night in two or three gallons of Water, and give it a boyle in the morning, and let the horse drinke thereof as much luke-warme as hee will, then after this drinke, give him a pretty quantity of sodden wheate: use this diet for a Weeke or more at the least: and then if the season be fit, put him to grasse. This cure is of great reputation, and thought to helpe when all other faileth: for mine owne part, I wish every man to judge it by the practise.

There be others which onely for nine or ten daies together, will have their horse water, wherein *Lycoras* hath beene sodden, mixt with Wine, and hold it a most soveraigne helpe.

There be others which will onely give new milke from the Cow: But I despaire in that cure, because Milke being onely flegmaticke, flegme is the onely substance of this disease. Other Farriers use to keep the horse fasting foure and twenty houres, then take a quart of Ale, a quarter of an ounce of Fenugreeke, halfe a quarter of Bayes, of the Greene barke of Elder trees, of Sugar-candy, of water Cresses, of red Mints, of red Fennell, of Haw-tree leaves, and of Primrose leaves, of each halfe an ounce, the whites of fixe egges; beat these in a mortar, and seeth them in the Ale, give it him to drinke: then let him fast after two houres: then give him meate and provender enough, yet but little drinke. Others use to  
give

give him wet hay and moderate travaile: then take twenty egges, and steepe them in vinger foure and twenty houres, giving the horse two every morning, and after the egges are spent, a pottle of new milke from the Cow.

Now there be other *Farriers* which onely will dissolve in Vinegar fifteene egges, and give the horse the first day three, the second day five, and the third seaven, and hold it a good helpe. Others will take an ounce of Frankinsence, two ounces of Brimstone, and mixe it with a pint of Wine, and halfe a pint of Honey. Others will take *Sal-niter*, burnt with the powder of pitch, and give it with the same quantity of Wine and Honey. Others wil onely give *Sal-niter* mingled with his meate, provided alwaies, that in every cure you keepe your horse from cold and labour, and daily chafe his head with oyle and Wine. But of this looke in the last new Additions for the dry Cough, noted thus.

## CHAP. LVI.


*Of the dry Malady or Consumption.*

**T**His disease of the dry Malady, or as the Ancient Farrier steame it, a generall Consumption, is nothing but a meere exulceration of the Lungs, proceeding from a cankerous fretting and gnawing humour ingendred by cold and surfeit, which descending from the head, sickneth and corrodeth the Lungs. Some of our ignorant *Farriers* wil call it the mourning of the Chine, but they are thus far forth deceived: that the mourning of the Chine doth e-



ver cast some filthy matter from the nose, and the dry malady never casteth foorth any thing.

The signes to know this dry Malady or Consumption, are these: His flesh, and strong estate of body will consume and waste away, his Belly will be gaunt, his Backe bone hid, and his skin so stretched or shrunk up, that if you strike on him with your hand, it will sound hollow like a *Tabor*: his haire will hardly shed, and eyther hee will vtterly deny his meate, or the meate hee eateth will not digest, prosper, or breed any flesh on his body; he wil offer to cough, but cannot, except in a faint manner, as though he had eaten small bones; and truely, according to the opinion of others, so I finde by mine owne practise of fifty yeares, that it is incurable; yet that a horse may be long preserved to doe much service, I haue found it by these helps: First, to purge his head with such Fumes and Pils as are good for the Glaunders, which you may find in the Chapter of Purgations, then giue him Cole-worts small chopt with his Provender, and now and then the blood of a sucking Pig warme.

There be other wel experienced men, that instead of the blood, will giue eyther the iuyce of *Leekes* mixt with Oyle and Wine, or else Wine and *Frankinsence*, or Sallet Oyle and the iuyce of *Rue* mixt together: But in my conceite, the best cure is to  purge his body cleane with comfortable and gentle scourges, and then to be suffered to run at Grasse, both for a Winter and a Summer, and there is no question but hee must necessarily end or mend, for languish long hee cannot.

CHAP.

## CHAP. LVII.

*Of the consumption of the flesh.*

**T**His Disease which wee call the Consumption of the flesh, is an unnaturall or generall dislike, or falling away of the whole body, (or as we terme it,) the wasting of the flesh, which proceedeth from diuers grounds: as namely, from inward surfeits, either by naughty foode, or ill dyet, or from uncleane, moyst, and stinking lodging; but especially from disorderly labour, as by taking great and suddaine colds after violent heate, or such like; all which procure the wasting or falling away of the flesh. The signes whereof are these: first, an unnatural and causelesse leanness, a dry and hard skin cleaving fast to his sides, want of stomacke, or appetite to his meate, a falling away of his fillets, and a generall Consumption both of his buttocks and shoulders: the cure whereof, according to the Ancients, is to take a Sheepes head unslaied, and boyle it in a gallon and a halfe of Ale, or running water, untill the flesh be consumed from the bones; then straine it through a Cloath, and put thereto of Sugar halfe a pound, of Cynamon one ounce, of conserve of Roses, of Barberries and of Cherries, of each one ounce; mingle them together, and give the Horse every morning a quart therof luke-warme; till two sheepes heades bee spent; and after every time hee drinketh, let him bee gently Walked or Ridden up and downe according to his strength, that is, if the Weather bee warme, abroad, if it bee cold and Windy, then in-



in the stable, or some close house, suffering him neither to eat nor drinke for two houres after his medicine; and from cold water you shall keepe him the space of fifteene dayes. Nor for his ordinary foode or Provender, you shall repute that best which he eateth best whatsoever it bee; and that you shall give by little and little, and not any grosse or great quantity at once, because the aboundance and glut of foode taketh away both the appetite and nutriment which should proceede from wholesome feeding.

#### CHAP. LVIII.

##### *How to make a leane horse fat.*

**B**ESIDES this generall Consumption of a Horses flesh, which for the most part, or altogether, proceedeth from sicknesse, there is also another Consumption, or want of flesh, which proceedeth from neshnesse, tendernesse, freenesse of Spirit, and the climate under which the horse is bred: as namely, when a Horse that is bred in a warme Climate, comes to live in a cold; or when a Horse that is bred upon a fruitfull and rich soyle, comes to live in a barren and dry place. In any of these cases the Horse will be leane without any apparent signe of griefe or Disease, which to recover there bee many receites and medicines, as namely: The ancient *Farriers* did use when a horse either grew leane without sicknesse or wound, or any knowne distemperature, to take a quarter of a pecke of beanes, and boyle them in two gallons of water till they swell or burst, then to mixe with them a pecke of wheate branne, and so

to give it the horse in manner of a Mash, or in stead of provender: for it will fat suddenly. Others, and especially the *Italians*, will take Cole-worts, and having sodden them, mixe them with wheat bran, and salt, and give them in stead of Provender. There bee others which take the fatty decoction of three Tortoyse being well sodden, (their heads, tailes, bones, and feete being rejected) and give it the Horse, suppose it fatteth suddenly: or if you mixe the flesh of the Tortoyse so sodden with your horses provender, that is good also: But as the simples are *Italian*, and not *English*, so for mine owne part, I referre the use rather to them then to my Country-men. There be others which use to fat up their horses by giving them a certaine graine which we call *Bucke*, in the same manner as wee give oates or pease. There be others which to fat a Horse, will give him onely parched wheate, and a little wine mixed with his water, and amongst his ordinary Provender alwaies some wheate bran; and bee exceeding carefull that the horse be cleane drest, well rubbed, and soft littered: for without such cleane keeping there is no meate will enjoy, or do good upon him; and also when he is fed, it must be by little at once, and not surfeited. There bee other *Farriers* which to feede up a leane horse, will take Sage, Savin, Bay-berries, Earth-nuts, Beares grease, to drinke with a quart of Wine. Others will give the intrails of a Barbell or Tench with white wine. Others will give new hot drasse, and new branne, and twenty hard roasted egges, the shells being pulled off, then bruise them, and then put thereto a pretty quantity of Salt, then mixe all



together, and give a good quantity thereof to the horse at morne, noone, and at evening for his provender; and one a day (which would bee at high noone) give him a quart or three pints of strong Ale; and when the horse beginneth to bee gluttred upon this meate, then give him dryed oates: if he be gluttred upon that, then give him bread, if hee leave his bread, give him malt, or any graine that hee will eate with a good Appetite, observing ever to keepe the horse very warme, and with this dyet in foureteene dayes the leanest horse will be made exceeding fat. There be other *Farriers* which to make a horse fat, wil take a quart of Wine, and halfe an ounce of Brimstone finely beaten with a raw egge, and a penny weight of the powder of *Mirrhe*; mixe all together, and give it the horse to drinke many mornings together. Others will take three leaved grasse, halfe Greene, and halfe dry, and give it to the horse in stead of hay, by little at once, and it will fat suddenly, onely it will breed much rank blood. Other *Farriers* use to take two penny worth of pepper, and as much saffron, aniseedes, and Turmericke, a penny worth of long pepper, two penny worth of Treacle, a penny worth of Lycoras, a good quantity of Peniriall, and Archangell: give the horse these with the yolkes of egges in milke to drinke. Others use to take wheate made cleane, and sod with salt and lard dryed in the Sunne, and give it twice a day before each watering. Others strong Ale, *Myrre*, salter oyle, and twenty graines of white pepper; and in stead of the Ale, you may take the Decoction, that is, the Water wherein Sage and Rue hath beene sodden, and it will soone make the horse

horse fat. Others take sodden beanes well bruised, and sprinkled with salt, adding to the Water foure times so much beane flowre, or Wheate branne, and give that to the horse, and it will fat him suddenly. Wine mixt with the blood of a sucking Pigge, made luke-warm, or wine with the iuyce of Feather-feaw, or an ounce of Sulphur, and a peny weight of Myrre, well made into powder, together with a new laid Egge, will raise up a horse that languisheth. Barley dried, or Barley boyled till it burst, either will fat a horse.

But the best way of fattening of a horse (for most of the wayes before prescribed, are not to breed fat that will continue) is first to give your horse three mornings together, a pint of sweet wine, and two spoonefull of *Diapente* brewd together: For that drink will take away all infection and sicknesse from the inward parts: then to feed him well with provender at least foure times a day, that is, after his water in the morning, after his water at noone, after his water in the evening, and after his water at 9 of the clocke at night. Now you shall not let his provender bee all of one sort, but every meale, if it may be, change, as thus: if in the morning you give him Oates, at noone likewise you shall give him bread, at evening beanes or Pease mixt with wheate branne, at night sodden Barley, &c. and ever observe of what food he eateth best, of that let him have the greatest plenty, and there is no question but hee will in short space grow fat, sound, and full of spirit, without either mislike or sicknesse.



## CHAP. LIX.

*The mirrour and maſter of all Medicines, teaching  
how to make the leanest and unſoundest Horſe  
that may be, fat, ſound, and fit either  
for market or travaile in the ſpace  
of foureteene daies.*

**I**F your horſe be full of all the inward diſeaſes that  
may be, and brought to that diſlike and poverty  
that you are desperate of his life, you ſhall take of  
Aniſeedes, of Comenſeedes, of Fenugreeke, of  
Carthamus, of Elicampane, of the flowre of Brim-  
ſtone, of browne Sugar-candy, of each of theſe two  
ounces, beaten and ſearſt to a very fine powder, then  
take an ounce of the juyce of Licoras, and diſſolve it  
in halfe a pint of white wine, then take three ounces  
of the Syrrup of Colts-foot, of Sallet oyle, and of  
life honey, of each halfe a pint, then mixe all this  
with the former powders, and with as much wheate  
flowre as will binde and knit them altogether, worke  
them into a ſtiſſe paſte, and make thereof balls as  
bigge as French Walnuts, huls and all, and ſo keepe  
them in a cloſe Gally-pot, and when you have oc-  
caſion to uſe them, take one and anoynt it with  
ſweete Butter, and give it the horſe in the manner of a  
pill, and ride him a little after it, then feed and water  
him as at other times. And thus doe (if it bee to pre-  
vent ſickneſſe) for three or foure mornings together.  
But if it be to take away infirmity, as Glanders, &c.  
then uſe it at leaſt a weeke or more.

But if to take away molten-greaſe, then inſtant-  
ly

ly after his heate, and in his heate.

But if to fatten a horse, then use it at least a fortnight: now as you give them thus in the manner of a Pill, so you may give them dissolved in sweete Wine, Ale, or Beere.

Lastly, if it bee to fatten a Horse, then you shall take the second Balls: that is to say, of Wheate-meale sixe pound, or as Physitians write, *Quantum sufficit*, of Aniseedes two ounces, of Comen seedes sixe drammes, of *Carthamus* one dram and a halfe, of Fenugreeke seedes one ounce two drammes, of Brimstone one ounce and a halfe, of Sallet oyle one pint two ounces, of hony one pound and a halfe, of white wine foure pints: This must bee made into paste, the hard Simples being pounded into powder, and finely searst, and then well kneaded together, and so made into balls as bigge as a mans fist, and then every morning and evening when you would water your horse, dissolve into his cold water one of these balls, by lathering and chafing the same in the water, and then give it him to drinke. The horse it may be will coy at the first to drinke, but it is no matter, let him fast til he take it: for before two balls bee spent, hee will refuse all waters for this onely: This is the medicine above all medicines, and is truely the best scouring that can bee given to any horse whatsoever: for besides his wonderfull feeding, it cleanseth the body from all bad humours whatsoever.



## C H A P. LX

*Of the Breast-paine, or paine in the breast.*

**T**Hough most of our *Farriers* are not curious to understand of this disease, because it is not so common as others: yet both my selfe and others find it is a disease very apt to breed, and to endanger the Horse with death. The Italians call it *Grannerza di petto*, and it proceedeth from the superfluity of blood and other grosse humours, which being dissolved by some extreame and disorderly heat, resorteth downward to the breast, and paineth the horse extreamly, that he can hardly goe. The signes are, a stiffe staggering, and weake going with his fore-legges; and hee can very hardly, or not at all, bow downe his head to the ground, either to eate or to drinke, and will groan much when he doth either the one or the other. The cure is, first to bathe all his breast and fore-boorthes with the oyle of *Peter*; and if that doe not helpe him within three or foure dayes, then to let him blood on both his breast-veines in the ordinary place, and then put in a rowel either of haire, corke, horne, or leather, of all which, and the manner of rowelling, you shall Read in a more particular chapter hereafter in the booke of *Chyrurgery*.

☞ Now there be other *Farriers* which for this sicknesse will first give the horse an inward drench, as namely, a pint of sweet wine, and two spoonfull of *Diapente*, then bathe all his breast and legs with wine and oyle mingled together, and in some ten or twelve daies it will take away the grieve.

C H A P.

## CHAP. LXI.

*Of the sicknesse of the Heart, called  
the Anticor.*

**T**His sicknesse of the heart, which by the ancient *Farriers* is called *Anticor*, as much as to say, against or contrary to the heart, is a dangerous and mortall sicknesse, proceeding from the great abundance of blood which is bred by too curious and proud keeping, where the horse hath much meate, and little or no labour, as for the most part your Geldings of price have, which running all the Summer at grasse, do nothing but gather their owne food, and such like, where the masters too much love and tenderesse is the meanes to bring the horse to his death as wee finde daily in our practice: for when such naughty and corrupt blood is gathered, it resorteth to the inward parts, and so suffocateth the heart. The signes whereof are, the horse will many times have a small swelling rise at the bottome of the Breast, which swelling will encrease and rise upward even to the top of the necke of the horse, and then most assuredly it kills the horse: he will also hang his head either downe to the manger, or downe to the ground, forsaking his food, and groaning with much painfulnesse. This Disease is of many ignorant Smith taken sometimes for the Yellowes, and sometimes for the Staggers, but you shall know that it is not, by these observations: First, neither about the whites of his eyes, nor the insides of his lippes shall you perceiue any apparant Yellowes, and so then it cannot

Note this  
well.



cannot be the Yellowes, nor will he have any great swelling about his eyes, nor dizzinesse in his head, before hee bee at the point of death; and so consequently it cannot be the Staggers. The cure whereof is two fold: the first a prevention, or preservative before the disease come: the second a remedy after the disease is apparant.

For the prevention, or preservative, you shall observe, that if your horse live idly, either at grasse or in the stable, and withall grow verry fat, which fatnesse is never uncompanied with corruptnesse, that then you faile not to let him blood in the neck-veine before you turne him to grasse, or before you put him to feed in the stable; and likewise let him blood two or three moneths after, when you see he is fed, and at each time of letting blood, you must make your quantity according to the goodnesse of the blood: For if the blood be blacke and thicke, which is a signe of inflammation and corruption, you shall take the more: if it be pure, red, and thin, which is a signe of strength and healthfulnesse, you shall take little or none at all. There be others which use for this prevention, to give the horse a scouring, or purgation of Malmsey, Oyle, and Sugar-candy, the making and use whereof you shall read in the Chapter of Purgations, and this would be given immediately when you put your horse to feede, and as soone as you see his skinne full swolne with fatnesse.

Now for the remedy when this disease shall be apparent, you shall let him blood one both his plat-veines, or if the Smiths skill will not extend so farre, then you shall let the Horse blood one the Necke-veine,

veine, and that he bleed abundantly : then you shall give him this drinke. Take a quart of Malmsey, and put thereunto halfe a quarterne of Sugar, and two ounces of Cinamon beaten to powder, and being made warme, give it the horse to drinke : then keepe him very warme in the stable, stuffing him round about with soft wispes very close, especially about the stomacke, least any winde doe annoy him : and let his ordinary drinke be warme mashes of malt and water, and his foode onely that, whatsoever it be, which hee cateth with the best stomacke.

Now if you see any swelling to appeare, whether it bee soft or hard : then besides letting him blood, you shall strike the swelling in divers places with a Fleame or Launcet, that the corruption may issue forth ; and then anoynt it with Hogges-grease made warme : For that will either expell it, or bring it to a Head, especially if the swelling be kept exceeding warme. There be other Farriers which for this disease, use to let the horse blood, as is aforesaid, and then to give him a quart of Malmsey, well brewed with three spoonefull of the powder called *Diapente* ; and if the swelling arise, to lay thereunto nothing but hay well sodden in old urine, and then keep the same dyet as is aforesaid. Others use after the letting of blood, to give the horse no drinke, but onely ten or twelve spoonefulls of that water which is called Doctor *Stephens* Water, and is not unknowne to any Apothecary : and then for the rest of the cure to proceede in all things as is before specified, and questionlesse I have seene strange effects of this practice.



CHAP. LXII.  
*Of tyred horses.*

SINCE wee are thus far proceeded into the inward and vitall parts of a horses body, it is not amisse to speake something of the tiring of horses, and of the remedies for the same, because when a horse is truely tired (as by over extreame labour) it is questionlesse that all his vitall parts are made sicke and feebled. For to tell you in more plainnesse what tiring is, it is when a horse by extreame and uncessant labour, hath all his inward and vitall powers which should accompany and rejoyce the heart, expelled and driven outward to the outward parts, and lesse deserving members, leaving the heart forlorne and sicke, insomuch that a generall and cold faintnesse spreadeth over the whole body and weakneth it, in such sort that it can endure no further travaile, til those lively Heates, Faculties, and Powers, bee brought unto their naturall and true places backe againe, and made to give comfort to the heart whom their losse sickned.

Now for the tiring of horses, though in truth it proceedeth from no other cause but this before spoken, yet in as much as in our common and vulgar speech, wee say every horse that giveth over his labour is tyred, you shall understand, that such giving over may proceede from foure causes: the first, from inward sicknesse: the second, from some wound received either of body or limbes: the third, from dulnesse of Spirit, Cowardlinesse, of Restinesse; and the

the fourth from most extreame labour and travaile, which is true tyrednesse indeede. Now for the first, which is inward sicknesse, you shall looke into the generall signes of every disease, and if you finde any of those signes to be apparent, you shall straight conclude upon that disease, and taking away the cause thereof, have no doubt but the effects of his tiring will vanish with the same: for the second, which is by some wound received, as by cutting or dismembring the sinewes, ligaments, or muscles, or by straining or stooming any bone or joynt, or by pricking in shooing, or striking naile, iron, stub, or thorne into the sole of the horses foot, and such like.

Sith the first is apparent to the eye, by dis-joyning the skin, the other by halting, you shall take a survey of your horse, and finding any of them apparent, looke what the griefe is, repaire to the latter part of this booke, which intreateth of Chyrurgery, and finding it there use the meanes prescribed, & the tiring will easily be cured. Now for the third, which is dulnesse of Spirit; Cowardnesse or restinesse, you shall finde them by these signes: If hee have no apparant signe either of inward sicknesse, or outward griefe, neither sweateth much, nor sheweth any great alteration of countenance: Yet notwithstanding tyreth, and refuseth reasonable labour, then such tiring proceedeth from dulnesse of spirit; but if after indifferent long travaile the horse tyre, and then the man descending from his backe, the Horse runne or trot away, as though he were not tyred: the man then mounting againe, the horse utterly refuse to goe forward, such tiring proceedeth from cowardlinesse;

K

but



but if a horse within one, two, or three miles Riding, being temperately used, and being neither put to any tryall of his strength, nor, as it were scarcely warmed, if he in his best strength refuse labour, and tyre, it proceedeth onely from Restinesse and ill conditions. Then for the cure of any of all these, proceeding from Dulnesse, Fearefulnesse, and Unwillingnesse, you shall take ordinary Window-glasse, and beate it into fine powder: Then take up the skinn of each side the *Spurre* veyne betweene your finger and your thumbe, and with a fine nayle or bodkin, make divers small holes through his skinn, then rubbe Glasse powder very hard into those holes; which done, mount his backe, and doe but offer to touch his sides with your heeles, and be sure if hee haue life in him, hee will goe forward, the greatest feare being that he will still but goe too fast: but after your iourney is ended, and you alighted, you must not fayle (because this powder of Glasse will *corrode* and *rot* his sides) to annoynt both the fore places with the powder of *Iet* and *Turpentine* mixt together, for that will draw out the venom, and heale his sides againe. There be others which use when a Horse tyreth thus through dull cowardlinesse or Restinesse, to thrust a burning Brand or yron into his Buttocks, or to bring Bottles of blazing straw about his eares, there is neither of the Cures but is exceeding good.

But for the true tyred horse, which tyreth through a naturall faintnesse, drawne from exceeding labour: the signes to know it being long trauell, much sweat, and willingnesse of course during his strength: the  
Cure

cure thereof, according to the opinion of some *Farrriers*, is to power oyle and vineger into his nostrills, and to give him the drinke of Sheeps heads, mentioned in the Chapter of the consumption of the flesh, being the 57 Chapter of this booke, and to bathe his Legs with a comfortable bath, of which you shall finde choyse in the Chapter of Bathes, or else charge them with this charge: take of Bole-armony, and of Wheate flowre, of each halfe a pound, and a little Rozen beaten into fine powder, and a quart of strong Vineger; mingle them well together, and cover all his Legges therewith, and if it bee in the Summer, turne him to grasse, and he will recover his wearinesse. Others use to take a slice of fresh beefe; having steeped it in Vineger, lap it about your bit or snaffle, and having made it fast with a threed, ride your Horse therewith, and he will hardly tyre: yet after your journey is ended, bee sure to give your horse rest, much warmth, and good feeding, that is, warme mashes, and store of provender, or else he will be the worse whilest he liveth.

Now if it be so that your horse tyre in such a place as the necessity of your occasions are to be preferred before the value of your horse, and that you must seeke unnaturall meanes to controule nature: In this case you shall take (where the powder of Glasse before spoken of cannot be had) three or foure round Pibble stones, and put them into one of his Eares, and then tye the Eare that the stones fall not out, and the noyse of those stones wil make the Horse go after he is utterly tyred; But if that fayle, you shall with a Knife make a hole in the flap of the Horses



Eare, and thrust a long rough sticke, full of nicks, through the same; and ever as the horse slackes his pace, so saw and fret the sticke up and downe in the hole, and be sure whilest he hath any life he will not leave going.

Many other torments there are which bee needlesse to rehearse, onely this is my most generall advice, if at any time you tyre youre horse, to take of old urine a quart, of Salt-peter three ounces, boyle them well together, and bathe all the horses foure legs in the same, and without question it will bring to the finewes their naturall strength and nimblenesse, and for other defects warme and good keeping will cure them.

And although some of our Northern *Farriers* doe hold, that oaten dough will prevent tiring, yet I have not approved it so, because I could never get any horse that would eat it, the dough would so sticke and clambe in the horses mouth: therefore I hold the Cures already receited to be fully sufficient. But for further satisfaction use these, which I reserved for my owne privacy.

✧ Take a quart of strong Ale, and put thereto halfe an ounce of the powder of *Elicampane*, and brew them well together, and give it the horse with an horne.

✧ Take a bunch of *Peniriall* and tye it to the mouth of your bit or snaffle, and it will preserve an horse from tiring. Now if all these faile, then take of your horses Saddle, and rub his backe all over very hard, with the herbe called *Arffmart*, and lay *Arffmart* under his saddle, and so ride him.

## CHAP. L XIII.

*of the Diseases of the stomacke; and first of  
the loathing of meate.*

**T**His Disease of the loathing of meate, is taken two wayes, the one a forsaking of meate, as when a Horses mouth, either through the inflammation of his stomacke, doth breake out into Blisters, or such like venemous soares: or when he hath the Lampas, Gigges, Wolfesteeth, and such like. The cure of all which you shall readily finde in the second part of this book, which treateth of Chirurgery: the other a dislike of his meate through the intemperature of his stomacke, being either too hot, as proceeding either from rankenesse of blood, or extreame of travaile, as you may perceive by daily experience, when a horse is set up in the stable very hot, and meat instantly given him, it is all things to nothing, but he will loath and refuse it. Hence it comes, that I did ever hate the noone-tide bayting of horses, because mens journies commonly craving haste, the horse cannot take such a naturall cooling as hee ought before his meate, and thereby breeds much sickness and disease: for meat given presently after travaile when a horse is hot, is the mother of all infirmity: or else it proceedeth from the intemperature of the Stomacke, being too cold, as being caused by some naturall defect. Now if it proceed from heate onely, which you shall know either by his sudden loathing of his meate, or the extreame heate of his mouth and breath: Then to coole his stomacke a-



gaine, you shall either wash his tongue with vineger, or give him to drinke cold water mingled with Oyle and Vineger. There be other *Farriers* which use to give this drinke : take of milke and wine of each one pint, and put thereunto of *Mel Rosatum* three ounces, and having washed his mouth with Vineger and Salt; give him the drinke luke-warme with a horne. But if the loathing of his meate proceede from the coldnesse of his stomacke, which onely is knowne by the standing up and staireing of the haire : Then by the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, you shall give him Wine and Oyle mixt together divers mornings to drinke : but others of our late *Farriers* give wine, Oyle, Rue, and Sage boiled together by a quart at a time to drinke. Others to the former Compound will adde white pepper and *Mirre*. Others use to give the horse Onions pill'd and chopt, and *Rocket* seede boyled and bruised in wine. Others use to mixe wine with the blood of a Sow-pigge. Now to conclude, for the generall forsaking or loathing of meate, proceeding either from hot or cold causes in the stomacke, there is nothing better then the Greene blades of Corne (especially wheate) being given in a good quantity, and that the time of the yeare serve for the gathering thereof. Others instead thereof, will give the horse sweet wine and the seeds of *Gith* mixt together, or else sweete wine and *Garlicke* well pill'd and stamp't, being a long time brewd together.

CHAP.

## CHAP. LXIII.

*Of the casting out of the horses drinke.*

**T**He ancient *Farriers*, especially the *Italians*, constantly doe affirme, that a horse may have such a *Paulsey*, proceeding from the coldnesse of his stomacke, and may make him unable to retaine and keepe his *drinke*, but that many times he will vomit and cast it up againe: For mine owne part, from other causes, as from cold in the head, where the Rhume binding about the rootes and Kirnells of the tongue, hath as it were strangled and made straight the passages to the stomacke: There I have many times seene a horse cast his water that he dranke, in very abundant sort backe againe through his Nostrils, and sometimes strive with great earnestnesse to *drinke*, but could not at all. The signes of both (from which cause soever it proceede) is onely the casting up of his *drinke* or water, and the cure thereof is onely to give him *Cordiall* and warme *drinkes*, as is Malmsey, Cynamon, Anise-seedes and Cloves, well brewd and mixt together, and to annoynt his breast, and under his shoulders, with either the oyle of Cipresse, Oyle of Spike, or the oyle of Pepper, and to purge his head with fumies or pils, such as will force him to sneeze, of which you may see store in a chaper following: for such fumigation joyning with these hot oyles, will soone dissolve the humors.



## CHAP. LXV.

*Of Surfeiting with glut of provender.*

**T**Here is not any Disease more easily procured, nor more dangerous to the life of a horse, then this surfeit which is taken by the glut of Provender; it cometh most commonly by keeping the Horse extreame sharpe or hungry, as either by long travell or long standing empty: and then in the height of greedinesse, giving him such superabundance of meate, that his stomacke wanting strength to digest it, all the whole body is driven into an infinite great paine and extremity. The signes are great weaknesse and feeblenesse in the Horses limbes, so that hee can hardly stand, but lyeth downe oft, and being downe, walloweth and tumbleth up and downe as if he had the bots.

The cure thereof, according to the common practise of our common Farriers, is to take a halfe penny worth of blacke Sope, and a quart of new milke, and as much sweete butter as Sope, and having on a Chaffing dish and Coales, mixe them together, and give it the Horse to drinke: this will cleanse the horses stomacke, and bring it to its strength againe.

But the ancient *Farriers* did use first, to let the horse blood in the necke-veine, (because every surfeit breedes distemperature in the blood) then Trot the horse up and downe an houre and more, and if he cannot stale, draw out his Yard and wash it with white Wine made luke-warme, and thrust into his yard

yard either a clove of Garlick, or a little oyle of camomill, with a peece of small waxe candle. If hee cannot dung, first with your hand rake his Fundament, and then give him a glister, of which you shall reade hereafter: When his Glister is received, you shall walke him up and downe till he have emptied his belly, then set him up and keepe him hungry the space of two or three dayes, observing ever to sprinkle the Hay he eateth with a little water, and let his drinke bee warme Water and Branne made mash-wise: After hee hath drunke the drinke, let him eate the Branne if hee please, but from other Provender keepe him still fasting, at the least ten dayes.

There be other Farriers that in this case, use onely to take a quart of Beere or Ale, and two penyworth of Sallet oyle, and as much Dragon Water, a peny worth of Treacle, and make all these warme, upon the coales, then put in an ounce of Cynamon, Anise-seedes, and Cloves, all beaten together, and so give it the horse luke-warme to drinke.

All these receites are exceeding good, yet for mine owne part; and many of the best Farriers confirme the same, and there is nothing better for this disease, then moderate exercise, much fasting, and once in foure or five dayes a pint of sweete Wine, with two spoonefull of the powder of *Diapente*.

CHAP.



## CHAP. LXVI.

*Of foundring in the body, being a Surfeit got either by meate, drinke, or labour.*

**T**His Disease of foundring in the body, is of all surfeits the most vile, most dangerous, and most incident to horses that are dayly travailed; it proceedeth according to the opinion of some Farriers, from eating of much provender suddenly after labour, the horse, being then, as it were, panting hot, (as we may daily see unskilfull horsemen doe at this day,) whereby meate which the horse eateth, not being digested, breedeth evill and grosse humours, which by little and little spreadeth themselves thorough the member, doe at length oppresse and almost confound the whole body, absolutely taking away from him all his strength, insomuch that he can neither goe nor bow his joynts, nor being laid, is able to rise againe: Besides it taketh away from him his instrumentall powers, as the office both of urine and Excrements, which cannot be performed but with extreame paine. There be other Farriers, and to their opinion I rather leane, that suppose it proceedeth from suffering the horse to *drinke* too much in his travaile being very hot, whereby the grease being suddenly cooled, it doth clap about, and suffocate the inward parts with such a loathsome fulnesse, that without speedy evacuation, there can be no hope but of death onely. Now whereas some *Farriers* doe hold that this Foundring in the Body, should bee no other then the foundring in the

the legs, because it is (say they) a melting and dissolution of evill humours which resort downe-ward, they are much deceived: For it is not, as they hold, a dissolution of humours, but rather a binding together of corporall and substantiall evils, which by an unnaturall accident doth torment the heart. Now for the hold which they take of the name of Foundring, as if it were drawne from the *French* word *Fundu*, signifying melting, truely I thinke it was rather the ignorance of our old *Farriers*, which knew not how to intitle the Disease, then any coherence it hath with the name it beareth: For mine owne part, I am of opinion that this Disease which wee call Foundring in the Body, doth not onely proceed from the causes afore-sayd, but also and most oftent by suddaine washing Horses in the Winter leason, when they are extreame fat and hot with instant travaile, where the cold vapour of the water striking into the body, doth not onely astonish the inward and vitall parts, but also freezeth up the skinne, and maketh the blood to leese his office. Now the signes to perceive this Disease, are holding downe of his head, staring up of his haire, coughing, staggering behind, trembling after water, dislike of his meat, leanesse, stiffe going, disability to rise when he is down: And to conclude, which is the chieftest signe of all other, his Belly will be clung up to his backe, and his backe rising up like a Camell.

The cure according to the opinion of the *Farriers*, is first to rake his Fundament, and then to give him a Glister: Which done, and that the horses belly is emptied, then take of Malmsey a quart, of Sugar halfe



halfe a quarterne, of Cynamon halfe an ounce, of Licoras, and anise-seeds, of each two spoonfull beaten into fine powder; which beeing put into the Malmsey, warme them together at the fire, so that the honey may be molten, then give it the horse luke-warme to drinke: Which done, walke him up and down either in the warm stable, or some warme roade the space of an houre, then let him stand on the Bit fasting two hours more, onely let him bee warme clothed, stopt, and littered, and when you give him Hay, let it be sprinkled with water, and let his provender be very cleane sifted from dust, and given by a little at once; and let his drinke be warme mashes of malt and Water. Now when you see him recover and get a little strength, you shal then let him blood in the necke veine, and once a day perfume him with Frankinsence to make him neefe, and use to give him exercise abroad when the weather is warm, and in the house when the weather is stormy.

Now there be other *Farriers* which use for this disease to take a halfe peny worth of Garlicke, two peny worth of the powder of Pepper, two peny worth of the powder of Ginger, two peny worth of Graines bruised, and put all these into a pottle of strong Ale, and give it the horse to drinke by a quart at a time, dyeting and ordering him as afore-said: and when he getteth strength, either let him blood in the necke veine, or the spurre Veines, or on both: to conclude, there is no drinke nor dyet which is comfortable, but is most soveraigne and good for this infirmity.

## CHAP. LXVII.

*Of the greedy worme, or hungry evill  
in Horses.*

**T**HIS hungry evill is a Disease more common then found out by our Farriers, because the most of our horse-masters being of great ignorance, hold it a speciall vertue to see a horse eate eagerly whereas indeede this over-hasty and greedy eating, is more rather an infirmity and sicknesse of the inward parts; and this disease is none other then an insatiate and greedy eating, contrary to Nature and old Custome, and for the most part, it followeth some extreame great Emptinesse, or want of naturall foode, the beast being even at the pinch, and ready to be chap-falne. There be some *Farriers* which suppose that it proceedeth from some extreame cold outwardly taken by travelling in cold and barren places, as in the Forrest and snow, where the outward cold maketh the stomacke cold, whereby all the inward powers are weakned. The signes are onely an alteration or change in the Horses feeding, having lost all temperance; and snatching and chopping at his meat, as if he would devoure the Manger. The cure, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is first to comfort his stomacke by giving him great slices of white bread toasted at the fire, and steeped in Muscadine, or else bread untoasted, and steeped in Wine, and then to let him drinke wheat flower and Wine brewed together. There be others which use to knead stiffe cakes of



of Wheate flower and Wine, and to feede the horse therewith. Others use to make him bread of Pine-tree nuts and wine mingled together, or else common earth and Wine mingled together. But for mine owne part, I hold nothing better then moderately feeding the horse many times in the day with wholesome Beane-bread, well baked, or oates well dried and sifted.

## C H A P. LXVIII.

*Of the diseases of the Liver in generall, and first of the inflammation thereof.*

**T**Here is no question but the Liver of a horse is subject to as many diseases, as either the Liver of a man, or any other creature, onely through the ignorance of our common *Farriers* (who make all inward diseases one sicknesse) the true grounds and causes not being looked into, the infirmity is let passe, and many times poysoned with false potions: but truth it is, that the Liver sometimes by the intemperatenesse thereof, as being either too hot or too cold, too moist, or too dry, or sometimes by meanes of evill humours, as Choler, or Flegme overflowing in the same, Heate ingendring Choler, and Coldnesse Flegme, the Liver is subiect to many sicknesses, and is diversly pained, as by Inflammation, Apostumatation, or Ulcer, or by Obstructions, Stoppings, or hard knobs: or lastly, by the Consumption of the whole substance thereof. The signes to know if the disease proceede from hot causes, is leanness of body, the loathing of meate, voyding Dung of a strong

strong scent, great thirst, and loosnesse of Belly. The signes to know if the disease proceede from cold causes, is good state of body, appetite of meate, dung not stinking, no thirst, and the belly neither loose nor costive. Now to proceede to the particular Diseases of the Liver, and first of the inflammation, you shall understand that it commeth by meanes that the blood through the Aboundance, Thinnesse, boyling heate, or sharpnesse thereof, or through the violence of some outward cause, breaketh out of the Veines, and floweth into the body or substance of the Liver; and so being dispossest of his proper Vessells, doth immediately putrefie, and is inflamed; corrupting so much of the fleshy substance of the Liver, as is either touched or imbrued with the same, whence it commeth, that for the most part, the hollow side of the liver is first consumed, yet sometimes the full side also: This inflammation by a naturall heate is sometimes turned to putrification, and then it is called an Apostumation: which when either by the strength of nature or Art, it doth breake and runne, then it is called an Ulcer, or filthy sore. Now the signes of an inflammation on the hollow side of the Liver (which is the least hurtful) is loathing of meate, great thirst, loosnesse of belly, and a continuall unwillingnesse to lye on the left side: but if the inflammation be on the full side of the Liver, then the signes be short breathing, a dry Cough, much paine when you handle the horse about the Wind-pipe, and an unwillingnesse to lye on the right side. The signes of Apostumation is great heat, long fetching of breath, and a continuall looking to his side.



side. The signes of ulceration, is continuall coldnesse, staring up of the haire and much feeblenesse and fainting, because the filthy matter casting evill vapours abroad, doth many times corrupt the heart and occasion death. Now for the cure of these inflammations, some *Farriers* use to take a quart of Ale, an ounce of *Myrrh*, and an ounce of *Frankinsence*, and brewing them well together, give it the horse divers mornings to drinke. Others use to take three ounces of the seedes of *Smallage*, and three ounces of *Hysop*, and as much *Sutherwort*; and boyle them well in oyle and wine mingled together, and give the horse to drinke; keepe the horse warme, and let him neither drinke cold water, nor eate dry dusty hay.

## CHAP. LXIX.

*Of obstructions, stoppings, or hard knobs on the Liver.*

THESE obstructions or stopping of a horses liver, doe come most commonly by travelling or labouring on a full stomacke, whereby the meat not being perfectly digested, breedeth grosse and tough humors, which humors by the extremity of travell, are violently driven into the small veines, through which the liver ought to receive good nutriment, and so by that meanes breedeth obstructions and stoppings. Now from these obstructions (when they have continued any long time) especially if the humors be cholericke, breedeth many times hard knobs on the liver, which knobs maketh the horse continually lie on

on his right side, and never on the left, because if he should lye on the left side, the weight of the knob would oppresse the stomacke, and even ficken all the vitall parts in him.

The signes of these Obstructions or stoppings, are heavinesse of Countenance, distention or swelling, great dulnesse and sloath in the Horse when hee be- ginneth his travaile, and a continuall looking backe to his short ribs, where remaineth his greatest paine and torment. Now the cure thereof is to seeth con- tinually in the water which hee drinketh, *Agrimony*, *Fumitory*, *Camomil*, *Wormewood*, *Lycoras*, *Aniseedes*, *Smallage*, *Parsley*, *Spicknard*, *Gentian*, *Succory*, *Endive*, and *Lupins*, the vertues whereof are most comfor- table to the Liver. But forasmuch as the most part of our English Farriers are very simple Smiths, whose Capacities are unable to dive into these severall di- stinctions, and that this Worke (or Master-peece) is intended for the weakest braine whatsoever, you shall understand that there bee certaine generall signes to know when the Liver of a horse is grieved with any griefe, of what nature or condition soever it bee, and so likewise generall receits to cure all the griefes, without distinguishing or knowing their natures: You shall know then if a horse have any griefe or paine in his Liver by these signes. First, by a loathing of his meate: next by the wasting of his flesh, drynesse of his mouth, and roughnesse of his tongue, and great swelling thereof, and refusing to lye on the side grieved: And lastly, a continuall loo- king backward.

Now the generall cures for the sicknesse of the Li-  
L ver,



ver, is, according to the opinion of the ancient *Farrriers*, to give the horse *Aloes* dissolved in sweet wine: for it both purgeth and comforteth the Liver. Others use to give him to drinke *Ireos* stamp and mixt with wine and water together, or in stead of *Ireos*, to give him *Calamint*, called of the Latins *Pollimonia*. Others give *Savery* with oyle and wine mixt together. Others use *Liverwort* and *Agrimony* with Wine and oyle. Others use comfortable frictions, and to steepe his Provender in warme water, and to mixe with his Provender a little *Nitrum*, not forgetting to let him stand warme, and lye soft: But that which is generally praised above all medicines, is to give the Horse a Woolfes Liver beaten to powder, and mixe either with Wine, Water, Oyle, or any other medicine.

Now for a conclusion of this Chapter, if the *Farrriers* skill be so good, that hee can distinguish the Nature of each severall infirmity about the Liver, then I would have him to understand, that for inflammations (which are the first beginners of all diseases) would be used simples that mollifie & disperse humours, as by these, *Linseed*, *Fenugreek*, *Camamil*, *Aniseedes*, *Mellilot*, and such like, to which mollifying simples, would be ever added some simples that are astringent or binding, or as these: red Rose leaves, Bramble leaves, Worme-wood, Plantaine, Mirrh, Masticke Storax, and such like. Now for Apostumes, they are to be ripened and voided, and ulcers must be cleansed & scoured downward, either by excrement or urine, and therefore the use of such simples as provoke either the one or the other (of which you shall finde

finde plenty in other Chapters) is most necessary.

## C H A P. L X X.

*Of the Consumption of the Liver.*

**O**F the consumption of the *Liver*, I have spoken something in the Chapter of the mourning of the Chine: yet because amongst our best *Farriers* it is diversly taken, I will shew you their divers opinions. First, some hold it commeth onely from sudden cold after heate, taken either by drinking or standing still. Others hold it commeth of any humour, especially of cholericke matter, shed throughout the whole substance of the liver, which rotting by leasurable degree, doth in the end corrupt and confound all the substance of the Liver, proceeding, as they thinke, from corrupt meates, and sweet drinkes. And the last thinketh it commeth by extreame heat gotten in travell, which inflameth the blood, doth afterward putrifie, corrupt, and exulcerate the whole substance of the Liver: because the Liver is spongi-ous like the Lungs, therefore the cure of this disease is held desperate; yet it bringeth no speedy or sudden death, but a wasting and lingring infirmitie: For the Liver being corrupted, digestion is taken away, and so the body for want of good nutriment, doth in time consume. The signes of this disease is a loathing of meate, and a stretching forth of the horses body at length as he standeth, hee will seldome or never lye downe, his breath will stinke marvellously, and he will continually cast exceeding foule matter eyther at one Nostrill, or at both, according as one



side, or both sides of the Liver is consumed; and on that side which he casteth, hee will ever have betwixt his nether jawes, about the middest of them, a hard knob or kirkel about the bignesse of a Walnut. Now the preservative of this disease, (for in truth it is incurable) is, according to the opinion of some *Farriers*, to take halfe a pint of Malmsey, and as much of the blood of a yong pigge, and to give it the horse luke-warme to drinke. Other *Farriers* use to give the horse no other foode for the space of three dayes, then warme Wort, and oates baked in an Oven, being sure that the horse be kept fasting the first night before he received his *medicine*. Others suppose, that if into the wort which he drinketh, you doe put every morning two or three spoonfull of the powder made of *Agrimony*, red Rose leaves, *Saccharum*, *Rosaceum*, *diarchadon*, *Abbatis*, *Disantalon*, *Lycoras*, and of the liver of a Wolfe, that is more excellent. Others hold that this powder given with Goates milke luke-warme, is very good. Others hold that Malmsey, and the juyce of Featherfew given to drinke is also good.

Others use (and hold it equall with the best) to take an ounce of *Sulphur vive* beaten into fine powder, and a peny weight of *Myrre* beaten to fine powder; mixe them together with a new laid egge, and give them to drink with halfe a pint of Malmsey; use this divers times, and keepe the horse fasting, yet seperate him from other horses, for this disease is infectious.

## CHAP. LXXI.

*Of the diseases of the Gall.*

**A**S is the Liver, even so the gall of a Horse is subject to divers and many infirmities, as to obstructions, according to the opinion of old Farriers: from whence floweth the fulnesse and emptinesse of the bladder, and stone in the Gall; and these obstructions doe chance two severall waies: First when the passage by which Choler should passe from the Liver unto the bladder of the Gall, as unto his proper receptacle, is stopped; and so the Bladder of the Gall remaineth empty: for you are to understand, that the Gall is none other thing then a long, slender, little greenish bladder, fixed underneath the Liver, which doth receive all the Cholericke bitter moysture, which would otherwise offend not onely the Liver, but the whole body also. Now if the passage unto this necessary vessell bee stopped, there cannot chuse but follow many infirmities, as either vometing, the laxe, the bloody flux, or the yellowes.

Secondly, when the way whereby such Choler should issue forth of the Bladder of the Gall downe into the guts ad excrements, is closed up, and so superaboundeth with too much Choler; from whence springeth dulnesse of spirit, suffocating, belching, heate, thirst, and disposition to rage and fury: and truely to any beast there is not a more dangerous disease then the over-flowing of the Gall: But our latter experience findeth that an horse hath no Gall at all:



but that filthy and corrupt matter is wasted and spent either by sweat, exercise, or else doth turne to infirmity. The signes of both these kinds of evils, or obstructions, are yellownesse of the skin, infected with yellow Jaundise, and a continuall costivenesse of the body: and the cures of them are, according to the most ancient Farriers, to give the horse milke, and great store of Saffron, boyled together, or in stead of Milke, to give Ale, Saffron, and Anise-seeds mixt together. But there be other Farriers, with whom I more doe agree, which hold that Selladine roots and leaves chopt, and bruised, and boyled in Beere; or for want of Selladine, Rue, or herbe of grace, and given the Horse luke-warme to drinke, is most soveraigne.

Now for the stone in the gall, which is of a blackish colour, it commeth from the obstruction of the conduits of the bladder, whereby the choler being too long kept in, becommeth dry, and so converteth first into gravell, and after into a solid and hard stone, of which both the signes and the cure, are those last before rehearsed.

#### CHAP. LXXII.

*Of all such diseases as are incident to the Spleene.*

**T**He Spleene is a long, narrow, flat spongy substance, of a pale fleshy colour, joyning with the Liver and the Gall, it is the receptacle of Melancholy, and the dregges of the blood, and is as subject to infirmity, as any inward member whatsoever, as to Inflammations, Obstructions, knobbes, and swellings

swellings, it is through the Spunginesse, apt to sucke in all manner of filth, and to dilate and spread the same over the whole body: The appearance thereof is on the left side under the short Ribbes, where you shall perceiue some small swelling, which swelling gives great griefe to the midriffe, especially after a full stomacke, taking away much more of the horses digestion then his appetite, and being suffered to continue, it makes faint the heart, and growes in the end to a hard knobbe, or stony substance.

This disease, or diseases of the spleene, are incident to horses most in the Summer, proceeding from the Surfeit, or greedy eating of greene meates. The signes of which diseases are these, heavinesse, dullnesse, paine on the left side, and hard swellings, short breath, much groaning, and an over-hasty desire to his meate. The cure, according to the opinion of our best *Farriers*, is to make the horse sweate either by labour or cloathes, then to give him to drinke a quart of white Wine, wherein hath beene boyled the leaves of *Tamariske* bruised, and a good quantity of Comin-seede beaten to powder, and give it luke-warme. Others use, after the horse hath sweat, to powre into his left Nostrill every day, the juyce of *Myrobalans* mixt with Wine and Water to the quantity of a pint. Others take Comin-seede and Honey, of each sixe ounces, of *Lacerpitium* as much as a beane, of Vineger a pint, and put all these into three quarts of water, and let it stand so all night, and give the horse a quart thereof next morning, having fasted all night. Others make the horse to drinke



of *Gerlicke*, *Nitrum*, *Hare-bound*, and *Worme-wood*, foddered in sharpe Wine, and to bathe all the horses left side with warme water, and to rub it hard. There be others which use to cauterize or scarifie the Horses left side with a hot Iron; but it is barbarous and vile, and carrieth no judgement in the practice.

### CHAP. LXXIII.

#### *Of the Yellowes, or Jaundise.*

AS before I said, from the **Obstructions** or **over-flowings** of the Gall and spleene, doth spring this Disease which our common Smiths call the **Yellowes**, and our better *Farriers* the **Jaundise**, and you shall understand, that of this **Yellowes** or **Jaundise**, there are two kinds, the first an over-flowing of choler proceeding from the sicknesse of the Gall, and it is called simply the **Yellowes**, or **yellow Jaundise**; because the outward parts of the body, as **Eyes**, **Skinne**, **Mouth**, inside of the lips, and such like, are dried and coloured yellow: the other an over-flowing of **Melancholly**, proceeding from the sicknesse of the **Spleene**, and is called the **blacke Yellowes**, or **blacke Jaundise**, because all the outward parts are blacke. Now both these **Jaundises**, or **Yellowes**, have their beginnings from the evils of the **Liver**; the **yellow Jaundise**, when the **Liver** by inflammation hath all his blood converted into **Choler**, and so over-whelms the body: and the **blacke Jaundise** when some **Obstruction** in the **Liver-veine**, which goeth to the **Spleene**, hindreth the **Spleene** from doing his office, and receiving the dregges of blood from the **Liver**,

Liuor, or else when the Spleene is surcharged with such dregges of the blood, and so sheddeth them backe againe into the Veines.

Now although this distinction of the blacke Jaundise, or blacke Yellowes, will appeare strange vnto our common Farriers; yet it is most certayne, that whensoever a horse dyeth of the Yellowes, he dyeth onely of the blacke Yellowes: for when it cometh vnto the case of mortality, then are all the inward powers conuerted to blacknesse, and the yellow substance is cleane mastered; but whilst the matter is Yellow, so long the horses body is in good state of recovery. Besides, these Yellowes doe euer follow one the other, and the lesser hath no sooner got preeminence, but the greater pursues him; of all the inward diseases in horses body, this is most common, ofttest in practice, & yet most mortall if it be not early prevented. The signes of this disease of yellow Jaundise, are yellownes of the eyes, nostrils, inside of the lippes, the skin, the yard, and the vrine: his eares and his flanke will sweate, and he will groane when he lyeth downe, and he will not onely be faine, but utterly forsake his meate also. The cures which are at this day in practice for this disease, are infinite, and a World of them corrupt and poysonous: Euery Smith almost making a medicine of his owne inuention, God knowes weake and to little purpose; but for the best receites which at this day are vsed by any good Farriers whatsoeuer, I will deliuer you the whole Catalogue.

First, or the Ancient Farriers, both *Italian* and *French*, they did vse to take of Time and Comin, of  
each



each like quantity, and stamping them together, to mingle it with Wine, Honey, and water, and then to let him blood in the pasternes.

But now the *Farriers* of later daies use, first to let the horse blood in the Necke-veine, suffering him to bleede till you perceiue the blood to growe pure, then to give him this drinke: Take of white Wine or Ale a quart, and put thereunto Saffron, of Turmericke, of each halfe an ounce, and the iuyce that is wrung out of a great handfull of Selladine, and beeing luke-warme, give it the horse to drinke, then keepe him warme the space of three or foure dayes, giving him warme water, with a little branne in it. Others use after the horse is let blood in the necke-veine: First to rake him, then to give him a suppositary made of Salt, honey, and Marjoram, and then give him to drinke halfe an ounce of *Mirrhe*, dissolved into a quart of Wine or Ale. Others use to give after blood-letting, onely cold Water and Nitrum mixt together. There bee others which after Blood-letting, will onely stoppe his Eares with Selladine, and then bind them fast up, and let him have no exercise for twelve houres after. Others use after the letting him blood, to give him a Glister, then to take Saffron, and Turmericke, and mixing them with a quart of Milke, give it him to drinke luke-warme. Others use to let the horse blood in the third barre of the roose of his mouth, with a sharpe Knife, and after he hath bled well, to take a halfe peny worth of English Saffron, and a penny worth of Turmericke, and a new layd egge, with the shel, and all small broken, and mixe it in a quart of stale

stale Ale or Beere, and so set him up warme.

Others use to take after Blood-letting, of *Turmericke*, and *Saffron* a like quantity, and two or three Cloves, and sixe spoonefull of Vineger and Verdges, and to put into each eare of the Horse, three spoonefull thereof, and then stoppe his eares with blacke Wooll, and so tye them up for seven or eight dayes after. Others take long pepper, graines, *Turmericke*, and *Lycoras*, all beaten into fine powder, then brew them with a quart of strong Beere or Ale, and give it the Horse to drinke. Others use after taking and blood-letting to take the juyce of Ivy Leaves, and mingling it with Wine, to squirt it into the horses Nostrills, and to let him drinke onely cold Water mixt with *Nitrum*, and let his foode be grasse, or new hay sprinkled with water.

Thus you have scene, I dare wel affirme, all the best practises which are at this day knowne for this disease, and where they all faile, there is no hope of cure, (as the old *Farriers* affirme) yet let me thus far further informe you. This disease of the Yellows, or Jaundise, if the Keeper or Master be not a great deale the more skilfull and carefull, wil steale upon you unawares, and (as I have often scene) when you are in the midst of your journey, remote and distant far from any towne that can give you succour, it may be your horse will fall downe under you, and if you should let him rest til you fetch him succour, questionlesse he wil be dead.

In this extremity you have no helpe, but to draw out a sharpe poynted Knife; Dagger, or Rapier for a neede, and as neere as you can (opening the Horses mouth)



mouth) strike him blood about the third bar of the roose of his mouth, and so letting him eate and swallow his owne blood a good while, then rayse him up, and be sure he will go as fresh as ever he did: But after you come to place of rest, then be sure to blood him, and give him halfe an ounce of the powder of *Diapente* in a pint of Muskadine well brewed together, and thus doe three or foure mornings together, and let him bee fasting before, and fast two houres after; and after the potion give him a little moderate exercise, or else there will a worse fit come upon him.

Now to conclude for the blacke Jaundise, which of some *Farriers* is called the dry yellowes, though for mine owne part I hold it to bee incurable, yet there be other *Farriers* which are of a contrary humour, and prescribe this Physicke for the cure thereof: First, to give the horse a glister made of Oyle, water, milke, and *nitrum*, after his fundament is raked; then to powre the decoction of mallowes mingled with sweete Wine into his Nostrills, and let his meate be grasse or Hay sprinkled with water, and a little Nitre, and his Provender dried oates: Hee must rest from labour, and be often rubbed. Now there be other *Farriers*, which for this disease would onely have the horse drinke the decoction of wilde Coleworts sodden in wine; the effects of all which I onely referre to experience.

## CHAP. LXXIIII.

*Of the Dropsie, or evill habite of the body.*

**W**Hereas wee have spoken before of the Consumption of the flesh, which proceedeth from surfeits, illlodging, labour, colds, heates, and such like: you shall also now understand, that there is another Drinesse or Consumption of the flesh, which hath no apparant cause or ground, and is called of Farriers a Dropsie, or evill habite of the body, which is most apparently seene when the horse by dislike doth loose his true naturall colour, and when baynesse turns to dunnesse, blacknesse to duskishnes, and whitenesse to Ashinesse, and when he looseth his Spirit, strength, and alacrity. Now this commeth not from the want of nutriment, but from the want of good nutriment, in that the blood is corrupted either with flegme, choler, or malencholy, comming (according to the opinion of our best *Farriers*) either from the spleene, or the weaknesse of the stomacke or Liver, causing naughty digestion.

Others thinke it commeth from foule feeding, or much idlenesse, but for mine owne part, albeit I have had as much triall of this disease, as any one man, and that it becommeth not mee, to controle men of approved judgement, yet this I dare averre, that I never saw this disease of the evill habite, or evill colour of the body, spring from any other grounds, then either disorderly and wilde riding, or from Hunger, or barren Woody keeping. Betwixt it and the Dropsie, there is small or no difference.

For



For the Dropfie being divided into three kindes, this is the first thereof, as namely, an universall swelling of the body, but especially the Legs, through the abundance of water lying between the skin and the flesh. The second, a swelling in the covering or bottome of his Belly, as if the Horse were with foale, which is onely a whayish humour abiding betwixt the skin and the rim: And the third a swelling in the same place by the like humour, abiding betwixt the great bag and the Kell.

The common signes of this disease, are shortnesse of breath, swelling of the body or leggs, losse of the Horses naturall colour, no appetite unto meate, and a continual thirst, his Backe, Buttockes, and Flankes, wil bee dry, and shrunke up to their bones; his Veines will be hid that you cannot see them, and wheresoever you shall presse your finger any thing hard against his body, there you shall leave the print behinde you, and the flesh will not rise of a good space after: when he lyeth downe he will spread out his Limbes, and not draw them round together, and his haire wil shed with the smallest rubbing. There be other *Farriers* which make but onely two Dropfies, that is, a wet *Dropfie*, and a windy *Dropfie*, but being examined, they are all one with those recited, have all the same signes and the same cure. which according to the Ancient *Farriers* is in this sort, first, to let him be warme covered with many cloathes, and either by exercise, or otherwise drive him into a sweate; then let his backe and body bee rubbed against the haire, and let his foode bee for the most part, Cole-worts, Smallage, and Elming Boughes,

Boughes, or whatsoever else will keepe his body soluble or provoke Urine: when you want this food, let him eate grasse, or hay sprinkled with water, and sometimes you may give him a kinde of pulse called Ciche, steeped a day and a night in Water, and then taken out and layd so, as the Water may drop away.

There be other *Farriers* which onely would have the horse to drinck *Parsley* stampd and mixt with wine, or else the root of the herbe called *Panax* stampd and mixt with wine. Now whereas some *Farriers* advise to slit the belly a handfull behind the Navel, that the Wine and Water may leasurely issue forth, of mine owne knowledge I know the *Cure* to be most vile, nor can it be done, but to the utter spoyle and killing of the horse: for a horse is a beast, and wanting knowledge of his owne good, will never be drest out by Violence, and that violence will bring downe his kell, so as it will never be recovered. Now for these *Dropsies* in the belly, although I have shewed you the signes and the cures, yet they are rare to be found and more rare to be cured; but for the other *Dropsie*, which is the swelling of the Legs, and the losse of the colour of the haire, it is very ordinary and in hourly practice: the best *cure* whereof that ever I found amongst the *Farriers* is this.

Take of strong Ale a Gallon, and set it on the fire, and then skum off the white froth which riseth: then take a handfull of wormewood with stalkes, and put them into the Ale, and let them boyle till it bee come almost to a quart: then take it off, and strayne it exceedingly, then dissolve into it three ounces of the



the best Treacle, and put in also an ounce and a halfe of long Pepper and graines beaten to very fine powder: then brew them all together till it bee no more but luke-warme, and so giue it the horse to drink, the next day let him blood on the necke veine, and annoynt his fore-legs with trayne Oyle, and so turne him into good Grasse, and feare not his recovery.

## CHAP. LXXV.

*Of the Diseases in the guts of a Horse, and first of the Cholicke.*

**A** Horses Guts are subject unto many and sundry infirmities: as namely, to the winde cholick, fretting of the belly, costivenesse, Laxe, bloody flux, and wormes of diuers kindes. Now for the Cholick it is a grievous and tormenting paine in the great Gut or bag, which because it is very large and spacious, and full of empty places, it is the more apt to receiue diuers offensive matters, which do breede diuers infirmities, especially Winde, which finding no ready passage out, maketh the body, as it were, swel, and offendeth both the stomacke and other inward members. This disease doth not so much appeare in the Stable, as abroad in trauaile, and the signes are these: the horse will often offer to stale, but cannot, he will strike at his Belly with his hinder foote, and many times stampe, he will forsake his meate, and towards his flanke you shall see his Belly appeare more full then ordinary, and he will desire to lye downe and wallow. The cure thereof, according to the most ancient *Farriers*, is only to give him a Clister made of  
ther

ther of Wilde Cucumbers, or else of Hens-dung, *Nitrum*, and strong vinegar, the manner wherof you shall see in the Chapter of Glisters: and after the Glisters labour him.

Others use to give the horse the Urine of a childe to drinke, or a glisters of sope and salt Water. Others to give him five drammes of *Myrre* in good Wine, and then galiop him gently thereupon. Others use to give him Smallage and Parsley with his provender, and then to travaile him till he sweate. But for my owne part, I hold it best to take a quart of Malmsey, of Cloves, Pepper, Cynamon, of each halfe an ounce, of sugar halfe a quartern, and give it the horse luke-warme, and then ride him at least an houre after; but before you ride him, anoynt all his flanks with Gyle de bay, or oyle of Spike. Now if whilst you ride him he will not dung, you shall then Rake him, and if neede be enforce him to dung, by thrusting into his Fundament a pill'd Onion jagged crossewaies, that the tickling of the juyce may enforce ordure: and by no meanes for foure or five dayes let him drinke cold water, nor eate any grasse or greene Corne, but keepe him upon wholesome dry meate in a warme stable.

## CHAP. LXXVI.

*Of the Belly-ake, or fretting in the Belly.*

**B**ESIDES the Cholicke, there is also another grievous paine in the Belly, which Farriers call the Belly-ake, or fretting in the belly; and it proceedeth either from eating of green pulse when it growes

M

ON



on the ground, or raw undried pease, beanes, or oates; or else when sharpe fretting humours, or inflammations, or aboundance of grosse matter, is gotten betwene the great gut and the panicle. The signes are much wallowing, great groaning, and often striking at his belly, and gnawing upon the manger. The cure according to the opinion of some *Farriers*, is first to anoynt your hand with Sallet oyle, Butter, or grease, and then thrusting it in at the horses Fundament, pull out as much dung as you can reach,, which is called raking a horse: then give him a glister of Water and Salt mixt together, or in stead thereof give him a Suppositary of Hony and Salt, and then give him to *drink* the powder of Senuary & wormwood brewd with a quart of Malmsey. Others use onely to give the horse a Suppositary of New-castle Sope, and for mine owne part I hold it onely the best.

#### CHAP. LXXVII.

##### *Of the Costivenesse, or Belly-bound.*

**C**ostivenesse or Belly-bound, is when a horse is so bound in his belly that hee cannot Dung, it is a disease of all other most incident to running horses, which are kept in a dry and hot dyet. Now my Masters, the great *Farriers*, affirme that it proceedeth from glut of Provender, or over-much feeding and rest, or from winde; grosse humours, or cold, causing Obstructions, and stoppings in the guts, but I suppose (and imagine that all the best Keepers of Hunting or Running horses, will consent with me) that it rather proceedeth from much fasting, whereby the  
Gut

Gut wanting fresh substance to fill it, doth out of its owne great heate, bake and dry up the little which it containeth : For it is a certaine rule that nothing can over-flow before it be full. Or else it may proceede from eating too much dry and hot food, which sucking up the flegme and moysture of the body, leaves not sufficient whereby it may be digested; however it is a dangerous infirmity, and is the beginning of many other evils. The signes are onely abstinence from the office of nature (I meane dunging) which is most usuall in all beasts. The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the ancientest *Farriers*, is to take the water wherein Mallowes have beene long boyled to the quantity of a quart, and put thereto halfe a pint of oyle, or instead thereof, halfe a pint of butter very sweete, and one ounce of *Benedicte Laxative*, and powre that into his Fundament Glisterwise : then with a string fasten his taile hard to his Tuell, and then trot the horse up and downe a pretty while, that the medicine may worke so much the better; then let his taile loose, and suffer him to voyde all that is in his belly, then bring him into the Stable, and having stood a while, give him a little wel-clarified Honey to drinke, then cover him and keepe him warme, and let his drinke for three or foure dayes, be nothing but sweete warme Masshes of Malt and Water. Other *Farriers* use to take eleven leaves of Lorell, and stamping them in a Mortar, give it the horse to drink with one quart of good strong Ale.

Others use to take an ounce of Brimstone finely beaten to powder, and mixing it with Spurge, to

M 2

give



give it the horse in a Mash to drinke. Now for mine owne part, I would wish you, if the disease bee not very extreemly violent, onely but to rake the Horses Fundament, and then to gallop him in his cloathes till he sweat, and then give him a handfull or two of cleane Rye, and a little brimstone mixt with it: for brimstone being given with provender at any time, will scoure; but if the disease be raging and violent, take a quarter of a pound of white Sope, a handfull of Spurge, and a handfull of Hempseed, bray them very well together, and give it the horse to drinke with a quart of Ale luke-warme, then let him fast and exercise him more then halfe an houre after, and be sure to keepe him very warme, and let his drinke be onely warme Mash. A world of other scouring receites there be: but you shall finde them more at large in the chapter of Purgations, Glisters, and Suppositaries.

## CHAP. LXXVIII.

*Of the Laxe, or too much scouring of Horses.*

**T**He Laxe, or open fluxe of a Horses body, is a dangerous disease, and quickly bringeth a horse to great weakenesse and faintnesse, it proceedeth sometimes from the aboundance of Cholericke humours, descending from the Liver or Gall downe into the Guts: Sometimes by drinking over-much cold Water immediately after his Provender, sometimes by suddaine travailling upon a full stomack before his meate be digested; sometimes by hasty running or gallopping presently after water: and some-  
times

times by licking up a Feather, or eating Hens dung : there is no Disease that taketh more sore upon a horse in a short time then this ; and yet sith nature her selfe in this disease seemeth to be a Physitian to the horses body, I would not wish any Farrier to goe about too suddenly to stop it ; but if you finde that by the continuance, Nature both loseth her owne strength, and the horse the good estate of his Body then you shall seeke remedy, and the cure thereof according to the opinion of ancient Farriers, is this : Take of Beane-flowre and *Bole-armony*, of each a quarterne, mixe them together in a quart of red wine, and give it the horse luke-warme to drinke, and let him be kept very warme, and have much rest: also let the water that he drinketh bee luke-warme, and mixt with Beane-flowre ; yet by no meanes let him drinke above once in foure and twenty houres, and then not to his full satisfaction. Others take a pinte of red Wine, the powder of one Nutmeg, halfe an ounce of Cynamon, and as much of the rinde of a Pomegranat, and mixing them together, give it the horse luke-warme to drinke, and let him not drinke any other Drinke, except it bee once in foure and twenty houres, halfe a horses draught of warme water mixt with meane flowre. Others take a halfe penny-worth of Allome beaten into fine powder, and *Bole-armony* beaten small, and a quart of good milke, mingle them together till the Milke be all on a curd, and then give it the Horse to drinke, observing the Dyet before rehearsed : But if this disease shall happen to a sucken Foale, as commonly it will, and I my selfe have seene many that for want of Experience

M 3




ence have perished thereby, you shall then onely give it a pint of strong Verdges to drinke, and it is a present remedy, For the Foale onely feeding upon Milke, and that Milke avoyding in as Lyquid forme as it was received, the Verdges will curdle it, and so make it avoyde in a grosser and more tougher substance.

## C H A P. L X I X.

*Of the bloody fluxe in Horses.*

**I**T is not to be doubted but that a horse may have the bloody Fluxe, for in my experience I have seene it, besides the confirmation of all my masters, the old *Farriers*. Now of the bloody fluxe they make divers kindes, for sometimes the fat of the slimy filth which is voyded, is sprinkled with a little blood: sometimes the excrement is watrish blood, like the Water wherein bloody flesh hath beene washed: sometimes blood mixed with Melancholly, and sometimes pure blood, but all these proceeding from one head, which is the exulceration of the Gut, they may all very well be helped by one cure. Yet that you may know whether the Exulceration be in the inward small Guts, or in the outward great Guts, you shall observe if the matter and blood bee perfectly mixt together, then it is in the inner small Guts; but if they be not mixed, but come out severally, the blood most commonly following the matter, then it is in the thicke outward guts. Now this bloody Fluxe commeth most commonly of some sharpe humours, ingendred either by naughty raw food,

food, or unreasonable travaile, which humours being violently driven, and having to passe through many crooked and narrow wayes, doe cleave to the Guts, and with their heate and sharpnesse fret them, and cause exulcerations and grievous paine, Sometimes this bloody fixe may come from extreame cold, extreame heate, or extreame moistnesse, or through the violence of some extreame scouring formerly given, wherein some poysonous simple, as *Siomony*, *Stibium*, or such like, might be applyed in too great a quantity, or it may come from the weaknesse of the Liver, or the other members which serve for digestion. The signe of this disease, is onely the avoiding blood with his excrements, or blood instead of Excrements: And the cure according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, is to take Saffron one ounce, of *Mirrhe* two ounces, of Southerne-wood three ounces, of Parsley one ounce, of Rue three ounces of Spittlewort and Hyssop of each two ounces, of Cassia, which is like Cynamon, one ounce; let all these be beaten into fine powder, and mingled with Chalke, and strong Vinegar, wrought into paste, of which paste make little cakes, and dry them in the shadow, and being dryed, dissolve some of them in a pint and a halfe of Barley milke, or for want thereof, in that juyce which is called *Crimor Prisanæ*, and give it the horse to drinke: for it not onely cureth the bloody fixe, but being given with a quart of warme water, it healeth all grieve and paine either in the belly or bladder, which commeth for want of stalling.

Now for mine owne part, I have ever used for   
M 4 the



the bloody Flix, but this medicine onely. Take of red Wine three pintes, halfe a handfull of the hearbe called *Brusa Pastoris*, or Shepheards purse, and as much Tanners barke taken out of the Fat, and dried, boyle them in the Wine till somewhat more then a pint be consumed, and then straining it very hard, give it the horse luke-warme to drinke, if you doe ad unto it a little Cynamon, it is not amisse. There bee other Farriers which use to dissolve in a pint of red wine, foure ounces of the conserve of Slows, and give it the horse to drinke: but either of the other medicines are fully sufficient.

#### CHAP. LXXX.

##### *Of the falling downe of a horses Fundament.*

**H**Orses sometimes, by meanes the disease formerly spoken of, which is the bloody Flix, and sometimes by a naturall weaknesse in the inward bowels, comming through the resolution of the Muscles, serving to draw up the Fundament, will many times have their fundaments fall downe in great length, both to the much paine to the horse, and great loathsomnesse to the beholders. Now the resolution or falling downe, may come partly by over-much straining to dung when a horse is coftive, and partly by over-great moysture, as it happens in young children: for then a horse no creature hath a moyster body. Now the signe is apparant, hanging downe of the Fundament, and the cure is this. First, you shall looke whether the Fundament bee inflamed, that is, whether it be much sweld or no, if it be

not

not inflamed ; then you shall anoynt it with oyle of Roses warmed on a Chaffing-dish and coales, or for want of such oyle, you shall wash it with warme red Wine, but if it be inflamed, then you shall bathe it well with a soft sponge, dipt in the decoction of Mallowes, Camomill, Linseed, and Fenugreeke, and also you shall anoynt it well with oyle of Camomill and Dill mingled together, to assuage the swelling : and then with a gentle hand, and warme Linnen cloathes, thrust it fayre and softly up into his true place, that done, bathe all the tuell about with red Wine, wherein hath bin sodden *Acatium*, Gals, Achorne cuppes, and the paring of Quinces : Then throw upon it either the powder of *Bole-armonicke*, or of *Frankinsence*, or *Sanguis Draconis*, *Myrrh*, *Acatium*, or such like, and then give him to drinke the dry pills of Pomegranats beaten to powder, either with wine or warme water; and be sure to keepe the horse very warme, and in his body neither too soluble or loose, nor too costive or hard bound, but of a meane and soft temper, for the extremity of either is hurtful.

## CHAP. LXX XI.

*Of the Bots, Truncheons, and Wormes in  
a Horses body.*

**M**Y Masters, the old ancient Farriers, are of opinion that the guts of a horse doe breed three sorts of Wormes, that is to say, little short Wormes with great red heads, and long small white Tayles, which wee call Bots : short and thicke Wormes all of a bignesse like a mans finger, which wee call



call Truncheons; and great long wormes as bigge as a mans finger, & at the least six inches in length, which wee call by the simple name of Wormes onely.

Now in mine owne experience and all other mens, I finde a fourth sort, which is of a middle size, and are red and fiery, with thicke, short, sharp heades, and are called poysonous red-Wormes, and are of all other most poysonous and dangerous, for they will ascend up even to the throat of the horse, and will choake and kill him, and sometimes they will eate through his stomacke, and so confound him.

Now for mine owne part, I am of opinion, that the first which are bots, are not bred in the guts but in the stomacke onely, because having cut up many Horses, I never could yet finde any one Bot in the Guts, yet great store of both the other wormes, nor ever cut up the stomacke of a Horse, but I found great abundance of Bots, and neither of the other Wormes: whence I am confidently opiniated, that Bots are ever bred in the stomacke, and both the other sorts of wormes in the guts: Truth it is, that all three doe proceede from one false cause, which is a Raw, Grosse, and Flegmaticke matter, apt to putrefaction, and ingendred by foule and naughty feeding, and as they proceede from one selfe cause, so have they all one signe, and all one cure. The signes then are, the horse will forsake his meate, and not stand upon his legges, but wallow and tumble, and beate his belly with his feete, and sometimes the paine will be so extreame that he will beate his head against the ground; and truly the violence of the red-wormes

red-wormes are wonderfull, for I have seene horses whose stomacke have bin eaten quite through with them, so that the meate which they eate, could not abide in their stomacke, but fell upon the swallow- ing into the body, making the body swell like a Tun, and so have dyed with huge torment. Now the cure, according to the ancientest *Farriers*, is to take a quart of sweete milke, of honey a quarterne, and give it him luke-warme; then walke him up and downe for the space of an houre after, and so let him rest for that day, with as little meate and drinke as may be: and by no meanes suffer him to lye downe. Then the next day when the horse is fasting, take of Rue a handfull, of Savin as much, and being well stampd, put thereunto a little brimstone; and a little Soote of a Chimney beaten into fine powder, put all these things together in a quart of Wort, or new Ale, and there let them lye in steepe the space of an houre or two, then straine it hard through a fayre cloath, and give it the horse to drinke luke-warme, then bridle him, and walke him abroad the space of an houre, then set him up, and let him stand on the bit, two or three houres after, and then give him a little Hay.

Other ancient *Farriers* use onely to give the horse for this disease, the warme guts of a new flaine Hen or *Chicken*, being thrust downe the horses throate, and sure it is passing good, especially if a little Salt be mixed with them: And this must bee done three mornings together fasting, keeping the horse from drinking three or foure houres after. Others use to take three ounces of the roots of caphe rs, beaten with halfe so much Vineger, and put it downe the horses throat:



throat: or else a pint of Milk; and a spoonfull of Sope given the horse to drinke: or Brimstone and milke given to drinke, all very soveraigne. Others use to biade about the snaffle or bit, mans dung new made, and so ride him therewith.

Others take of *Gentian*, *Aloes*, and *Savin*, of each halfe an ounce, and brew them together with Hony and strong Ale. Others use to take onely a quart of cold sweet wort. Others take *Savin* and *Southerwort*, or else Wormewood, and the tops of Broome small chopt, and mixe it with the horses provender. Others use to give the horse to drinke luke-warme, Elderberries sodden in milke. Others use to give the horse with his provender, his owne haire chopt small, and mixt with Bay-salt. Others put hot embers in Water, and presently straine it, and give it the horse to drinke. Others make little round bals of Hony, and the fine powder of *Chalke*, and putting them into Ale make the horse swallow them. Others use to take especially for the long wormes, a halfe peny worth of *Fenugreeke*, of *Aniseedes* a quarter of a pound, a halfe-peny worth of Bay-berries, as much Lycoras, and as much *Turmericke*, and a little quantity of Brimstone, beate them into powder, put them into a quart of Ale, and give it the horse fasting luke-warme to drinke, then ride him an houre after, then set him up warme foure and twenty houres after. Others use, especially for the Truncheon, to take two spoonfull of the powder of Worme-wood, finely searst, and put it in a pint of good Malmsey, and after it is brewed a while, let it stand and soke all night, and then give it the horse in the morning fasting, then  
keepe

keepe him without meat or drink foure houres after. Others use to give the horse to drinke, two spoonfull of Worme-seede, and as much brimstone, or powder of Savin, with a quart of Malmsey, Ale, or Beere. Others use to take as much blacke Sope as a Walnut, and as much brimstone beaten to powder, and a head or two of *Garlicke* pilt'd and bruised, and put into a quart of good Ale, and give it the horse luke-warme to drinke.

This medicine may also bee administred to a Mare great with Foale, if shee be troubled with the bots or other Wormes, so that the blacke Sope bee left out, for it is a violent purger, and may kill the Foale in the Mares belly, yet for mine owne part I never give any inward Physicall Medicine to a Mare great with Foale, but if I finde her troubled with wormes, as is easie to be done by the stinking of her breath, by the sliminesse of her mouth, and by the greatnesse of the worme veines under his lipps: then presently I do nothing but let her blood in the roose, or palat of her mouth, and make her eate her owne blood; for that I know will both kill Wormes, and helpe most inward maladies. But leaving Mares with Foale, let us returne againe unto horses. There be other *Farriers* which use to take a handfull of new Hens-dung, and a quart of stale Ale, and braying them well together; then take a handfull of Bay salt, and put two egges to it, and hauing mixt them all well together, give it the horse to *drink*. Others use to take a halfe-peny worth of Saffron, and as much Allum, and mixe them with a pint of *Milke*, and give it the horse to *drink*; or else give him greene Willow, and greene Reede to eate.

Others



Others use (and thinke it the best of all other Medicines) to take the guts of a young Henne or Pidgeon, and role it first in a little black Sope, then in Bay-salt, and so force it downe the horses throat. Others use (especially for the Trunchcons) to let the horse *drink* Hennes-dung, Mints, Sage, and Rue, with Beere or Ale, and to let him blood in the nostrils. To conclude except you see the horse very much pained, you shall need to give him nothing but Rozen and Brimstone mixt together, and blended with his Provender, having care that you ever give it fasting, and long before the horse doe drinke.

Lastly, and as the chiefe of al medicines for all manner of Wormes, take as much Precipitate as will lie on a silver two-pence, and worke it with as much Butter as a French Walnut, then lap it in another peece of Butter as bigge as an Hens egge, and so give it the Horse fasting in the manner of a pill. Ride him a little after it, and give him no water that night, and let him fast two houres, then feed as at other times.

#### CHAP. LXXXII.

##### *Of the paine in the horses Kidneyes.*

**T**HERE is no question but the same infirmities which doe belong unto the Liver or Spleene of a horse, doe also belong unto the Kidneyes, as Inflammations, Obstructions, Aposthumes, and Ulcers; and truly in opening of horses, I have found the Kidney sometimes Wasted, which I imputed to some matter of Inflammation: I have likewise found much

much Gravell, which was onely through Obstructions; and I have seene the Kidneyes as blacke as inke, which could not come without an ulcerous Apostumation. But forasmuch as a horse is a beast, who cannot tell the manner of his paine, nor we so heedfull as we might have beene, to observe the *Symptome* of every griefe, wee are inforced to conclude all under one name, which is the paine in the Kidneyes, gotten either by some great straine in leading, or by some great burthen bearing.

The signes are, the horse will goe rolling and staggering behind, his Urine wil be blackish and thicke, and his stones (if hee have any) will bee shrunk up into his body; if he have not, you shall perceive the sheath of his yard to be drawne backward, and the great veine which runneth up the side of his thigh, called the Kidney-veine, wil slacke and beate continually. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, is, first to bathe his back and loines with oyle, wine, and *Nitrum*, warmed together, and after hee is bathed, cover him with warme cloathes, and let him stand in Litter up to the belly, then give him to drinke water wherein hath beene sodden Dil, Fennell, Aniseedes, Smallage, Parsley, Spicknard, Myrrh, and Cassia, or as many as you can conveniently get of these simples. The next morning fasting give him to drinke a quart of Ewes milke, or for want thereof, halfe so much Sallet oyle, and Deeres suet molten together: Or if you can get it, the roore of Daffadill boyled in Wine, and let his provender be dried oates; and in this dyet keepe him about tenne dayes; and he will recover.



## CHAP. LXXXIII.

*of the diseases belonging to the Bladder or Urine,  
and first of the Strangury.*

**A**Ccording to the determinate opinion of all the best and ancientest Horse-Leaches, the Bladder of a Horse is subject to three dangerous diseases, as first the strangury, or Strangullion : the second, the Paine-pisse : and the third the stone, or Pissupprest. Now for the first, which is the Strangury, or Strangullion, it is, when the Horse is provoked to stale often, and avoydeth nothing but a few droppes, it commeth without doubt, either by the heate and sharpnesse of Urine, caused either by great travaile or by sharpe and hot meates and driukes, or else by the Exulceration of the Bladder, or by meanes of some apothume in the Liver and Kidneyes, which apothume being broken, the matter resorteth downe into the Bladder, and with the sharpnesse thereof causeth a continuall Provocation of pissing. The signes are (as I said before) a continuall desire to pisse, yet avoyding nothing but a few droppes, and those with such paine, that hee will wiske, wry, and beate his tayle as hee pisseth.

The cure whereof, is to bathe the horses hinder Loynes with warme water, and then take bread and Bay-berries, and temper them together with May Butter, and give him two or three balls thereof down his throat three dayes together.

Others use (and I have ever found it the best) to take a quart of new milke, and a quarterne of Sugar, and  
brewing

brewing them well together, give it the horse to drinke sixe mornings together, observing to keep the horse from al sharpe meates, as mow-burnt hay, bran, and such like.

## CHAP. LXXXIIII.

*Of the paine-pisse, or pissing with paine.*

**T**His disease of paine-pisse, is when a horse cannot pisse but with great paine and labour, and doth proceed sometimes from the weaknesse of the bladder, and the cold intemperance thereof; and sometimes through the aboundance of fleame and grosse humours stopping the necke of the bladder. The signes whereof are, the horse will stretch himselfe out as though hee would stale, and thrust out his yard a little, and with the paine clap his tayle betwixt his thighes to his belly, and having stood so a good while, in the end he will stale a good quantitie.

The cure whereof, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is to take the juyce of Leekes, sweete wine, and oyle, and mingling them together, to powre it into his right nostrill, and walke him a little up and downe upon it: or else to give him to drinke Smallage seede, or else the roote of wilde Fennell sodden with Wine. Others use to put fine sharpe Onions cleane pill'd and a little bruised, into his Fundament, and then to chafe him immediately upon it, either by riding him, or running him in a mans hand, or else to take the scraping of the inward parts of the horses owne hooffes, beaten into powder,



der, and mingled with Wine, and powre it into his right nostrill, and then ride him upon it. Others use to lead the horse to sheepe-cote, or sheepe-penne, where great store of sheepe are wonted: and making the horse to smell of the dung, and pisse of the sheep, it will provoke him to stale presently. Others use to give the horse white dogs dung dryed and mingled with *Amoniacum*, Salt, and Wine to drinke: or else hogges dung onely with wine, or the dregs of horse pisse and Wine.

#### CHAP. LXXXV.

##### *Of the stone, or Pisse-suprest in a Horse.*

**T**He Stone, or Pisse-suprest in a Horse, is when a horse would faine stale, but cannot at all, and therefore may well be called the suppression of the Urine: It proceedeth according to the opinions of my Masters, the old Farriers, sometimes from the weaknesse of the Bladder, when the water conduit is stopped with grosse humours, or with matter descending from the Liver, or from some inflammation or hard knobs growing at the mouth of the conduit, or for that the finewes of the bladder are numbed, so as the bladder is without feeling: or it may come by keeping a horse in long travaile, and not suffering him to stale, but most commonly and ofttest commeth from obstructions in the kidneyes, where, by the causes afore-said, a certaine red gravel being bred, and falling downe into the Conduits, by mixture of flegme and other grosse humours, is there brought to be a hard stone, and stoppeth the passage of

of the urine : For the signes there needeth no more but this, that would faine pisse, but cannot.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the most ancientest Farriers, is first to draw out his yard, and bathe it well with white wine, and pick it, and scoure it well, lest it bee stopped with durt and filthinesse; then put a little oyle of Camomill into his yard with a waxe candle, and a bruised clove of Garlick: but if that will not force him to stale, then take of Parsley two handfuls, of Coriander one handfull, stampe them and straine them with a quart of white Wine, and dissolve therein one ounce of Cake-sope and give it luke-warme, unto the Horse to drinke; and see that you keepe him as warme as may be, and let him drinke no cold water for the space of five or sixe dayes, and when you would have him to stale, let it eyther be of good plenty of straw, or upon the grasse, or in a sheepe-cot. Others (and those of the best esteeme for horse leach-craft at this day) use only to give white wine, cake-sope, and butter very will mixt together, and let horse drinke it warme.

Others use to annoynt the Horses belly first with warme water; then when it was dryed, to annoynt it againe with Sallet oyle, Hogs grease and tarre mixt together and made warme, and so hold a hot Iron against his belly whilest it is annoynting, that the oyntment may the better enter the skin: But I hold this medicine to be much better for the Strangury, or any other paine in the belly, then for the Stone; yet it is approoved good for all. Others use to take a pint of white Wine or Ale, and mixe it with a little Garlick, and the whites of ten egges, and give



it the horse to drinke : or else give him the juyce of red Cole-worts mixt with white Wine, or the roote of *Alexanders* bruised, and sodden in Wine to drinke, and wash his yard with Vinegar. Others use to take eyther Worme-wood, Southerne-wood, or Galingale, or Mallowes, or Pimpernell : some of these, or any one of these, stampt and strained, and give it the horse with Ale to drinke. Others use to take a pint of white wine, halfe a pint of Burre seede beaten very small, two ounces of parsley seede, halfe a handfull of Hyssope, halfe an ounce of blacke Sope ; mixe them all well together, and warme it, and give it the horse to drinke : or else take un-set *Leekes*, and stamp them small, and Sope, *Milke*, and Butter, and being mixt together, give it the horse to drinke. Others use to take a Nutmeg, and a handfull of Parsley seede, beate them to powder, then take as much butter, and mixe them all together in a quart of strong Ale, and give it the horse luke-warme to drinke : or else take the seed of Smal-lage, Parsley, *Saxefrage*, the rootes of *Philipendula*, cherry-stone Kirnells, grummell seeds, and Broome-seeds, of each a like quantity ; beate them into fine powder, and give it the horse with a pint or a quart of white Wine.

Now albeit these medicines before rehearsed, are daily in practice, and approved very soveraigne, yet for mine owne part, I have found none more soveraigne then this : Take a quart of strong Ale, and put it into a pottle pot : then take as many Keene Radish roots, cleane washt, being slit through and bruised, as will fill up the pot : then stopping the pot very close that

that no ayre may come in, let it so stand foure and twenty houres, then straine the Ale and the rootes very hard into a cleane vessel, and give it the horse fasting in the morning to drinke: then ride him a little up and downe, and so set him up warme, and watch him, and you shall see him stale. This you must doe divers mornings together.


## CHAP. LXXXVI.

*Of a horse that pisseth blood.*

**T**Here is nothing more certaine then that a horse many times will pisse blood in stead of urine, the cause (as the most ancient Farriers suppose) proceeding from some one of these grounds: either overmuch labour, or too heavy a burthen, especially when the Horse is fat: for by either of them the horse may come to breake some veine in his body, and then you shall see cleare blood come out, and no Urine at all, but if the blood be mixt with Urine, then they suppose it commeth from the kidneyes, having some ragged stone therein, which through great travaile doth fret the veines of the Kidneyes, and make them bleede, through which as the Urine passeth, it taketh the blood away with it also; but for mine owne part, I have not found any greater cause for the pissing of blood, then the taking up of a horse from 'grasse in the strength of Winter (as about Christmas) and presently, without a daies rest in the stable, to thrust him into a long and weary journey: from this cause I have scene many horses after two or three dayes journey to pisse blood in most grievous



vous manner. The signes are needlesse. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, is this: First, let the horse blood in the palate of the mouth, to convert the blood the contrary way; then take of *Tragarant* which hath bin steeped in white Wine, halfe an ounce of Poppy seed, one dramme and one scruple, and of *Storax* as much, and twelve pine-apple Kirnells; let all these things be beaten and mingled well together, and give the horse thereof every morning the space of seaven dayes, the quantity of a Wall-nut, infused in a quart of sweete wine. Other latter *Farriers* use to let the horse blood in the necke, and boyle that blood with Wheate, and with the powder of dryed Pomegranate pills; then straine it, and give it him three or foure mornings togetherto drinke, and let him by no meanes tra-vaile thereupon: or else give him of husked beanes boyled with the huskes of Acornes beaten small, and mixt together. Others use to make him a drinke with the rootes of Daffadill mingled with Wheate flower, and *Sumach* sodden long in water, and so to be given to the horse with sweete Wine: or else to make him drinke of Goates *milke* and Sallet oyle, straining thereunto a little Frumenty: or else to give him sodden beanes and Deeres suet in Wine, each of these are of like force and goodnesse. Now there be others which use for this disease to take Barley, and seeth it in the juyce of Gumfolly, and give him the Barley to *eate*, and the juyce to *drinke*: or else take the powder of Lycoras and Aniseedes rold up in Honey, and make round balls ther of, and cast downe the horses throat two or three of them:  
Lastly,

Lastly, and the best, take Lycoras, Aniseedes, and  *Garlicke* bruised together with a little Sallet oyle and honey, and give it in a quart of new milke to the horse to drinke, it is very soveraigne also, and these two medicines last rehearsed, are exceeding good also for any cold or Glanders.

## CHAP. LXXXVII.

*Of the Colt evill.*

**T**He Colt evill by the most ancient *Farriers*, especially the *Italians*, whose hot Countrey affoordeth the beasts of more hot and strong natures then ours doth, is thought to be a continuall standing erection, together with an unnaturall swelling of the yard, proceeding either from some winde filling the arteries and hollow finew, or pipe of the yard, or else through the abundance of seede, provoked by the naturall heate of the Horse; but our *Farriers*, who have not scene that experience, because our Horses are of a colder temper, say it is onely a swelling of the sheath of the yard, and of that part of the belly about the yard, together with the Cod also, proceeding from corrupt seede, which commeth out of the yard, and remaining within the sheath, there putrifieth: And this judgement we finde by experience to be most true. Now you shall understand, that Geldings aswell as Horses are subject thereunto, because they want naturall heate to expell their seede any further.

The signes are onely the outward swelling of the sheath and Cod, and none other: and the best



cure is first to wash the sheath cleane with luke-warm Vineger, then draw out the yard and wash it also: which done, ride the horse twice every day, that is morning and evening into some deepe running water up to the belly, tossing him too and fro to allay the heate of members till the swelling be vanished, and if you swim him now and then, it will not doe amisse. Others use to bathe his Cods and yard with the juice of House-licke, or with the water wherein kinholme hath bin sod. Now this Colt-evill will sometimes stop the Horses urine that he cannot pisse: then you shall take new Ale, and a little blacke Sope, and give it the Horse to drinke. Others use to wash the horses Cods and sheath with butter and vineger made warme. Others use to wash his Yard and Cods with the jayce of Hemlocke, or else take beane flower, vineger, and *Bole-armonicke*, and mixing them together lay it plaister-wise to his sheath and Cods. Others make him a plaister of wine Lees, House-lick and bran mixt together, and layd to his sheath and cods: but if the first receipt would serve, I would not wish you to use any other medicine.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.  
*Of the mattering of the Yard.*

**T**His disease of the mattering of the yard, is seldom seene but amongst the hot races or breeds of horses, as the *Ienet*, the *Barbary*, and such like; and it happeneth ever at covering time, when the horse and mare both being too hot, doe burne themselves, by which meanes there issueth forth of the  
horses

horses yard much filthy matter. The signes are the falling downe of the matter, and a swelling at the end of the yard, and the horse can by no meanes draw up his yard, or cover it within his sheath. The cure is to take a pinte of white wine; and boyle therein a quarterne of roch. Allome, and with a large Serring of squirt, squirt in three or foure squirtfull into his yard one after another, and be sure that your squirt goe home unto the bottome, that the liquor or lori-on may scoure the bloody matter away: this doe five or sixe times every day till the horse be whole.

## CHAP. LXXXIX.

*Of the shedding of the seede.*

**T**He shedding of the Seede, or the falling away of the Sperme in horses, is none other then that which we call in men the running of the Reynes: it commeth, as our old Farriers say, either by abundance and ranknesse of seed, or by the weaknesse of the stones, and seed vessels, not able to retaine the seed untill it be digested and thickned; but truly for mine owne part, I thinke it commeth oftner (especially amongst our English horses) by some great straine in leaping, or by teaching a horse to bound, and making him bound the compasse of his naturall strength. The signes are onely the shedding of his seed, which will bee white, thinne, and waterish. The cure, according to the ancient experiments, is first to ride the horse into some cold water up to the belly, in somuch that his stones may be covered with water: which done, bathe his fundament with water  
and



and oyle, then cover him exceeding warme, and give him every day to drinke, red wine and hogges dung till the fluxe of his seede stay; but latter experience hath found this receipt better. Take of red wine a quart, and put therein a little *Acatium*, the juyce of Planton, and a little Masticke, and give it him to drinke; and then bathe all his backe with red wine, and oyle of Roses mixt together, but other *Farriers* take *Venice* Turpentine, and being washt, beat it well with halfe so much Sugar, and then make round balls as bigge as Walnuts, and give the horse five every morning, till the fluxe stay.

## C H A P. X C.

*Of the falling downe of the yard.*

**T**He falling downe of the yard, is when a horse hath no strength to draw up his yard within the sheath, but lets it hang downe between his legges ill-favouredly: it commeth (as our best *Farriers* suppose) either through the weaknesse of the member, by meanes of some resolution in the muscles and sinews, serving the same, caused by some great straine or stripe on the backe: or else through extreame wearinesse and tiring. The signe is onely the apparant hanging downe of the member: and the cure is, (according to some opinions) to wash the horses yard in salt water from the Sea, or for want thereof, with water and salt; but if that doe not prevaile, then prick all the outmost skin of his yard with a sharpe needle, but yet as slightly as may be, and not deepe; and then wash all the prickes with strong vinegar, and this will  
not

not onely make him draw up his yard againe, but also if at any time his Fundament chance to fall, this cure will put it up againe. There bee other *Farriers* which for this disease will put into the pipe of the horses yard, hony and salt boyled together, and made liquid, or else a quicke flye, or a graine of *Frankinsence*, or a clove of *Garlicke* cleane pill'd and bruised, and bathe his backe with oyle, wine, and *Nitre*, made warme and mingled together.

But the best cure, according to our English practice, is first, to wash all the yard with white Wine warmed, and then anoynt it with oyle of *Roses* and hony mixt together, and so put it up into the sheath, and with a little bolster of Canvase keepe it from falling downe; and dresse him thus once in foure and twenty houres, untill hee be recovered, and in any case let his back be kept as warme as is possible, both with cloath, and a charge of plaister made of *Bolearmonicke*, Egges, Wheat-flower, *Sanguis draconis*, Turpentine and Vineger, or else lay next his backe a wet sacke, or wet hay, and a dry cloath cover it, and that will keepe his backe exceeding warme.

#### CHAP. XCI.

*Of the diseases incident to Mares, and first of the barrennesse of the wombe.*

THE onely Disease incident to the wombe of a Mare (as farre forth as our *Farriers* are experienced) is barrennesse, which may proceed from divers causes, as through the untemperatenesse of the Matrixe, being either too hot and fiery, or too cold  
and



and moist, or too dry, or else too short, or too narrow, or having the necke thereof turned awry, or by meanes of some obstruction, or stopping in the matrixe, or in that the mare is too fat, or too leane, and divers other such like causes. Now the cure thereof, according to the old *Farriers*, is to take a good handfull of Leeks, and stampe them in a mortar with foure or five spoonefulls of Wine, then put thereunto twelve flyes, called *Cantharides*, then straine them altogether with a sufficient quantity of water to serve the Mare therewith two dayes together, by powring the same into her nature with a Glister-pipe made for the purpose, and at the end of three daies next following, offer the horse unto her that should cover her, and after shee is covered, wash her nature twice together with cold water.

There be others which use to take of *Nitrum*, of Sparrows dung, and of Turpentine, of each like quantity well wrought together, and made like a Suppositary, and put that into her nature, and it will cause her both to desire the horse, and also to conceive. There be some of opinion, that it is good to put a Nettle into the horses mouth that should cover her. Of all which let onely experience be your warrantise.

#### CHAP. XCII.

##### *Of the pestilent Consumption in Mares.*

There is a certaine pestilent Consumption incident to mares when they are with foale, proceeding from cold flegme, gathered by raw foggy food  
in

in the Winter season, which descending from the Kidneyes, doth oppresse the matrixe, and makes the Mare consume and pine away, so that if she be not holpen, she will want strength to foale her foale. The signes are, suddaine leanness, and a dropping of spirit, with much dislike of meate, and a continuall desire to be layd. The cure is, to powre into her nostrils three pintes of fish brine, called *Garume*, three or foure mornings together, and if the griefe be very great, then to take five pints, and it will make her vent all flegme at her nostrils.

## CHAP. XCIII.

*Of the rage of Love in Mares.*

IT is reported by some of our English *Farriers*, that Mares being proudly and high kept, will at the Spring of the yeare, when their blood begins to wax warme, if they chance, when they goe to the water, to see their owne shadowes therein, that presently they will fall into an extreame love therewith, and from that love into such a hot rage, that they will forget either to eate or drinke, and never cease running about the pasture, gazing strangely, and looking oft about and behind them. The cure of this folly is presently to leade the Mare to the Water againe, and there to let her see her selfe as before, and the second sight will utterly extinguish the memory of the first, and to take away her folly.

CHAP.



## CHAP. XCIIII.

*Of Mares which cast their Foales.*

**T**He occasions why Mares cast their Foales, that is, to Foale them either before their times, or dead, are very many, as straines strokes, intemperate riding, rushings, hard wintring, or too great fardnesse, and such like. Now you shall understand that this aborsment, or untimely casting of a Foale, is most dangerous to the life of the Mare: For nature being, as it were, detained from her true and perfect custome, which is the preservation of health, cannot choose but give way to the contrary, which is Death and Mortality, and the body and pores being set open to the ayre, before it be able to defend the cold, cannot choose but be suffocated with unwholesome Vapours. If therefore you have a Mare at any time which doth cast her Foale, and withall falleth sicke upon the same, you shall presently take her into the house, and set her up very warme, then give her two spoonefuls of the powder of *Diapente* well brewd in a pint of Muscadine, and feede her with sweete hay, and warme Mashcs for at least a weeke after,

## CHAP. XCV.

*Of Mares that are hard of foaling.*

**I**F it happen by any mischance, or otherwise, that the passages or other conduits, which leade from the matrix, be so straitned that the Mare cannot foale and so be in danger of her life: then it shall bee good that

that you helpe her by holding and stopping her nostrils with your hand in a gentle manner, that her breath may not have passage; and she will foale with a great deale the more ease, & much sooner, and sure the paine is nothing, because a Mare alwaies foaleth standing. Now if at any time when your Mare hath foaled, she cannot voyde her secundine, which is the skinne wherein the Foale is wrapped, in that naturall manner as she ought, you shal then take a good handfull or two of Fennel, and boyle it in water: then take halfe a pint of that, and another halfe pinte of olde Wine, and put thereto a fourth part of oyle, and mingle them altogether over the fire, and being but luke-warme, powre it into the Mares nostrills, and hold her Nostrils close with your hand, to keepe it in a pretty while after, and no question but she will voyde her secundine presently.

## CHAP. XCVI.

*Of making a Mare to cast her Foale.*

IF at any time you would have your Mare to cast her Foale, as having present occasion to use her, or in that the Foale is not worthily enough begot, you shall take a pottle of new milke, and two handfulls of *Savin* chopt and bruised, and putting them together, boyle them till one halfe be consumed; then straine it very hard, and give it the Mare luke-warme to drinke, then presently gallop her a good pace, then set her up; doe thus two mornings, and before the third she will have cast her Foale. Others use with their hand to kil the Foale in the Mares belly,



but it is dangerous, and the former medicine is more sufficient. And thus much of the infirmities of Mares. Now let us returne againe to Horses and Mares in generall.

## CHAP. XCVII.

*Of the drinking of Horse-leaches by horses.*

**I**F a Horse at any time drinke downe horse-leaches, they will sucke his blood and kill him. The signes are, the Horse will hang downe his head to the ground, and aboundance of filthy slaver will fall from his mouth, and sometimes some blood also. The cure is, presently to give him a pint of sallet oile to drinke, and that will make them fall away and kill them. But the best is to give him halfe an ounce of *Diapente* brewed in a pint of good strong Beere or Ale.

## CHAP. XCVIII.

*Of swallowing downe Hens-dung. or any venemous thing whatsoever.*

**I**F a horse chance to swallow down any hens-dung with his hay, it will fret his guts, and make him to avoyde most filthy matter at his fundament. The cure whereof is to take a pint of Wine, halfe a pint of honey, and two spoonefuls of Smallage seed bruised, and mixing them well together, to give it the horse to drinke, and then to walke him well upon the same that he may empty his belly. But if the horse chance to lick up any other venemous thing, as Neut, or such like,

like, which you shall know by the instant swelling of his body, and the trembling of all his members, then the cure is first to put him into a sweate, cyther by cloathes or exercise, then to let him blood in the palate of the mouth, and looke how much he bleedeth, so much let him swallow downe hot: or else give him strong Wine and salt mixt together: or else take the Roote, and Leaves, and Fruit of Briony, which being burnt to ashes, give the horse a good spoonetull thereof with a pint of sweet wine to drinke.

Now for mine owne part, I have ever used to take a pint of Sallet oyle, and two spoonfull of Sugarcandy beaten to powder, and as much of the powder *Diapente*, and brewing them together, give it the Horse to drinke: or for want of *Diapente*, so much of the shaving cyther of Ivory, or of an old Stags horne, especially the tips thereof burnt.

#### CHAP. XCIX.

##### *Of purging Medicines in generall, and first of the Suppositary.*

**P**urging is said of our most ancientest *Farrriers*, to be an emptying and discharging of all and every superfluous humours which distemper the body with their evill qualities: For such humours breed evil nutriment, which when it wil not be corrected nor holpen with good Diet, alteration, nor the benefit of nature and kindly heat, then must it of force cyther be taken away by Purgation, Glister, or Suppositary. Now for as much as a horse is troubled with many diseases in the Guts; and that nothing can  
purge



purge the gut with that gentlenesse which a Suppositary doth, I will here first begin to speake of Suppositaries.

Understand then that a horse being surfeited, and full of evill humours, needing to be purged, it is best first to give him a Suppositary; least if you should come to apply a Glister, the great gut being stopped with dry, hard, and hot excrements, the medicine not able to worke beyond it, loose both labour and vertue; so that I make account the Suppositary is but onely a preparative to the Glister, and but onely to cleanse and make loose the great gut, which cometh to the tuell. The gentlest Suppositary then, and that which purgeth flegme in the best manner, is to take a square peece of cake-sope, or white new castle sope, about five or sixe inches long, and shaving it round till it bee not above three inches about in the midst, and a little smaller at each end then in the midst; then anoynt it over with Sallet oyle, and so with your hand thrust it up more then a full spanne into his Fundament; then suddenly clappe his taile to his tuell, and hold it hard and close more then halfe an houre, in which space the most part of the Suppositary will bee wasted, then gently take away your hand, and let him voyd the Suppositary at his pleasure. The next Suppositary to this, and which purgeth choler abundantly, is to take *Savin*, stamp small, flaves-aker and salt, and boyle them in honey till it be thicke, then take and knead it, and rolle it of a pretty thicke long role, as before you were taught for the hard sope, and administer it at his tuell. The next to this, and that which purgeth meladcholy, is

to

to take a keene Onion, and pilling off the skinn, jag it a little crosse-wise with your knife, and so thrust it up into the horses Fundament. There is besides these Suppositaries, one other Suppository, which is to take a quart of honey, and boyle it on the fire till it come to be thicke like a Salve, then powre it forth upon a table, and kneade it like a peece of dough: then when it begins to harden, or grow stiffe, (as it will doe when it begins to coole) then role it up under your hand, and make it in the forme of a Suppository, as is before shewed, and administer it in the same manner. This Suppository is good to purge the gut of any foule humor, and therewithal is comfortable to the body.

Now you must also understand, that as these Suppositaries are preparative before Glisters, so they are likewise to be used simply of themselves, where the sicknesse of the horse carrieth no great danger: For upon every flight occasion, or small drynesse which is to be dissolved with the most gentle Medicine, to administer a Glistre, were to bring the horses Body to such an intemperate loosenesse, as would proove much worse then the former contrary drines, Therefore I wish every carefull *Farrier* (because the body of a horse would not bee tempered withall too much by Physicke) first, in the cause of costivenesse, or inflammation of the inward parts, to approve a Suppository: as namely the first prescribed and nooked like a mans fist, or else like a role or quantity of Roch Allome, or else foure inches of a great tallow Candle or Percher of foure in the pound; which if it worke effectually, and keepe the horses  
O 2 body



body soluble, then to proceede no further; but in case it doe not, but that the offensive matter stil breedeth and increaseth, then to administer a Glister; and where that faileth to take away the offence, to administer a Purgation. Now by the way, you are to take with you this generall rule, and never to faile in the performance, which is, never to administer either Suppositary or Glister, but first immediately before you give it, to rake your horse, which Raking is in this manner. First, you shall annoyne all your hand and arme over either with Sallet Oyle, sweete butter, or fresh grease; and then thrust it into the horses Fundament, and draw out all the Dung, flegme, and filthy matter that you can feele, even as high up as the great bagge: Which done, then administer either your Suppositary or Glister, which you please, at your leasure; and in any case, whilst the horse is thus in Physicke, keepe him exceeding warme.

#### CHAP. C.

#### *Of Glisters and their Uses.*

**T**He natures and properties of Glisters are divers, and therefore it is necessary that every carefull *Farrier* learne to know to what end they serve, and with what drugges or simples they ought to be compounded: For every Glister is to be made according to the disease. Now of Glisters some are to ease grieves, and to allay the sharpnesse of the humours, some to binde, some to loosen, and some to purge, and some to heale ulcers. These Glisters by cleansing  
he

the Guts, refresh the vitall parts, and prepare the way before for every inward and strong Purgation. Therefore, whensoever a horse through grossnesse of humours, corruption of blood, or abundance of flegme, choler, or melancholy, is brought unto that evil habite of body, that of necessity he must be purged, and that especially his paine is in his Guts and body, you shall then, as before I said (having made a probation of a Suppositary) first of all administer a Glister; lest by purging suddenly with any Purgation or Potion, you stirre up a multitude of evill humours, which finding no passage downward (because the guts be stopped with wind and dregs (doe strike upwards, and so perhaps put the horse into much greater danger.

Now for the composition of Glisters you shall understand that they be made of foure things, that is, of Decoctions, of Drugs, of Oyle, or such like unctious matters, as butter, or soft grease, and fourthly, of divers salts, to provoke the vertue expulsive. A decoction is the breath of certaine hearbes and simples boyled together in water untill the third part be consumed. Now sometimes for want of such decoctions, you may if you please, use some fat Beefe broth, or the broth of a sheepes head, or such like, or Milke or whay, or some such like liquour, mingled sometimes either with Hony or with Sugar, according to the quality of the disease: the Glister being either Lenitive, that is to say, easing of paine: or Glutinative, which is, joyning of things together: or else Absterfive, which is, wiping away, or cleansing of filthy matter. Now of this decoction or broth be-  
O 3 ing



ing very cleane strained, you shall never take above three pints at the most, and many times but a quart, into which you shall put such drugges as are needefull, exceeding not at the most, above three or foure ounces, according as the simples be more or lesse violent: of the Oyle you shall never use in a Glister above halfe a pint, and of Sale not above three or foure drams. You shall also continually administer your Glister luke-warme, either with some long horn, or a large Glister-pipe made for the purpose, and fixed to the largest bladder you can get; and this Glister-pipe is of all the best, and doth least loose labour. When you doe administer a Glister, you shall set the horses hinder-parts somewhat higher then the fore-parts, and then you shall put the Glister-pipe in at his tuell into his Fundament up to the head, and having the confection within the bladder, wring it with a very good strength into his body. A Glister would be administered to a horse when hee is rather empty then full paunched, whether it be in the fore-noone or after-noone. Now for the retaining or holding of the Glister in the horses body, three quarters of an houre is sufficient, of what quality soever it be. Now you are to note by the way, that as soone as the Glister is administered into the horses body, you must draw out the pipe with all the gentlenesse that may bee, and suddenly clappe his tayle to his tuell, and so hold it with your hand, without any mooving or stirring of the horse, till the medicine hath his full time of working.

Now to come unto particular Glisters, that you may know which Glister is for which purpose, the first is,  
take

take of the pulpe of *Soliquintida* halfe an ounce, of *Dragantium* three quarters of an ounce, of *Centuary* and of *Wormewood*, of each halfe a handfull, of *Castercum* a quarter of an ounce, boyle them in three pints of water, then being strained you shall dissolve therein of *Gerologundinum* three ounces, of salt three quarters of an ounce, and of oyle Olive halfe a pint, and so luke-warme administer it Glister-wise, as hath bin before expressed: this Glister is exceeding soveraigne for the pestilence in horses; or for any Fever of what nature soever.

The next is to take the decoction of Mallowes, and to mixe therewithall, either fresh butter, or Sallet Oyle, and so luke-warme administer it: this is of all Glisters the most gentlest, and as the former Glister is absterfive or cleansing, so this is lenitive and a great easer of paine, it is most soveraigne for a Horse that is taken, or that hath any contraction or Convulsion, and generally for any costivenesse in a horse whatsoever, proceeding from inward surfeite or sicknesse, as from the surfeit by provender, foundring in the body, and such like. The next is to take of salt water, or cleane Brine a quart, and dissolve therein a pretty quantity of Sope, and then luke-warme administer it: this Glister is very good for the Cholicke, or any other sicknesse of the guts or Belly. And thus from these three Glisters you may compound many Glisters, but in mine opinion, if you use no more then them onely, they will be fully sufficient.



CHAP. CL.  
Of purgations and their Uses.

**T**He purging of horses is ever by one of these two waies, either by Pils, or by Potion: Pils are any solide and substantiall stuffe fixed together in one body, and being made into round bals, are cast downe the Horses throat: And a Potion, is when you give the Horse any liquid purging matter to *drinke*, whether it bee purging powders dissolved in Wine or Ale: or that it bee any other liquid stuffe. Now for Pils; they onely purge and make cleane the head and braine, bringing flegme and other grosse humours downe into the Excrements: And Potions cleanse the stomacke, guts, and every other inward member. Now the Art of the true carefull *Farrier* is in choosing the Simples, whereof these Pils or Potions are to be compounded, and in aptly, or artificially applying the same. First then, it is needfull that every good *Farrier* (before he goe about to purge his horse) know with what ill humours a horse is oppressed, as whether it proceede from choler, flegme, or melancholy, and where the humours doe most abound; and then what simples are best to purge those humours, and with what property, quality, and temperament they be endued; for some simples are most violent, and next cousins to strong poysons, as *Scamony*, or *Coloquintida*: some againe are gentle; and rather nourishing then medicinall, as *Manna*, *Cassia*, whay, Prunes, and such like: and some are neither too violent, nor too geutle, but of a meane, as *Reubarbe*,  
*Agaricke*

*Agaricke, Sene, and Aloes.* Now the ancient *Farriers* did use to purge their horses with the pulpe of *Coloquintida*, sometimes with the Rootes of wilde Cow-cumbers, and sometimes with the broth of a sodden Whelpe mixt with *Nitrum*, and such like; but at this day they are not of our practice, and therefore I wish him that for his experience still to make a tryall of strong medicines, or know the working of every simple (which is a most praise-worthy Ambition,) first to make his proofes upon Jades, whose losse he respecteth not, and so by that *working* to adventure on better horses.

But to returne to my purpose, the *Farrier* who goeth about to purge a horse by purgatiō, must consider the nature of the horses disease; & the strength of the horse, and with them joyn the nature, strength, and quantity of the medicine: hee must also consider the climate under which the horse is bred, the time of the disease, the time of the yeare, and the time of the day: For as the diseases and the humours which cause the diseases, are sundry, so they must be avoided by sundry medicines, sundry waies compounded, according as experience from a continuall practice shall instruct you: wherein you are to observe and note, that weak, delicate, and tender horses are not to bee purged with that Violence which strong, stubborne, and sturdy horses are, and therefore in such cases, the quality and quantity is to bee looked into of every simple. The Climate is to be respected, as whether it be hot or cold; and the time of the disease: For some diseases must be purged at the beginning, as Fevers, Pestilence, Yellowes, Staggers, and all Violent



lent inward diseases, and some not till the matter be thoroughly digested, as Colds, Strangles, and Apoplexations. Now albeit the sicknesse proceede from cold humours, yet you must not administer as hot simples in Summer as in Winter, nor in the contrary case, so cold things in Winter as in Summer, wherby you see the time and the season of the year is to be respected. Then touching respect of the day, you are to observe that day to be best that is most temperate, sith too much heate maketh a horse faint, and too much cold doth hinder the medicine from Working. A little regard is to bee had to the winde and weather; for a moyst day hath a South-winde, is to be preferred before a North-winde with a dry day. Now the best houre of receiving any kinde of Potion, is ever in the morning, after hee hath fasted from meate and drinke all the night before. As soone as your horse hath received any Pil or potion, let him be walked or gently ridden up and downe one houre at the least, and then set up, and suffered to stand on the Bit two houres after, well littered, cloathed, and stopped; but if you perceive that hee beginneth to grow sicke or ill (as most commonly horses will) then you shall suffer him to lye downe, and as soone as his sicknesse is past, you shall offer him to drinke a Mash of Malt and water luke-warme: for any other meate keepe him fasting till his medicine have done working.

Now to come to particular receipts and medicines themselves, you shall easily understand that although the ancient *Farriers* doe make but two kinds, that is to say, Pils and Purgations, yet I divide them  
into

into three, that is to say, Scourings Pils, and Purgations. Scourings are those wholesome, naturall, and gentle purging medicines, which stirring up no great Fluxe of humours, doe onely keepe the body cleane from such evils as would arise and grow, being every way as wholesome in health, as in sicknesse, and may most properly be termed preparatives, or preparers of the body to entertaine more stronger medicines. To speake then first of the most gentlest and naturall scouring, it is onely grasse being given to a horse onely fiteene dayes together, and no more, for after that it fatteth and not scoureth. Next unto grasse is forrage, which is onely the blades of greene Corne, as Wheate, Rye, Barley, and such like, being given seven dayes and no more. Next is greene Thistles, being cut up, and given the horse to eat the space of five dayes and no more. And the last of this nature is the Masse made in this manner: take a pecke of ground malt, and put it into a paille, then take a Gallon and a halfe of Water boyling hot from the fire, and put it to the Malt, then with a staffe, mash and stirre them together at least halfe an houre, till tasting the Water you feele as sweete as Honey, then beeing luke-warme, give the Horse to drinke. All these scourings do onely but cleanse the guts and coole the body, adding comforts to the spirits, and ingendering strength, onely the Masse is to be used after labour, or in stead of drinke, in the time of any great sicknesse. Scourings of a little stronger nature are these: first when you give your horse any Provender, to mixe with halfe a pecke of Oates, a handfull or two of cleane drest hemp-seede: Or else



to take a good quantity of Boxetree leaves, and put them into a pewter dish, then set them before the fire, and let them dry leasurely till they bee so hard that you may crush them into powder; then take as much of the powder of Brimstone as there is powder of Boxe, and mixe them together, and amongst halfe a pecke of Oates mixe a handfull of this powder, and give it the horse to cate; both these scourings are to be used after labour, especially when the horse hath sweat much.

These two scourings worke upon no matter, but what nature is willing to expel, they purge the stomacke, head, and intrailles, they kil all kind of worms, and dry up flegme. Scourings of the strongest nature, are to take of *Sallet* oyle halfe a pint, and of new Milk from the Cow a pint, brew it together, and give it the horse luke-warme: or else take a pint of *Muskadine*, and halfe a pint of *Sallet* oyle, and being mixed together, give it the horse to drinke: Or else halfe a pint of oyle, and a pint of Sacke mixt together, and given the horse to drinke luke-warme.

These scourings cleanse the Head, Body, and guts, of all flegme or moltengrease, which any violent labour hath dissolved: they are exceeding good for any manner of cold or stoppings in the Wind-pipes, and if you adde unto them good store of Sugar-candy, it will preserve and keepe the horse from sickness. Now for Pils, you shall very plainly understand that the first and easiest are these, either to take twenty cloves of *Garlicke* cleane pild and bruised, then a quarter of a pound of sweete Butter; and so role up the *Garlicke* in foure or five bals  
or

or pellets, as big as two Walnuts a peece: And so taking out the Horses tongue thrust him downe his throat one after another: or else to take a quarter of a pound of Butter, and as much red Saunders, beate them well together in a mortar, and then make it into foure or five bals, and put them downe the Horses throat. Pils of a somewhat strong nature, are to take a handfull of Rosemary Leaves, and chopping them small, mixe them with a quarter of a pound of sweete butter, and then making it into round bals, give them unto the horse: Or else take round peeces of raw Mellons, and thrust them downe the horses throat: Or else to take five Greene figs, and put them downe the horses throat.

The strongest Pill is this: take of Lard two pound, layd in water two houres, then take nothing but a quarter of a pound of the cleane fat thereof, and stampe it in a Mortar, and thereto put of Lycoras, of Aniseedes, and of Fenugreek of each beaten into powder one ounce and a halfe, of Aloes likewise in powder one ounce, of *Agariske* halfe an ounce, knead all these together like paste; and make thereof foure or five balls, and give it the horse. The last recited Pill is singular good for the dry cough, and all the other Pils are most soveraigne for all infirmities of the head, which grow either from flegme, melancholy, or any other cold or moyst cause whatsoever. Now for Purgations, which are the strongest cleansers of the body, they be these: take two ounces of *Mirre*, and mixe it with a pint of wine, and it will purge all sickness which proceedeth of Choler: the signs whereof are, his belly will swell, be very hot, and hee can  
neither



neither dung, nor breake winde. Take a pint of wine and beate a raw egge therein, and adde to it a quarter of an ounce of Brimstone, and halfe an ounce of *Myrrh* beaten to powder, and give it the horse luke-warme, and it will purge all inward diseases proceeding of melancholy. Two spoonefuls of the powder *Diapente*, given with halfe a pint of Swines grease, purgeth all diseases proceeding of flegme. Take as much blacke Sope as a Walnut, a quart of new milke, and a quarter of a pint of Sallet oyle, and give it the horse luke-warme, and it purgeth all cold infirmities, but maketh the horse exceeding sicke. Take the guts of a Tench or Barbell, being cut into little small peeces, and give it the horse in a quart of white Wine and it will purge the horse from all costivenesse or paine in the guts, Rye being boyled, so that it burst not, then dried againe, and given the horse in stead of provender, purgeth and killeth all manner of wormes. Take of Radish rootes one ounce, of the roote called *Panax*, and of *Scamony*, of each halfe an ounce, beate all these together, and boyle them in a quart of honey, then give the horse two spoonefuls of this in a quart of Ale luke-warme to drinke, and it wil purge al grosse humors, from whence proceedeth either the falling evill, or any disease of the braine.

Take and boyle *Elicampana* rootes in milke till they be soft, that you may bruise them to pap, and then adding thereto halfe a pint of Sallet oyle, give it the Horse to drinke luke-warme, and this will purge and cleanse any kinde of Glanders. Take of sweete sope a quarter of a pound, and make it into threeballs, and give them to the horse, & it wil purge  
all

all evill humors whatsoever, both violently, and most abundantly.

## CHAP. CII.

*A most excellent rare scouring for any horse, sick or sound, and especially for running or hunting horses, whose grease must necessarily be mo'ten.*

**F**Orasmuch as the greatest Art which doth belong to the keeper either of Running or hunting horse, consisteth in the taking away from the Horse his grosse glut and fat, which not onely offendeth the vitall parts, but also stoppeth up the conduits and vessels of winde, and that it cannot any way be done, but by scouring after exercise, you shall understand that the best of all scourings, which hath hitherto beene approved, is this which I will here set downe: You shall take twenty Raisings of the Sun, and picke out the stones, and tenne figges, which you shall slit in the midst round-wile, boyle them in a pottle of running water till the water be consumed, and thickened: then take the powder of Lycoras, Aniseedes, and Sugar-candy finely scarst, and mixe it with the Raisings and Figges, stamping and working them together till it be brought to a stiffe paste, then making round bals thereof of a pretty bignesse, role and cover them all over with sweet Butter, and give so many of them unto the horse as you shall thinke meet for his strength; provided that the day before you must give your horse such exercise as will be sure to melt his grease, and that immediately before you



you give him this medicine, you also Warme him thoroughly, that the humours being againe stirred up, the medicine may worke more effectually.

### CHAP. CIII.

#### *Of Neezing or Fumigation, and the use thereof.*

**T**Here is yet also another manner of purging of a Horse, and especially his head, and that is by forcing him to neeze or snort violently at his Nose, casting forth all filthy and grosse matter, which otherwise would offend and oppresse the Braine; and this neezing is wrought sometimes by Fumes or Smoaks, sometimes by powders; and sometimes by oyles, the sharpnesse of which tickling the tender and quicke parts of the head, doe compell this snorting and neezing: Surely there is no Purgation more wholesome, for as it cleanseth and separateth grosse matter, so it comforteth and maketh strong the Braine. Now to come unto the particular medicines which doe procure this neezing, they be these: Squirt into an horses nostrils, either mans Urine which is old, or the Urine of an Oxe which hath had much rest, and it wil force a horse to neeze, and is most wholesome for any Quotidian Fever. Take the powders of *Gumdragant*, *Ensens*, and Damaske Roses well mixt together, and blow it with a quill into the horses nostrils, and it is good either against the Fever in Summer or Winter. Take warme vinegar and squirt it into his nostrils, and it is comfortable against the Fever which cometh by raw digestion.

Take

Take of *Garlicke* stalkes a handfull, being broake into little peeces, and a good quantity of *Frankincense*, and being put upon a chafing dish and coales, hold the chafing dish under the horses nostrils, so that the fume may ascend up into his head: and this is most excellent against the head-ache. Take feathers and brimstone, and burne them on a chafing dish and coales under the horses nose: or blow pepper and *Perithre* beaten to powder up into his Nostrils, either of both these are most excellent against the sleeping evill. Take the powder of Mother-wort and blow it up into a horses nostrils, and it is good against the falling evill. Take two Goose feathers anoynted over with Oyle de Bay, and thrust them up and downe in the horses nostrils, : or else to take Sage, Penyrill, and Wheate, long sodden together, and put into a bagge as hot as may bee, which bagge would be so close fastned to the horses head, that all the smoake and savour thereof may ascend up into his nostrils: Or take a clout anoynted with Sops or Oyle de Bay, and rub it up and downe his nostrils as high as may be. Any of all these, or all these together are most excellent against any cold, poze, or other obstruction in the head. Take Orpiment and Sulphure, and burne them on the coles, and hold it under the horses nose: or take oyle de Bay, *Euforbium*, and white *Elleboro*, and anoynting two feathers therewith, thrust them up into the horses nostrils: both these are good against the Glanders.

Take of the stalkes of Briony or wild Vine, two handfulls, and bruise them betwixt two stones, and being so bruised, put them into a linnen bag, and fasten  
P the



the bag so to the horses head, that the sent may go up into his nostrils without touching the hearbe with his mouth : And this is excellent against the mourning of the Chine, or any inward cough. Take of Rosemary, of Nard, and of Sage, dryed and beaten into fine powder, of each like Weight, and with a quill blow them up into the horses nostrils : or take the powder of white Pepper, or of *Salt-niter*, or of *Iris-Ilirica*, or blacke *Eleboris*, and blow them with a quill up into the horses nostrils : or take Linnen cloth dipt in the dregs of oyle, and setting it on fire, then suddenly put it out againe, and let the smoake ascend up into the horses nostrils : or squirt into his nostrils *Aristolochia*, mixt with wine, or *Salt-niter*, mixt with water : or salt and Roch-allum mixt with wine : or take ground Ivy beaten small, and thrust up into his nose : or Bay-berry beaten small, and burnt on the coales under the horses nose : or a coale of fire put into a lumpe of wet hay, making a smothering smoke, and held under the hoses nose. Any of these are most excellent against any disease of the head, especially Staggers, Colds, Glanders, Strangle, and such like.

✶ Yet all these have their severall imperfections : the best Fumethen of all others whatloever, is to take the best Olibanum, Storaxe, and Beniamine, and bruising them grossly together, burne them under the horses nose.

## CHAP. CIII.

## Of Frictions and Bathes, and of their severall uses

**F**Rictions or Bathes, are a certaine rubbing, a noynting, or bathing of a horses body all over, especially against the haire, because the medicine may sinke in so much the better with comfortable and soveraigne Unguents, whose vertues do loosen the skinne, cheare up the inward spirits, and spread a lively heate and feeling over the whole body: And of Frictions, both according to the opinion of the old *Farriers*, and also all the best of this present age, these are the most soveraigne. Take of Damaske Roses one pound, of old oyle a pint, of strong Vineger a pint and an halfe, of Mints and Rew, beaten into powder, of each one ounce and a halfe, together with one old dry Nut: beate them, and mingle them well together: Then being strained and made luke-warme, if it be in the Summertime, and that the Sunne shine hot, take the horse abroad: But if otherwise, keepe him in the stable, and heating a barre of Iron exceeding hot, hold it over, and on each side the Horse, and with the oyntment rubbe and chafe the horse all over against the haire, untill the horse beginne to sweate, then cloath the horse very warme and let him stand. This Friction is excellent against all Winter Fevers, or any inward sicknesse that cometh of Cold. Take of blacke *Elleborus* two or three handfuls, and boyle it in a sufficient quantity of strong Vineger; and with that rubbe and chafe all the horses head and body quite over



over once or twice a day ; and it is most excellent against Frenzy, madnesse, or any drynesse, or scallines of the skinne.

Take oyle de Bay, or *Dialthea*, and anoynt all the horses body all over therewith, holding a pan of coales, or hot barre of Iron, neere the oyntment to make it sinke in, or else make him a bathe of running water; wherein is boyled Rew, Worme-wood, Sage, Juniper, Bay-leaves, and Hyssope, and bathe all his body therewith: Either of these are most soveraigne for the mourning of the Chine, or any disease, of the Liver, Lungs, or Spleene. Take Wine and oyle, and having mixt them together, chafe and rub the horses body therewith, and it is most soveraigne for any inward sicknesse, especially the Liver. To bathe a horse in salt Water, is very wholesome, both for the horses skin, and also for any disease in the stomacke.

Lastly, take of Mallowes, of Sage, of each two or three handfuls, and a Rose-cake; boyle them together in water, then being boyled till the water be all consumed, adde a good quantity of Butter, or Sallet oyle, and mixing them together bathe all the horses foure legges therewith, and all the parts of his body also: and there is nothing more soveraigne for a horse that hath beene tyred or over-travailed. To let blood, and with that blood, and oyle, and Vineger, presently to anoynt his body, helpeth most fort of infirmities.

## CHAP. CV.

*Generall Drenches or Medicines for all the inward Diseases or surfeits in horses.*

**T**Here is no medicine more soveraigne for all diseases which breed in a horses body, then to take halfe an ounce of the powder called *Diapente*, and brew it with a pint either of Sacke, if it be for colds, or Muscadine if it be for heart sicknesse; and so give it the horse to drinke fasting in the morning: and doe this at least three mornings together, especially when the horse beginneth first to droope. The next to this, is to take of Salladine two handfulls, both roote and leaves, chop them and bruise them; then take of Rew as much, of red Sage and Mints as much, and of Aloes halfe an ounce: boyle these in a pottle of Beere or Ale till the one halfe be consumed, and then give it the horse luke-warme to drinke.

Take foure ounces of *Diapente*, and mixe it with foure ounces of clarified Honey, and keep it in a close glasse, and give halfe an ounce thereof with a pint of sweete wine to the horse to drinke, and it is an excellent drench. Take of Lycoras an ounce, of Aniseedes, Comen seeds, and *Elicampane* rootes of each halfe an ounce, of *Turmerick* and Baies, of each a quarter of an ounce, of long Pepper & *Fennugreek*, of each to drams, beate these small and searse them, and put five spoonefulls thereof into a quart of Ale warmed with a little butter or oyle, and it is very soveraigne for any disease comming of cold causes. Take a quart of good ale or wine, a raw egge beaten and mingled



with twelve scruples of quicke Sulphure, and foure scruples of *Myrrb* made into powder, and give it the horse to drinke, it is a good drench. The powder of Brimstone mixt with sweete wine is a good drench also. The roote of the Sea onion, the rootes of Popler, called the Greeke *Rhammos*, mingled with common Salt, given in water, keepeth the horse long in health. Take fine powder of *Fenugreeke*, and bruise it, seeth it in water till it waxe thicke, adde a pound of sweete butter, an ounce of Linseede oyle, and as much of the oyle of Nuts, mingle them well together, and give it the horse in three or foure dayes to drinke, by a pretty quantity at a time. Selladine simply of it selfe, or Rue simply of it selfe, boyled in Beere or Ale, and as much Brimstone as a Wall-nut, is an excellent Drench for any long taken surfeite. *Garlicke* and *Houslicke* beaten together in a Mortar, and then boyled in Beere or Ale from a pottle to a quart; then mixt with Licoras, Aniseedes, and Sugar-candy, and a pretty quantity of Sallet oyle, is an excellent Drench for any inward sicknesse which doth proceed from hot causes, as is the Frenzy, the Anticor, and such like. And thus much of generall drenches, and their uses.

#### CHAP. CVI.

##### *How to make the powder called Diapente.*

**T**His word *Diapente* is as much as to say composition of five simples: for the receipt is thus compounded. Take of *Gentian*, of *Aristolochia*, of *Bay-berries*, of *Myrr*, and of the shavings of *Ivory*, of each  
like

like quantity, beate them into very fine powder, and then searse it. This powder is praised to bee a soveraigne preservative or medicine against all inward diseases: and therefore I would wish every *Farrier*, and all such as are the masters of good horses, never to be without it.

## CHAP. CVII.

*A most famous receipt, which is both a singular drench and a singular oyntment, called of the Italians Accopum.*

**T**Ake of *Euforbinum* halfe an ounce, of *Castoreum* one ounce, of *Adrases* halfe a quarter of a pound, *Bdelium* halfe an ounce and halfe a quarter, of *Pepper* a quarter of a pound, *Foxe-grease* halfe an ounce, *Opoponax* one ounce, *Lacerpitium* three quarters of an ounce, *Amoniacum* halfe a quarter of a pound, *Pidgeons dung* as much, *Galbanum* halfe an ounce, *Nitrum* one ounce one quarter, *Spuma Nitri* three quarters of an ounce, *Ladannum* a full quarter of a pound, *Perethrum*, and *Bay berries*, of each three quarters of an ounce, *Cardadum* two ounces, seede of *Rew* halfe a quarter of a pound, seede of *Agnus Castus* one ounce, *Parsley* halfe an ounce, dried rootes of *Ireos*, or *Flower-de-luce* one ounce one quarter, *Hyssop* and *Carpobalsannum* a quarter of a pound, oyle of *Flower-de-luce* a quarter of a pound and halfe a quarter; Oyle de *Bay* as much, Oyle of *Spikenard* three quarters of a pound, *Oleum Cyprinum* three quarters of a pound and halfe a quarter, the oldest oyle *Olive* one pound and a halfe,



halfe, pitch a quarter of a pound and two ounces, Turpentine a quarter of a pound; melt every one of these that will melt, severally by themselves, and then mingle them together with the rest of the simples beaten into fine powder: and after that they have beene a little boyled on the fire, take it off, and straine it into a faire Vessell, and whensoever you will give your horse any thereof, give it him with Wine, or foure or five spoonefull with a pint of Sacke or Muscadine: and if with long keeping it waxeth any thing stiffe or hard, then soften it with the oyle of Cypresse, so that it may bee good and thicke.

This Confection is both a medicine and an oymment, if you put it in the horses nostrils, it wil draw out all noysome humours, and discharge his head of all grieve: if you annoynt his body therewith, it healeth all convulsions, colds, and drinesse, or withering of the body; and if you bathe his Limbes therewith, it driveth away all wearinesse and tiring; and if you give it him with wine to drinke, it cureth all kind of inward maladies.

#### CHAP. CVIII.

*How to make the oyle of Oates.*

**T**Ake of Milke two Gallons, and warming it on the fire, put thereto a quarter of a pound of burnt Allome, which will make it run of Curds, then take out the Curd and cast it way; then straine the whay through a course cloath in a cleane vessell: then take a quarter of a pecke of cleane hysked Oates that  
were

were never dryed, and put them into the whay, and set them on the fire till the Oates burst, and be soft; then take them off, and put them into a Collander that is full of holes, so that the whay may goe gently from them without any pressing (for you must keep the Oates as moyst as may be :) this done, put the Oates into a frying pan, and set them over the fire, stirring them continually till you see the Vapour or smoake of them to ascend upwards, but as it were runne about the pan; then suddenly take them off, and putting them into a presse, presse them most exceedingly, and looke what commeth from them is onely the oyle of them, which you must save in a close glasse. Now there are other more artificiall and curious waies to distill and extract this Oyle, but this of all other is the most easiest and surest for every meane capacity. This oyle of Oates is of all medicines and simples whatsoever, the most excellent and soveraigne for a horses body, as beeing extracted from the most naturall, wholesome, and best foode which doth belong unto a horses body. This oyle being given by foure or five spooneful at a time in a pint of sweete Wine, or a quart of strong Ale, and some of the Whay powred into the horses Nostrils, doth cure the Glanders before all other medicines. It is also (given in the same manner) the best of all Purgations; for it purgeth away all those venemous and filthy humours which feedeth the most incurable Farcy whatsoever. And for mine owne part, as long as I can conveniently come by this oyle of oates, so long I will never in any medicine whatsoever, use any oyle or unctious matter



ter then it onely : I having found by experience, that it is the soveraigne of all simples of that kinde, whatsoever they be.

## CHAP. CIX.

*Certaine briefe observations to be observed at home and abroad, whilest the horse is in health*

**T**Hese observations now following, are gathered from the most exact principles, and unfallible grounds of all the best and surest approved horsemen, either of this Kingdome, or of any other Nation within Christendome.

First then for the generell feeding of your horse when he is in health, you shall feede him with straw, Hay, Oates, fine little Wheate, Beanes, Barley, bread made of Beanes, Pease, or Fitches, or any other meat that swels not in the horses body.

It is the opinion of *Camerarius* first to give provender, then hay, and lastly Water ; but our English custome is, first hay, then water, and lastly provender.

In your travaile feede your horse betimes for all night, that thereby the horse may sooner take his rest.

The quantity of Provender which you shall give your horse at one time, shall bee as much as you can hold in the palmes of both your hands at fixe times, or three pints by measure.

Horse-bread which is made of cleane beanes, cleane pease, or cleane fitches, feedeth exceedingly.

Let your horses meate and drinke bee exceeding sweete and cleane, yet his water by no meanes extreme

treame cold running water from the rocke; for it pierceth too much.

To rub your horses mouth with Salt and Wine, will make him both eate and drinke with a much better appetite.

Let your horse neither eate when he is hot, nor drinke when hee is hot, neither presently after his travaile.

Labour your horse moderately when the weather is either extreame hot or extreame cold, that so you may avoyd extreame heates, or suddaine colds.

Travaile not your horse to late, that your owne eye may see him well dryed, and well fed before you take your owne rest.

Never take your saddle from your horse backe suddainely.

Lend not your horse, lest your selfe walke on foote.

Let your horse lye cleane and dry, keep your stable sweete, let no swine lye neere it, nor let any Pullen come within it.

Let your horse be ever tied with two Reines.

Let the light of your stable be ever toward South and North, yet so as the North windowes may in the Winter be shut close at pleasure, and opened in the Summer to give fresh ayre.

Ride your horse oft a little on stony wayes, that hee may the better feele his fecte, and harden his hooffes.

Have ever neere your stable some close plaine greene, that your horse being let loose, hee may oft tumble himselfe thereon.

Let



Let your horses bed be of soft sweete straw, somewhat above his Knees, of which Wheate straw is the best: for though Barley straw be the softest, yet a horse will covet to eate it, and it is unwholesome, and Wheate straw is not unwholesome to eate, yet it is hard to lye upon: as for Oate straw it is the best in the Superlative, for is both wholesome to eate, and soft to lye upon.

Curry or dresse your horse twice a day, that is, before water, and when he is curried, rubbe him with your hand, and with a rubber; his head would bee rubbed with a wet cloath, and his cods made cleane with a dry cloath: his fore-top, his maine, and his taile, would be oft wet with a wet maine combe, and ever where the horses haire is thinnest, there curry the gentlest.

Let the plaunchers of your stable lye even and Levell, that your horse may stand at his ease, and not prove lame by too much oppressing his hinder parts.

Let not any mud wall be within your horses reach; for he will naturally covet to eate it, and nothing is more unwholesome.

Give your horse plenty of Garbadge (which is chopt wheate straw) both with his provender, and without.

Let your hay bottles be very little, and tyed very hard: for so your horse shall eate with the best stomacke, and make least waste.

To sprinkle water upon your hay, is most wholesome, and to sprinkle Fenugreeke upon your Provender, is as soveraigne: the first is good for the winde, the latter for wormes.

Give

Give your horse dally exercise, for that gets the best stomack to his meat.

Purge your horse once a yeare with grasse, or with greene blades of Corne, called Forrage, for fifteene dayes together; yet before you so purge him, in any case let him blood; and whilest he is in purging, by no meanes let him have any provender.

A horse after travaile hath ever more blood then any beast whatsoever.

Greene grasse or Forrage cleanseth the blood, encreaseth strength, healeth diseases, avoydeth melancholy, helpeth the horses growth, and maketh the skiane smooth: whilest the horse is at soyle, by no meanes let him take cold.

The Northerne man watereth two houres before he rideth at the least: then lets the horse eate a little hay, then gives provender, but not much, and brid-leth the horse up a quarter of an houre before hee rideth: At night he watereth two miles before hee taketh his lodging, then rideth easily: he neither wal-keth his horse, nor stuffeth him, nor looseth any girth, but onely rubbeth him very cleane, and so lets him bite upon his bridle halfe an houre after, with good store of litter under him; then hee gives the horse hay, and after provender: before hee goeth to water againe, (yet but a little) then sees the horse throughly well dressed and rubbed, well littered, and most sufficiently meated.

There bee others which walke after labour, then rubs well, Littereth and unbridleth: both which bee good, so that the one have not too much walking, nor the other too cold a stable. But howsoever,  
stiffe



stuse not your horse backward, but betwixt his fore-legs, and formost girth : for backward stuffing is perilous, least drawing his yard when he would stale, hee draw backe his sheath any of the Litter that stops him. The Northerne mans use agreeth with the *French* principles, which saith: Use no other walking then your selfe on your horses back, by riding him gently till you come at your Inne, and so make him cold, then shake litter under him, rub his legges, his belly, and every part of his body wel, till he be dry, then unbridle him, rub his head well, and give him hay; slacke no girth till it be night that the windowes be shut; suffer the horse to drinke but a little at once, to avoyde suddaine cooling of the stomacke, or driving the horse into a shaking Fever: At night rubbe and curry well, and feede according to the horses stomacke.

Other good *Farriers* ride gently till the horses sinewes be chafed, and never water in travaile till the horse have staled, and forbear to travaile him fast before he hath drunke; that he may not drinke in his great heate, and they hold the standing Water the best; after water for a mile they ride softly till his water be warmed in his belly, and before they come to their Inne they doe not water, nor of an houre after they have unbridled: then they clothe wel, and give Provender, having a care that their horses stand not in the winde, and that they have bin rubbed dry and cleane. Now all these principles are exceeding good, yet I would wishe every travailer to learne how his horse hath beene used, and that custome (if it bee not too much against reason) still to follow.

If you come late to your Inne, and that your journey be great and earnest, so that your horse will not eat till he have drunke, and yet is hot notwithstanding, then let his drinke be *Milke* given in the darke, lest the whitnesse make him refuse it: this is both cordiall and pleasant: if you cannot get *Milke* enough, then mingle *Milke* with Water luke-warme, for no drinke would be given a horse hotter.

If your horse either by labour or any surfeits be brought low, leane, and weake, you shall give him *Mares Milke* to drinke many dayes together, and it will make him strong.

It is not good to wash your horse, especially if he be either hot or very fat: otherwise you may wash his Legs above his Knees, so that in no case you wash his belly, and that you ride him a good round pace after his washing, then by no meanes wlake him, but let him up and dresse him: The purer the Water is wherein you wash your horse, the more wholesome it is, so that it be not too extreame cold.

The best houres to water your horse in, (when he lives at Rest) is betwixt seaven and eight in the morning, and foure and five in the evening.

When you travaile, at every steepe hill light, both to refresh your horse and your selfe.

Let a fat or hot horse have his water at foure times, and not as much as he will drinke at once; give him provender twice at night, and but once in the morning: let his cloath neither be too hot, nor with straw too much stuffed: when hee eateth good hay, let him have lesse provender then when hee eateth straw: give his meate by little at once to avoid glutting.



ting of him, and let him stand two houres every day without meate.

Rubbing much, hard, and well, doth profit, preserve, and doth keepe both strength of body, and legges: For in rubbing and combing, a horse doth take much delight, and it doth better then much meate.

To feede with Barley (according to the opinion of the ancient *Italians*) ingendreth good blood, encreaseth strength and courage, and maintaineth health, but with us here in *England*, wee finde oates to bee much better feeding.

In the dogge daies it is not wholesome to ride your horse oft into the water, to allay his naturall heate.

The masters eye to see his horse well curried, and with the hand well rubbed, and well meated, and the stable sweete and cleane kept, preserveth health, and wonderfully feedeth the horse.

Cleanse and picke the soales and bottomes of your horse feete oft, and stuffe them well with Oxe dung, anoynt his hooffes with fresh grease, tarre, or turpentine.

Much rest is the mother and the nurse of many diseases.

When you ride, looke oft to your Saddle, and your horses shooes, and you shall finde much more ease in your journey.

## CHAP. CX.

*Certaine speciall Principles in Foales and  
in Horses.*

**T**He Foales whose Legs be long, will ever be tall, for of all beasts their Legs in length ever grow the least, and by the bignesse of your legges you shall gesse the strength and greatnesse of their bodies.

Let your Colts, if you can possible, never bee housed till they be past three yeares old.

The *Greeke* horse (which we call the *Turky* horse) is a most excellent horse, swift, bold, wel headed, tall, and strong, many of them be White, some Bay, some Sorrell, and some Blacke.

*Arabian* horse is most swift, and most beautifull.

The Horse of *Affrica*, which we call the *Barbary* horse, is of good courage, swift, and nimble, and therefore both the *Turky* horse and he must be used with all lenity and gentlenesse, and not with beating.

The *Frizeland* horse is fiery, yet the worst of any.

The *Flemish* horse is worse then the *Frizeland*.

The *Spanish* Jenet is good, swift, and light.

The *Neapolitan* courser for all uses is most excellent and beautifull.

And the English Horse is best both for great burthen or long travaile.

Observe ever to winne your horse by patience and gentlenesse, and never be angry or mad with your horse, if he be of great mettle; onely the dull horse must with much beating bee quickned and inflamed.

Q

Anoynt



Anoynt your bit when you put it first into your horses mouth, with honey, and the powder of Licorras, or else with honey and salt : and at no time put any Bit or Snaffle into your horses mouth before you have washt.

Nevertake your horses backe before you have the bridle, reines fast in your hand ; and when you walke downe any Hil, by no meanes drive your horse loose before you.

If your horse have a long backe, let him have a large saddle, and if hee have a low backe, let the Saddle have a high seate : and if his backe bee short, let the bouldsters stand the neerer & closer together.

If your horse bee dul, you must spur him soundly, and after such spurring, rub his sides with Salt.

#### CHAP. CXI.

*Certaine generall observation concerning Mares.*

**I**N length and height, a Mare groweth till shee be five yeares, and a horse till he be sixe.

When a Mare is past two yeares old she may bee covered, but the best time is after foure yeare old.

Common Mare may bring Foales every yeare, but let your best Mares bring but every second yeare, especially if they bring horse Colts.

After covering by no meanes travaile your Mares.

To get horse Colts, cover before the full of the Moone, and when the signe is a Female : and to get Mare colts cover after the ful, and in the Male signe : for note it, there be twelve signes, sixe Male, and sixe Female.

To make a Mare stand to her horsings, set her by the horse two or three dayes, that hee may much desire and be acquainted before hee cover her: After bring them out, and let him serve her, and have ready a payle of water, which when the horse shrinketh from her, powre upon the ridge of the Mares backe: then set them so farre asunder as that the one may not heare the other: Doe this three mornings, and three evenings together, then let her not come neere the horse after, till she be knit, least the desire of him againe, make her to shoote out that which she kept before.

To know whether your Mare be with Foale about Christmas or no, powre a little Water into her eare; and if shee onely shake her head, shee is then with Foale, but if she shake both head and body also, she is not with Foale.

When you weane your Foales, take them from the Mares foure daies before the full of the Moone, and after the Foales have so remained foure and twenty houres, let them againe sucke till they waxe very full: then remove them for altogether, and the next morning give every one three slips of Savin, and so after let them have till they be three yeares old, all plenty of meate abroad, rather then in the stable.

Let your Stallion for Trotters be either *Neapolitan* Courser, or *Arabian*, *Turke*, or *Barbary*, and for amblers, either the *Spanish* Jenet, or the *Irish* hobby.

Put your Mares to the Horse, from midde *March* till midde *May*, or midde *June*, the Moone having newly changed.

It is good to put the horse and the Mare for three



or foure nights together in some vast empty house, and in the morning take the horse away, and feede him well; but feede your Mare sparingly, especially give her little Water.

At the end of fixe moneths, by no meanes chafe your Mares: for then they are in quickning, and may easily be made to cast their Foales.

The Wal-eye either in Mare or in horse, doth never see perfectly, especially when there is any Snow on the ground.

A Mare goeth with Foale eleven moneths, and ten dayes.

Let your Mares be of a meane stature, large, and broad, and of good shapes; and the Stallion of like Shape, but somewhat taller; and temper their natures thus: Put unto the hot horse the coole mare, and to the hot mare the coole horse: and let your grounds wherein you breede, bee dry, hilly, and with running streames in it.

## CHAP. CXII.

*Certaine speciall notes to be observed in the buying of a horse.*

First, marke his colour and his shape, that is to say, a comely well proportioned head, with an out-looking eye, good well raised shoulders, and a thicke large breast, broad brawne, large and broad flat legges, short pasternes, and little feete: for long pasternes shew weaknesse, and broad feete shew dullnesse: feele if hee have no Glanders betweene his chaps,

chappes, no splents, curbe not spaven, looke he bee not purficke or broken winded: put your hand before his eyes, to know if he see well. Looke into his mouth for his age: if hee bee past eight yeares old, Note wel. feele all downe the frunt of his tayle with your hand, and if you feele that it be smooth, then the horse is not very old, but if it have any rough knobs towards the end, buy him not, for his good dayes are past. Let him runne at the halters end, for if hee be Lame (having that liberty) hee will favour that Legge which is amisse, and leane upon it. If he turne up the white of his eye, or lay his eare to his necke when he is ridden, hee is a sullen Jade, and full of naughty qualities: if when you stirre him in the stable, he stare and looke back upon you with a stout Countenance, it is a token of a good stomacke in him; and great aptnesse to bee taught: if he stirre the end of his tayle as hee passeth out and is ridden, and yet doth not whiske it, it sheweth that his pace is unperfect: bee sure to see him turne as short as may be, that you may know whether he be swayd in the backe or no: the middle stature is the best, and the short knit horse is the strongest. The wall eye ever seeth the worst.

The horse that is of nature Gentle, Swift, Light, Nimble, of easie pace, and good colour, strong feet, good Loynes, speedy in eating, and good at his provender, is ever the best for use, and the readiest money in the Market at all times. See if the haire in the spurring place be white, for it argueth slownesse and spur-galling.

The horse that will paw and beate the ground



with his foote when he is stayed from going forwards, is ever like to be good and durable in triuall.

Many other notes there are that are needlesse to rehearse, which by the observing of these will easily come into your memory.

### CHAP. CXIII.

*Generall notes concerning some Simples already spoken of.*

**A**Ll manner of Marrowes or Pithes, of what kinde soever they bee, must bee kept by themselves in a dry coole place, and preserved from all filth or uncleannesse, and from the annoyance either of wind or fire, and so they will last fully out a whole yeare.

You shall keepe no Syrrops, nor sweete Electuaries, nor Pilles, nor powders, nor conserues of Flowers, nor any oyntments, Sewers, or Emplaster, above one whole yeare, onely bitter Electuaries, or conserues of Fruites or Roots will last fully out two yeares.

Of Oyles, some will last long, some must be new made: Oyles extracted out of Wood or Mettals will last long.

Gather roots in Autumne, but take the smal sprigs from them, and make them cleane and dry.

Dry small rootes in the shade and Winde, and greate rootes either in the Winde and Sunne, or by the fire: lay them in a dry place towards the South, and they will keepe long, provided that neither  
Sunne

Sunne nor moysture injure or hurtthem.

Gather all manner of hearbes when they do most flourish, and dry them in the shade, except they bee very moyst and apt to putrifie; they last for the most part, a whole yeare.

Gather seeds and fruites when they be fully ripe; they also last but one whole yeare.

Gather the Rinde or Barke of any simple  
when the Hearbe is ripe : drye  
them, and they will last  
many yeares.

*The end of the first booke.*





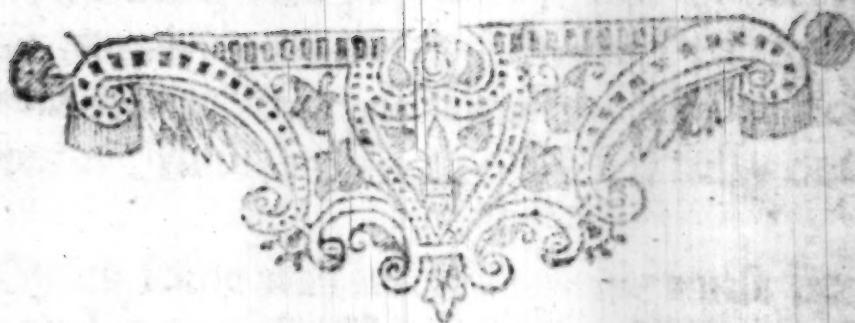
Shall not move to pasture or hutchin.  
Gather all manner of berries when they do most  
boonish, and dry them in the shade, except they bee  
very moist and apt to putrify, they last for the most  
part whole years.

Gather seeds and fruit when they be fully ripe &

they also last but one whole year.  
Gather the Rind of Citrus or my simple  
when the fruit is ripe & dry  
them in the shade for use.



The end of the first booke.



# THE SECOND BOOKE:

CONTAINING ALL GYRES  
Chirurgicall, or such infirmities as  
being onely outward, crave the use of  
*Chirurgery, and are called in Horse-  
leach-craft, Horses Sorrances.*

---

Newly imprinted, Corrected, and En-  
larged with many Notable Additions, and  
most certaine approoved Medicines,  
never revealed before this  
fift Impression.

---

Written by *Gervase Markham. Gent.*

---



Imprinted at *London* by *Nicholas and Iohn  
Okes*, dwelling in the Well yard in lit-  
tle *St. Bartholmewes* neere the Hof-  
pitall Gate. 1636.



THE SECOND  
BOOK:

CONTAINING ALL CURES

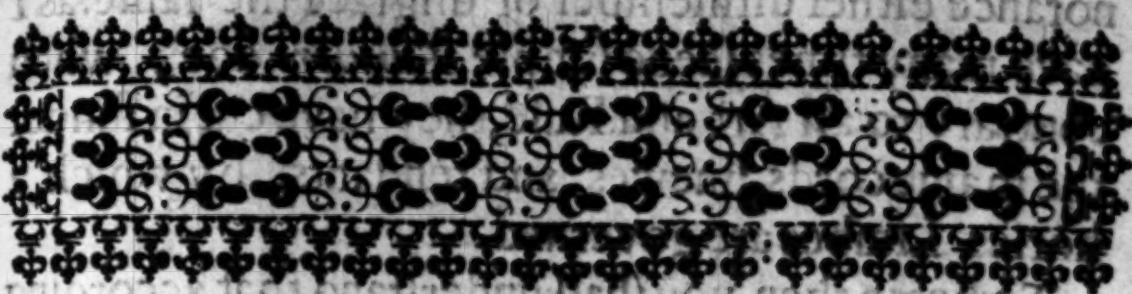
Chirurgically, or such Instruments as  
being only outward, crave the use of  
Chirurgie, and are called in Horse  
Acut, and Superficial Cures.

Newly improved, corrected, and En-  
larged with many Noble Additions, and  
most certain approved Medicines,  
never revealed before this  
the Impression.

Written by George Catwilde, Gent.



Printed at London by W. Stiles and John  
Oake, dwelling in the Whitechapel  
the 2d. of the 1st. of the 1st. of the 1st.  
1636.



## THE SECOND BOOKE.

### CHAP. I.

*What proportion of measure is required in every member of a well-shapen Horse.*

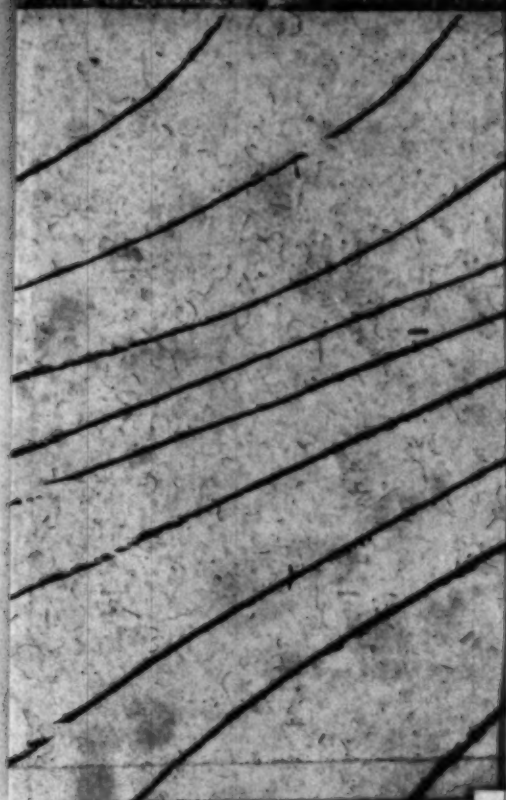
**A**S FORASMUCH as the great substance of this Art of Chirurgery, or second part of Horse-leach-craft, applyed onely unto outward infirmities, consisteth of Incisions, Cauterizings, Corrodings, and Dismembrings, as well as of Comfortings, Incarnating, Cleansing, Conglutinating, and biding up members in their true forme, and that all joyntly together, goe but about to make a true and well-formed Body: I thinke it meetest that I beginne with the true proportion and measure which is required in every member of a well shaped horse, that the carefull Harrier thereby understanding how, and in what fashion every Lineament should bee placed, or what portion and quantity they doe containe, he may at no time through ignorance



norance either dismember or disgrace the same: as I have many times seene simple *Farriers* doe, when contrary to all Art and Rule, they have cut in sunder the maine cords, sinewes, and tendants, by which a horses Limbes are governed.

To begin then, you shall understand that according to the description of the most ancient and worthy *Farriers*: there are in a Horses Palate of his mouth twelve bars or degrees like steps, one above another, standing (when his mouth is turned upward) like a paire of staires: his tongue would bee halfe a foote long, his upper lip sixe inches, and his neather lip five inches long, each of his Jawes would bee ten inches long, his head from his eyes downe-ward full twelve inches long, his eares five inches long, the circuit or compasse of his eye, foure inches about, his necke from the nape of his head unto the withers would be seven handfuls, from the withers to the fillets twelve handfuls, and from the fillets to the setting on of the tayle sixe handfuls: The length of the shoulder would bee twelve inches, and the length of his shanke sixe inches, the length of his hinder hooft would be twelve inches, and his cambrell five inches, and the length of the whole body from the head to the taile would be an hundred inches. Now as horses are bigger or lesser, so these measures either exceede, or are lesse, neither doe I confidently build upon these inch quantities of the ancient *Farriers*, because I having my selfe measured many horses, I never yet could finde any certainty in the proportions: onely this is the most certaine rule that ever I could finde, that looke what quantity

12 13















is betweene the Nape of the Horses necke, and the uttermost part of the Withers, there must ever bee twice so much betweene the Withers and the setting on of the taile: and looke what quantity is betweene the top of the shoulde-blade, or top of the Withers to the elbow of the horse, it must bee twice so much from the elbow to the setting on of the Hoofe: And looke how much it is from the top of the Hippe to the stifling place, it must be twice so much from the stifling place to the setting on of the hinder hoofe: And this is the certainest rule that ever I could find for a horses truest proportion. And therefore for your better satisfaction, behold this picture that is now heere placed, which is the Anatomy of a most perfect horse, with lines drawne from every member, directing and shewing al the outward diseases or Sorranes belonging to a horses body.

## CHAP. II.

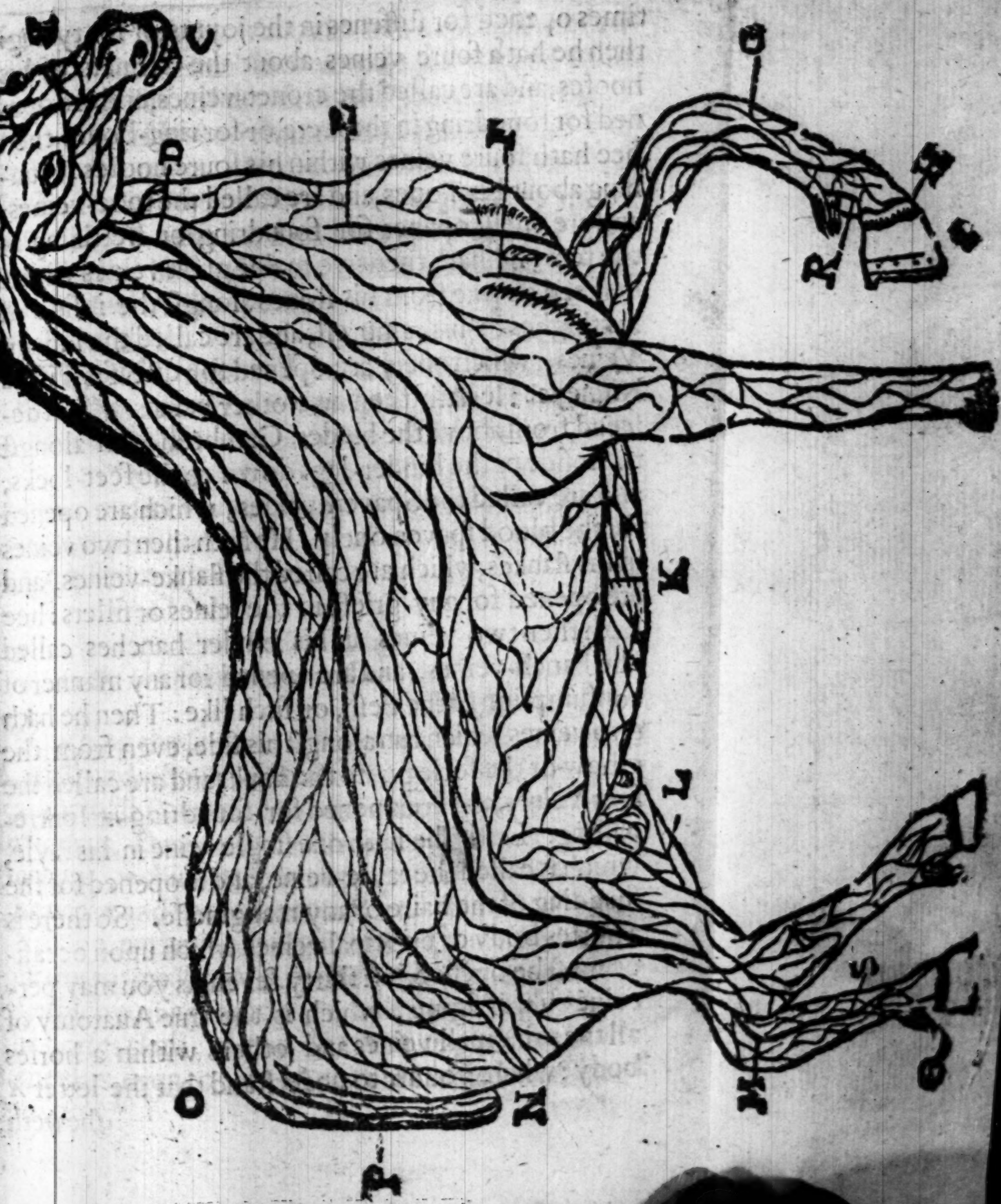
*Of the veines belonging to a Horse, and how many there be.*

IT is most necessary that every good carefull Farrier know all the principall veines in a horses body, especially those which in the time of neede, or in sicknesse are to be opened: And therefore to beginne you shall know that from the Liver, which is the Fountaine of blood, both in Man and Beast, doth arise one maine great conduit or large veine, which ascending into the body, doth divide it selfe into thus many severall branches or lesser Rivers. First, within



within the palate of the mouth, above the first and third Barres, are two notable veines which the best Farriers doe touch and strike when the horse hath any disease in his head, braine, or stomacke: He hath also other two which descend downe from the lower parts of his eyes unto his nostrils, and are ever opened for any griefe in the eyes: He hath two others which are above his eyes, and runne crosse the Temples of his head, and are called the Temple veines, which are likewise opened for all manner of cold diseases in the head; hee hath also two great maine veines running alongst each side of his windpipe, even from the uppermost joynt of his neather chap downe to the breast, which are alled the necke veines; and are those which are ordinarily opened for any disease whatsoever. He hath then two veines which arise upward from betweene his fore-legs to the top of his breast, and are called the breast-veines, and they are opened when the horse hath any Fever, or is sick at the heart. He hath other two which likewise ascend from betweene the fore-legs, but do not mount so high as the breast-veines, but rest upon the formost bough of the fore-legge; and they be called the Plat-veines, and they be opened either for foundring, or other griefe in the Limbes. He hath other two veines which run downe from the elbow of the fore-shoulder, downe all along the inside of the fore-legs, and are called the shanke-veines, which are opened for splents, mallanders, or such like. He hath then foure veines which runne alongst the fetlockes of the horse, and are called the shackle-veines which albeit they are but small, yet they are many times







times opened for stiffenes in the joynts, or for tyring then he hath foure veines about the Cronets of his hoofes, and are called the cronet-veines, and are opened for foundring in the feete, or for ring-bones: then hee hath foure veines within his foure hoofes, running about his Tooës, and are called the tooë-veines, and are onely opened for foundring or frettizing in the feet: he hath then two maine great veines which descend downe from his stones alongst the inside of his thighes to his cambrell, and are called the kidney Veines; which onely are opened for diseases in the Kidneys: He hath then two other veines which descend from above the hinder Cambrell, all alongst the inside of the hinder-legs down to the feet-locks, and are called the Spaven-veines, which are opened for the blood spaven onely: He hath then two veines in his flankes, which are called the flanke-veines, and are opened for any griefe in the reines or fillets: hee hath then two veines in his hinder hanches called the hanch-veines, and are opened for any manner of consumption of the flesh, or such like: Then he hath two veines which run alongst his side, even from the elbow of the forleg unto the flank, and are called the spur-veines, and are opened for foundring or spurregalling. Lastly, he hath one single veine in his tayle, which is called the tayle-veine, and is opened for the shedding of the haire or any manginess. So there is a horses body of principall veines which upon occasion must be opened, just thirty seven, as you may perceive by this figure, which is the true Anatomy of all the principall veines and others within a horses body: where you are to understand that the letter A sheweth

sheweth the Temple-veine, *B* the Eye-veines, *C* the Palate-veines, *D* the Neck-veine, *E* the breast-veine, *F* the Plat-veines, *G* the Shank-veines, *H* the Cronet-veines, *I* the Hoofe-veines, *K* the Spurre-veines, *L* the Kidney-veines, *M* the Spaven-veines, *N* the Flanke-veines, *O* the Hanch-veines, *P* the Taile-veines, *Q* and *R* the Fet-locke veines. Now for the other small thrids, or veines, which as it were, overspread the whole body, because nature will allow no part or member to be empty or voyd of blood, they be also veines, derived from the other maine great veines, yet of no efficacy or force, but such as upon any necessary incision may very well be cut asunder without any fluxe of blood, or other danger: but for the other master veines, they may not bee cut but with great perill. And thus much for veines, which are the instruments of heate.

### CHAP. III.

#### *Of the sinewes in a horses body.*

**T**Ouching the sinewes within a horses body, you shall understand that from the braine, which is the principall Fountaine or Well-spring of sinewes whatsoever, there is derived one great maine sinew or tendant, which passing through the hollownesse of the necke and backe-bone, doth extend it selfe even to the nethermost joynt of the horses strunt: From this maine sinew is derived two smaller branches, which passing through certaine holes in the top of the horses skull, runne downe alongst the horses cheekes, even to the poynt of his nostrils: Then

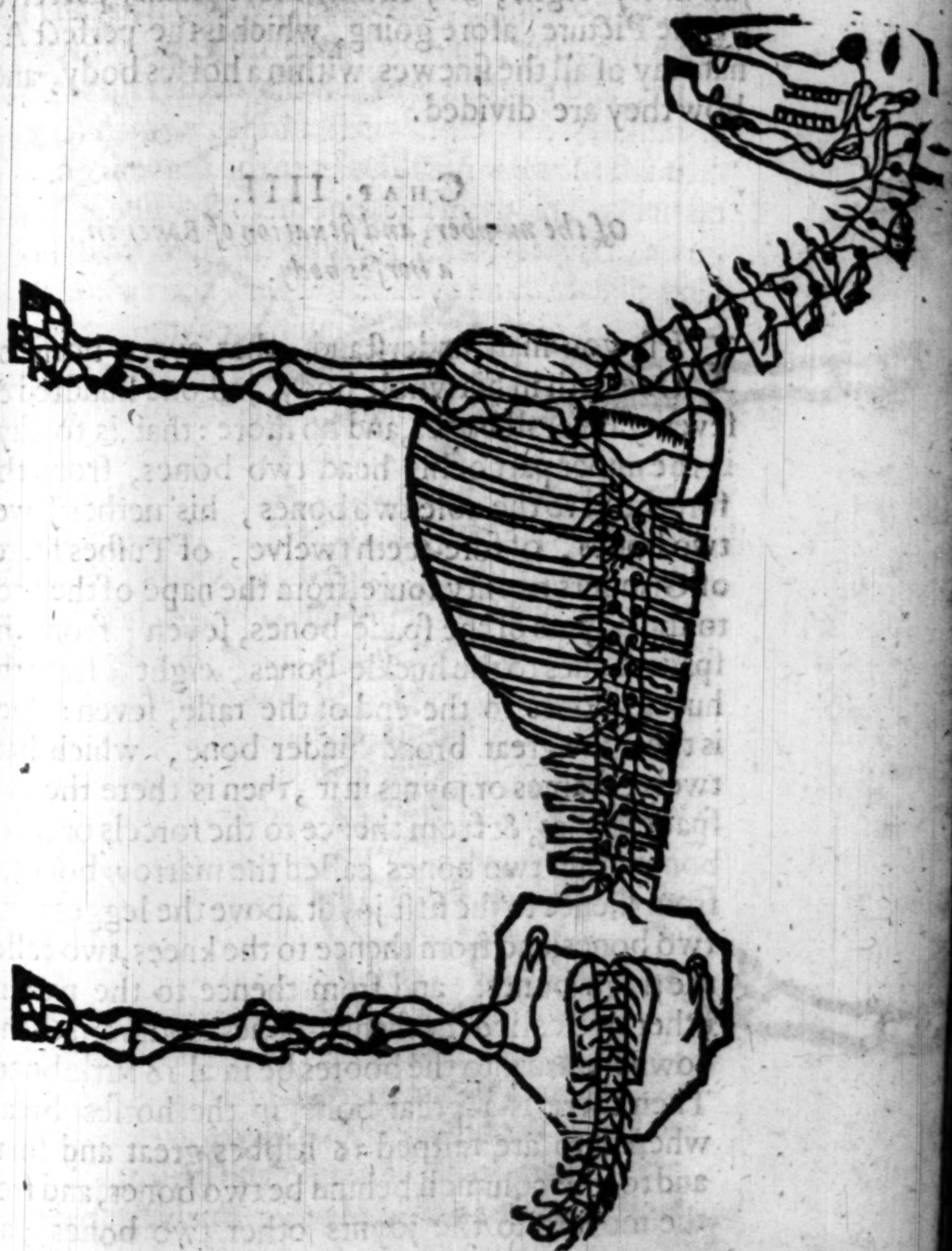
R

hath



hath hee two other branches, which passing through certaine holes in his nether chap, knit that and the upper together, and so runne downe by his great teeth, and meete just below his nether lippe: then hath hee twenty eight small thrids, which running through so many small holes in the seaven bones of his necke, knit them fast together: So likewise hath he small thrids which running through small holes, Knit all his Chine even to the very nether end of his Strunt fast together: The number whereof is infinite and uncertaine: then hath he two maine great finewes which extending themselves over both the spade-bones, are divided into many branches, and runne downe into the fore-legges, even into the Coffins of the hooves, and knit every joynt fast and substantially together then hath he other two maine finewes which comming through two holes in the great columell or flat bones of the hippes or huckle, doe extend themselves (being divided into many Branches) downe both the hinder legs, even within the Coffin of the hoofe also, and binde al these several joints fast and strongly together. Now lastly, you shal understand that from the setting on of the horses necke, unto the flat columel or huckle-bone, doth extend one great broad finew of three inches broad, being of one only thick and smooth substance, without any one thrid or branch derived from it, which not onely holdeth together the shoulder-blades, but also covereth all the horses chine quite over, and this of the common *Farriers* is called Pax-waxe: So that a horse hath in all of maine and principall finewes, from whence a world of other finewes are derived,

just



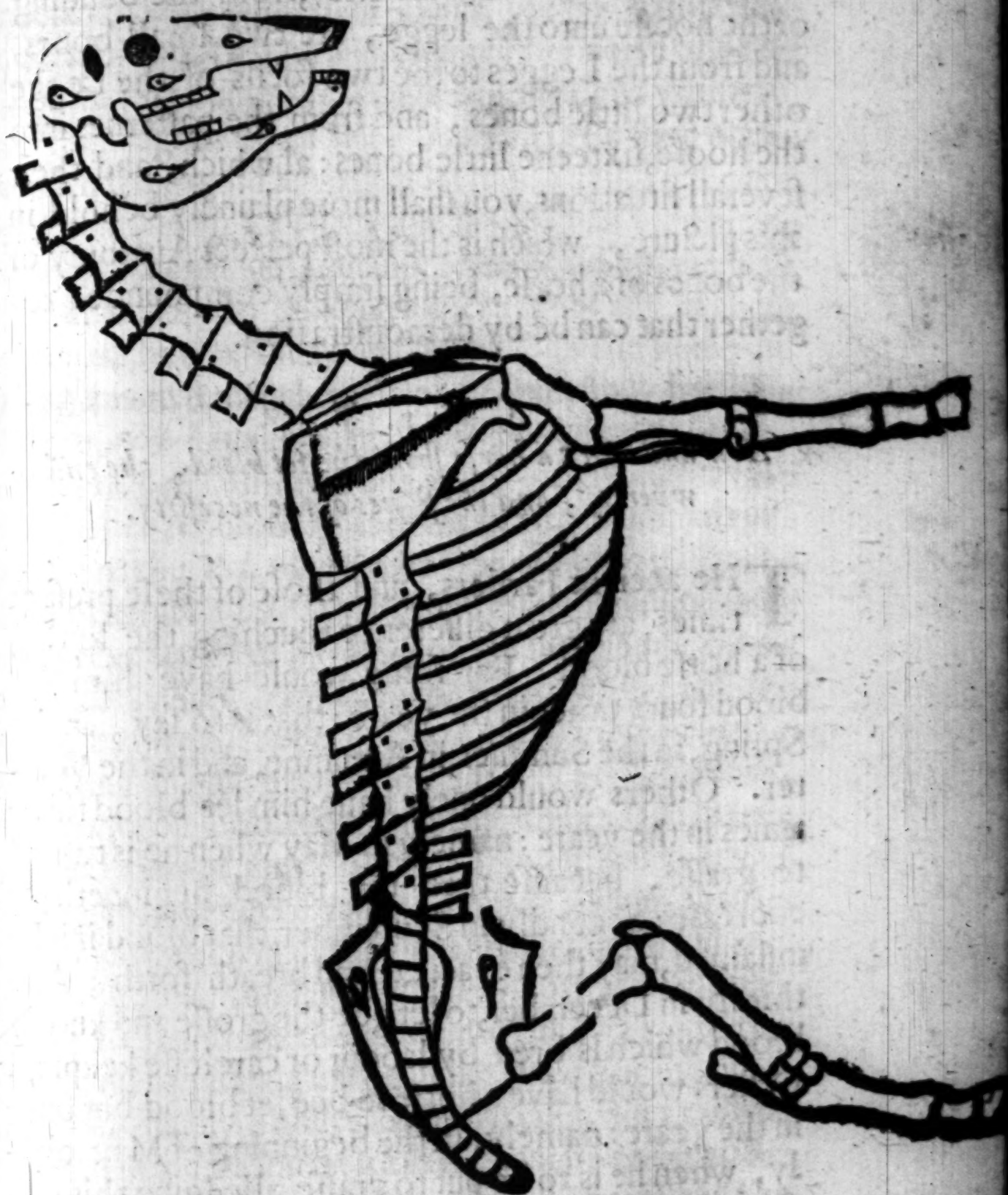


just thirty eight, as you may more plainly perceive by the Picture afore going, which is the perfect Anatomy of all the sinewes within a horses body, and how they are divided.

### CHAP. IIII.

*Of the number, and situation of Bones in a horses body.*

**F**irst you shall understand, that every horse or Oxe hath in his whole body, just one hundred & seventy severall bones, and no more: that is to say, in the upper part of his head two bones, from the fore-head to the nose two bones, his nether Jawes two bones, of fore-teeth twelve, of Tusshes foure, of Grinders twenty foure, from the nape of the neck to the poynts of the spade-bones, seven; from the spade-bones to the huckle-bones, eight; from the huckle-bones to the end of the taile, seven: Then is there the great broad hinder bone, which hath twelve seames or joynts in it; then is there the two spade-bones, & from thence to the forcels or canel-bones other two bones called the marrow bones, & from thence to the first joynt above the legges other two bones, and from thence to the knees, two called the thigh-bones, and from thence to the pasterns other two called the shanke-bones, and from thence downe-ward into the hooves be in all 16 little bones. Then there is a great bone in the horses breast, whereunto are fastned 36 Ribbes great and small, and to the columell behind be two bones, and from the molairs to the joynts other two bones; and also



R 3



also two bones towards the Ribs, from the bending of the hooft unto the legge, are two small bones, and from the Legges to the two fociis of the Legge other two little bones, and from the pasternes into the hooft, sixteene little bones: al which, and their severall situations, you shall more plainly behold in this picture, which is the most perfect Anatomy of the bones of a horse, being simply compounded together that can be by demonstration.

CHAP. V.

*How and when a horse should be let blood, the end whereof, and the signes of the necessity.*

**T**He ancient Farriers, and those of these present times, are great difference touching the letting of a horse blood: For some would have him let blood foure times in the yeare: that is to say, in the Spring, in the Summer, in Autumne, and in the Winter. Others would onely haue him let blood three times in the yeare: namely in May when he is turned to grasse, because then the blood beginneth to encrease: Secondly in September, that blood if it be inflamed, may then evacuate and breath forth: And thirdly in December, to let goe the grosse and knotty blood which is bred by labour or carelesse keeping. Others would have a horse to bee let blood but once in the yeare: namely, in the beginning of May onely, when he is to be put to grasse, alledging this reason, that if the horse bee not let blood in the Spring, the new blood being mixt with the old corrupt blood, will be apt to be inflamed, and so draw upon  
the

the horse some grievous sicknes, & this reason is excellent good. Others would have the horse to be let blood in the veine not above once in a year; namely, at the beginning of May : but in the palate of the mouth they wold have him let blood at the left once every moneth, alledging that it will cleare the sight, comfort the braine, and give him good appetite to his meate; but to conclude, there is not any of these opinions, but are sound and good, so the horse be yong and in strength, his blood increasing; but if he be old, and his blood in the ebbe, then you cannot let blood to feldome. Now that it is fit a yong horse should bee let blood, is proved by the daily experience of the *Polander* horses, who being at liberty (out of naturall instinct in themselves) faile not once a yeare to let themselves blood; yet we have divers of our best *Farriers* who would not have a horse let blood before there be urgent necessity, lest the use of letting blood bring a horse to an evill custome, and draw on sicknesse unexpected; but with that opinion I cannot agree, because I hold it more vertue to prevent a danger before it come, then to drive it away being present. Now that oft letting of blood breedeth in a horse weaknesse, and maketh the blood to resort to the inward parts, cloying the heart and intrailles, and making the outward parts fat and unweldy, there is no question but that the letting a horse blood twice in the yeare; namely, at the beginning of *May*, and the end of *December*, (at which times onely I would have a horse let blood and no other) should be accounted oft, I see no reason. Now for Stallions, the ancient *Farriers* would



by no means have them let blood, because, say they, the covering of Mares is as great an expence of blood as may bee, affirming that one ounce of seede doth countervail five ounces of blood, and truly I am of that opinion too: but whereas they likewise advise by no meanes to let Geldings blood, because the losse of their stones is the losse of their naturall heate: to that I am much contrary, because I have found it by continuall experience, that Geldings doe as oft dye through the corruption and abundance of blood, as horses: nay, and much more often, in as much as they want the helps which horses have for purging their bloods from uncleanness. Now in the letting of horses blood, every carefull *Farrrier* is first to respect the Climate under which the horse is bred, knowing that those horses which are bred in cold Countries; have ever more blood then those which are bred in the hot: then he must consider the time of the yeare, which would ever be the Spring, or the fall of the Leafe, both these times being most temperate, neither exceeding in heate nor in cold. Next hee must regard the time of the day, which would ever be in the morning fasting, so it be not at the horses awaking from sleepe, but at least an houre or two after: then he must looke unto the state of the Moone, that the signe be not in that part of the body where he intendeth to let blood: next he must look to the horses age, for if he be yong, and not come to his growth, it will hinder his waxing; and if he be old and come to decrepidnesse, his blood had more neede be repaired then wasted. Lastly, he shal looke to the horses strength and ancient custome, and so accor-

acordingly he shall deale with him, observing that some horses may better spare two or three pound of blood, then other some one pound. Now thus much I have spoken touching ordinary and naturall letting of blood, without compulsion of any sicknesse or disease; but in case where sicknesse or infirmity craveth this office letting of blood, there you shall neither respect Climate, season of the yeare, time of the day, signe, age, strength, nor custome, but setting all aside, apply your selfe only to the remooving of the infirmity. Now the signes to know if a horse stand in neede to be let blood, are these: His eyes will looke red, and his veines will swell more then ordinary: also he will have a certaine itch about his Maine and his Taile, and still be continually rubbing them; and sometimes will shed some of his haire also; hee will now and then pil about the rootes of his eares, or in those places where the head-stal of the bridle lyes; his urine will be red and high coloured, and his dung will be blacke and hard: also if hee hath red inflammations, or little bubbles on his backe, or doth not digest his meate well, it is a signe the horse would bee let blood: or if hee have any apparant signe of yellownesse in the whites of his eyes, or in the inside of his Lippes, either upper or nether, it is a signe hee would be let blood: for after any of these signes doth most commonly follow some one or other grievous sicknesse, which to prevent, is the true art of a skilful Farrier. Now it is meete that when you intend to let a horse blood, (having leasure to doe the same) that you suffer him to be thinly dyetted a day or two before he be let blood, to the end  
that



that his body may be quiet, and not troubled with digestion. Now for the manner of letting a horse blood, you shal as neere as you can, let him stand upon even ground, & if it be the necke-veine which you would strike, you shall take a small long cord with a noose, and putting it over the horses necke, as close to the setting on of the shoulder as you can, there draw it as straight as is possible, and then fasten it with a running knot, and presently you shall see the veines to appeare as bigge as a mans little finger, even from the nether chap downe to the necke. Now you are to observe that the place where you are to strike the veine in, is even with three fingers or foure fingers at the most of the nether chap: as thus, if your horse have a long, fine, thin necke and skinn, then you may strike the veine within three fingers, or lesse of the chap (sith the higher is ever the better) but if he have a short chub necke, with a thicke skin, and many wreathes or rooles, about the setting on of his chaps, then you shall strike the veine at least foure fingers from the chap, least those wreaths together with the thickeesse of the skin, do so defend the veine that your Fleime cannot reach it. When you have thus raised the veine up, you shall cause one to stand on the contrary side of the horse, and with his fist to thrust the veine forth hard against you: then you shall either with a wet sponge, or with a little spittle, wet the part of the veine which you meane to strike, and then separating the haire, set your Fleime even and directly upon the veine; and then with a good smart blow, strike it into the veine: Which done, you shall cause one to put his finger

finger into the horses mouth, and tickling him in the rooffe thereof, make him chaw and moove his chappes, for that will force the blood to spin forth. Now the blood which you take from the horse, it is very necessary that you save in divers vessels, for divers causes: as first, that you may see when all the corrupt blood is come forth, and that when the colour thereof is growne pure, and so remaineth being cold, that then you suffer the horse to bleede no more: or else that you save it to bathe the horses body therewith, which is most wholesome: or else to make a medicine therewithall by mingling with the blood vinegar and oyle, and so bathe the horses body therewith, especially that place which was let blood: For the ancient *Farriers* hold an opinion, that it is endued with a certaine naturall vertue and power to comfort the weake and feeble members of a horse, and to dry up all evill humours. Now as soone as your horse hath bled sufficiently, you shall let loose the cord, and immediately the veine will stoppe; then with that cord you shall stroake downe the Veine just over the Orefice twice or thrice, which wil both close up the hole, and also turne the course of the blood: this done, fet the horse up in the stable, and let him stand fasting two or three houres after, and then after dyet him according as in your discretion you shall thinke meete, that is to say, if he be a sicke horse, then like a sicke horse with good provender and warme mashes: but if hee be a sound horse, then like a sound horse, either turne him to grasse, or keepe him in the stable after his ancient custome.

Now



Now if you would let your horse blood either in the Temple-veines or the Eye-veines, you shall then cord him hard about the midst of the necke, and not neere his shoulders, having care that you touch not his wind-pipe, and so throttle him: for it will make both these veines shew most apparantly. If you intend to let the horse blood in the breast-veines, or Plat-veines, of some called the fore-thigh veines, you shall then cord him behind the shoulders, close to the elbowes of the horse, and over-thwart his withers, and that will make these two veines shew. Now you shall understand, that not any of these veines last spoken of, as about the head or the breast, must bee let blood by striking them with a Fleime, (though it be the manner of our common Smithes) for it is most beastly and butcherly, and also full of much danger by striking through the veine, (if he be not skilfull: ) but you shall with a fine sharpe Lancet open the veine, even in such sort as you see a skilfull Chirurgeon open a veine in a mans arme. Now for the letting a horse blood in the palate of the mouth, you shall but only with a sharpe pointed knife, prick the horse betweene the second and third bar, as deep as a Barley corne is long, and he will bleed sufficiently: as for all other veines in a horses body whatsoever, which are to be opened, you shall understand, that whensoever it is needfull that they bleed, that then they must be taken up, and not corded at all. Now touching the taking up of veines, and the manner how to doe it, you shall read more at large in particular Chapters towards the end of this booke.

## C H A P. VI.

*Of outward Sorrances what they are, and of certaine generall observations in the cure of them.*

**O**utward Sorrances, according to my meaning in this place, are taken two manner of wayes, that is to say, either it is an evill state and composition of the body, which is to be discerned either by the shape, number, quantity, or sight of the member evill affected and diseased: or else it is the loosening and division of any unity, which as it may chance diversly, so it hath divers names accordingly. For if such a division or loosening be in the bone, then it is called a Fracture: If it be in any fleshy part, then it is called a wound, or an ulcer: If it be in the veines, then a rupture: if in the sinewes, then a convulsion or crampe; and if it be in the skinne, then it is called an Excoriation: and of all these severally I intend to intreate in the following Chapters. Now forasmuch as in this generall art of *Chirurgery*, or *Sorrances*, there are certaine generall observations or caveats to be held inviolate, I will before I proceede any further, give you a little taste thereof.

First, therefore you shall understand, that it is the duty of every good *Farrier*, never to burne or cauterize with hot Iron, or with oyle, nor to make any incision with knife, where there be either veines, Sinewes, or joynts, but either somewhat lower, or somewhat higher.

Item, You shall never apply to any joynt or Sinewie part, either *Rosalgar*, *Arfnicke*, *Mercury sublimat*,



mate, nor any such violent Corrosive.

*Item*, It is ever better to launce with a hot Iron then a cold, that is, it is better to cauterize then to incise.

*Item*, Blood doth ever produce white and thicke matter, Cholera watrish thin matter, but not much, salt Flegme great aboundance of matter; and Melancholy many dry scabs.

*Item*, When you let blood, you must take but the fourth part from a colt, which you take from a grown horse.

*Item*, You must never let blood; except it be either to divert sicknesse, and preserve health, or to refresh and coole the blood, or else to diminish blood or to purge bad humours.

*Item*, In all Impostumes or swelling sores, called Tumors, you must observe the foure times of the sicknesse, that is to say, the beginning of the griefe; the increase of the griefe, the perfection and state of the griefe; and lastly the declination and ending of the griefe.

*Item*, In the beginning of every such swelling Apostumes (if you cannot quite destroy them) use repercussive medicines, if they be not neere some principall part of the body; but then not, for fear of endangering life: in the augmentation, use mollifying medicines, & supplying to ripe them; and when they are ripe, launce them, and let them out, or dry them up; and in the declination of them, use cleansing and healing medicines.

*Item*, All swellings are either hard or soft, the hard commonly will corrode, the soft will continue long.

*Item*,

*Item*, If you thrust your finger upon any swelling upon a horses legges, then if it presently rise againe, and fill, then is the hurt new and recoverable, but if the dent doe remaine and continue still behind, then is the hurt old, and commeth of cold humours, and askes great art in healing.

*Item*, When sores begin to matter, then they heale, but if the putrifaction be great, then beware they rot not inwardly.

*Item*, All cauterizing or burning with hot Irons, strayneth things enlarged, dryeth up what is too much moystned, dissolveth things gathered together or hardned, draweth backe things which are disperfed, and helpeth old griefes: for it ripeneth, dissolveth, and maketh them to run and issue forth matter.

*Item*, You must sometimes burne under the soare, to divert humours, and sometimes above, to defend and with-hold humours.

*Item*, It is ever better to burne with Copper then with Iron, because Iron is of a malignant nature, Steele is of an indifferent vertue betwixt both.

*Item*, All actuall burnings is to burne with instrument, and potentiall burning is to burne with medicines, as are Caustickes and Corrosives.

*Item*, If you use to blow powders into a horses eyes, it will make him blinde.

*Item*, By no meanes take up any veines in the fore-legs, unlesse great extremity compell you: for there is nothing that will sooner make a horse stiffe and lame. Many other observations there are, which because they are not so generall as these be, and that I shall



shall have occasion to speake of them in other particular Chapters, I thinke it here meet to omit them, and the rather because I will not be tedious.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the diseases in the eyes, and first of the weeping and watering eye.*

**T**He eyes of a Horse are subject to many infirmities, as first to be Rhumaticke, or Watry, then to be blood-shotten, to be dimme of sight, to have the pinne and webbe, the haw, the wart in the eye, the inflammation of the eyes, the canker in the eye, or a stroake in the eye: of all which, some come of inward causes, as of humours resorting to the eyes: and some of outward causes, as Heate, Cold, or else by some stripe or blow.

And first to begin with the Rhumaticke or Watry eye, you shall understand, that according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, it doth proceed many times from the fluxe of humours distilling from the Braine, and sometimes from the anguish of some blow or stripe received. The signes are, a continuall watring of the eye, and a close holding of the liddes together, accompanied sometimes with a little swelling. The cure, according to the opinion of some *Farriers*, is to take of *Bolearmonicke*, of *Terra-sigillata*, and of *Sanguis draconis*, of each a like quantity; make them into powder, and then adde unto them as much of the white of an Egge and Vineger, as will make them moyst: and then spread it plaister-wise upon a cloath, and lay it to  
the

the horses temples of his head above his Eyes : and doe this three dayes together. Others vse to let the horse blood in the Veines under his Eyes : then to wash the eye twice or thrice in the day with White wine, and then to blow into the sore Eye with a quill, the powder of *Tartar*, *Salgemma*, and Cuttel bone, of each like quantity : or else take the yolke of an Egge roasted hard, and mixe therewith the powder of Comen, and bind it hot to the Eye and so let it rest a night more. Other Farriers vse to take of Pitch and Rozen, and of Masticke a like quantity, melt them together : Then with a little sticke, having a Cloute bound to the end thereof, and dipt therein, annoint the Temple veines on both sides a handfull above the eyes, as broad as a twelve pence, and then clap unto it immediately a few flockes of like colour to the Horse, holding them close to his head with your hand, untill they sticke fast to his head, then let him blood on both his Eye-veines, if both eyes bee sore, and then wash his eyes with white Wine.

Others use only to take a pretty quantity of life honny, and to dissolve it in white Wine, and to wash the horses eyes therewith : and sure if it proceede from any blow, it is a medicine sufficient enough, but if it proceede from any Rhume, or inward causes : Then you shall take ground Ivy Beaten in a mortar, and mixt with Waxe, and so laid to the eyes like a plaister, or else boyle worme-wood in white Wine, and wash the horses eyes therewith : also to spurt Beere or Ale now and then into the horses eyes, will cleare the sight passing well.



## CHAP. VIII.

*Of the blood-shotten eye, proceeding from any cause whatsoever.*

**F**Or any blood-shotten Eye, proceeding from any cause whatsoever, either outward or inward, you shall take (according to the opinion of the most ancient *Farriers*) of Rose water, of Malmsey, and of fenel water, of each three spoonefuls, of *Tutie* as much as easily you can take up betweene your thumb and your finger, of Cloves a dozen beaten into fine powder, mingle them well together, and being lukewarme, or cold, if you please, wash the inward parts of the eye with a feather dipt therein twice a day untill the eye be well: or in stead thereof to wash the eye either with the white of an egge, or with the juyce of *Selladine*. Others use to take the toppes of Hawthorns and boyling them in white wine, wash the eye therewith. Other *Farriers* take a dramme of *Synoper*, and as much of life Honey, and as much of Wheate flower, mixe them with faire running Water, so that they may be liquid and thin: then seeth them with a very soft fire till they be thicke like an oyntment, and therewith anoynt the eye.

But the best receipt that ever I found for this grieve, is to take the whites of two egges, and beate it till it come to an oyle, then put to it two spoonefuls of Rose water, and three spoonefulls of the juyce of Houslick, mixe them well together, then dip therein little round plegants or flat cakes of soft Tow, as bigge as a horses eye, and lay them upon the horses eyes, renewing them

them as oft as they grow hard, and in a day or two it will make the horses eye sound againe.

## CHAP. IX.

*Of dimnesse of sight, or blindnesse.*

**D**imnesse of sight or blindnesse, may happen to a horse divers wayes, as by some straine when the inward strings of the Eyes are stretched beyond their powers, or by the violence of great labour, or by the supporting of a great burthen beyond the Horses ability, or by some blow or wound: any of these are mortall enemies to the eyes or sight. The sight is the apparant want of sight, and an evill affected colour of the eye. Now for the cure, it is thus:

If the sight be gone, and yet the ball of the eye bee sound, then you shall take, according to the opinion of some *Farriers*, a pretty quantity of May Butter, with as much Rose-mary, and a little yellow Rozen, with a like quantity of *Selladine*, then stampe them and fry them with the May butter, then straine it and keepe it in a close boxe (for it is a jewell for sore eyes) and annoynt your Horses Eyes therewith at least twice a day, it is also good to heale any wound. Other *Farriers* doe use to let the horse blood in the Eye-veines, and then wash his eyes with red Rose water. Others use to take the Gall of a blacke sheepe, and beate it, and strayne it, and then to wash the eyes therewith: others use to burn the horse under the eyes that the ill humours may distill forth, and then to annoynt his eyes either with the marrow of a sheepes shanke, and Rose water mixt together, or else with  
S 2 the



the juyce of ground Ivy. Other Farriers use to take a Mould warpe, and lapping her all over in Clay, burne her to ashes, and then to take of that powder and blow it into the horses eyes. Others use to take an empty egge-shell, and fill it with Bay salt, then burne it till it bee blacke: Then adde to it of burnt Allome the quantity of your Thumbe, beat them together to fine powder, then mixe some of this powder with fresh Butter, and wipe it into the horses eye with a feather, then clappe the white of an egge dipt in flaxe, over his eyes: doe this once a day for a seven-night, and after but once in two dayes: This is most excellent for any filme, and also for a pearle. Other use to take two dry tyle-stones, and rub them together, and blow the powder of it with a quill into the horses eyes foure dayes together.

#### CHAP. X.

*A most rare approved medicine for any desperate blindness in a horse, proceeding from any Rhumaticke Cause, Surfeit, Straine, Stroke, or such like.*

**T**Ake of Vermillion, Bettony, and Lavender, and beat them in a mortar with the best Venice Turpentine, till they come thicke salve like paste: then make it into Cakes or Troches, each as broad as a Groat, and dry them: then lay one or two of them upon a chaffing-dish and coales: And then covering them with a Tunnell, let your horse receive the smoake up into his nostrils, and this doe Morning and Evening: and every time you thus Fume him

him, you shall also wash his eyes inwardly, either with the water of Eye-bright simply or with the water of Eye-bright, and the juyce of ground Ivy mixt together. Now I have knowne many which doe mistake this ground Ivy, and suppose that the Ivy which is common, and runnes along on the ground to bee ground Ivy, but it is not so: for ground Ivy is a weed which commonly growes in bottomes of hedges, by the Dikes side, in good big tufts, it hath a little round rough leafe, and is jagged on the edges, and of all simples none is more soveraigne for the eyes.

## CHAP. XI.

*Another most excellent and approved receit  
for any desperate blindnesse in a Horse  
or any beast whatsoever.*

**T**Ake the shels of halfe a dozen egges, and cleane away the inner felme from them so cleane as may be, then lay those shels betweene two cleane Tyles, and so lay them in hot glowing Embers and cover them all over, and on every side, and so let them lye a good space till the shels be all dryed, then take them up and beate the shels to very fine powder, then searse it through a launc to fine dust, then with a Goose quill blow this powder into the Horses eye that is offended with Pinne, Webbe, Filme, or any thicknesse or foulnes and it is a certaine cure, and thus doe morning, noone, and night.

But if it bee for any waltered or inflamed eye, for any Bruise, Stripe, Lunaticke, or descending hu-



mours, then take a spoonefull and an halfe of fine  
 fearst powder of white Sugar-candy, and mixe it  
 with the former powder of shels: then with as much  
 May butter, (if you can get it) or for want thereof  
 the best sweete butter without Salt, worke all into a  
 gentle Salve, and therewith anoynt the horses eye,  
 Morning, Noone, and Night, for it cleanseth, pur-  
 geth, comforteth, and cooleth.

#### CHAP. XII.

*Of the Pearle, Pinne, Webbe, or any spot in  
 a horses eye.*

**T**He Pearle, the Pinne, the Webbe, or any unna-  
 turall spot, or thicke filme over a horses Eye,  
 proceedeth, for the most part, from some stroake  
 received: Yet the Pearle, which is a little round,  
 thicke, white spot like a Pearle, growing on the  
 sight of the Horses eye, comes many times from na-  
 turall causes, and even from descent of Syre and  
 Damme, as I have often found by experience. The  
 signe is, the apparant sight of the infirmity, and the  
 cure, according to the opinion of the most ancient  
*Farriers*, is to take fixe leaves of ground Ivy, and a  
 brench of Selladine, and bray them in a Mortar, with  
 a spoonefull or two of Womans milke, and then  
 straine it through a cleane linnen cloath, and put it  
 into a close glasse, and then drop of it as much into  
 the horses eye at a time, as will fill halfe a hazle nut  
 shell, and it is the fittest to be done at night onely:  
 doe this thrice at the least, and for three dayes after  
 keepe the horse as much as may bee from any light.

Other

Other Farriers use to annoynt the horses eyes with the marrow of Goates shankes, or Deeres shankes and Rose-water mixt together, or else to wash his Eyes with the juyce of the Berries and Leaves of ground Ivy, or other Ivy mixt with white wine; and to blow into his eyes the powder of blacke flint or of land Oysters: but that powder must be made so exceeding fine, as by Art in searcing can any waies be brought to passe: And for the taking away of any filme or pearle, there is no medicine more soveraigne. There be other Farriers which use to take the leane of a Gammon of Bacon, and dry it, and thereof make a powder, and blow it into the horses eye. Others use to take white Ginger made into very fine powder, and blow it into the horses eyes; yet before you so do, if the Web have continued any long time, it shall not be amisse, first to annoint the horses eye with Capons grease. Others use to blow into the horses eye, the powder of Elder Leaves dried, or else the powder of mans-dung dried: or the powder of a gray whet-stone mixt with the oile of hony, and put into the horses eye: others use to take the yolk of an Egge with Salt burnt and beaten to powder, and blow it into the horses Eye: Or else the powder of the Cuttell-bone. Others use to take either Elder-leaves dried, or mans dung dried, and mixe it with the powder of the shell or bone of the Crab fish, and blow it into the horses eye. Others take *Tutty* beaten to powder, and with a quill blow it just upon the pearle.

Other Farriers use to take (and sure it is not inferior, but better then any medicine whatsoever)



a good quantity of white Salt, and lapping it round up in a wet cloath, put it into the fire, and burne it to a red coale: Then taking it forth and breaking it open, you shall finde in the middest thereof a white choare as big as a beane, or bigger: Then picke out that choare, and beate it to powder, and mixe it with a little white Wine: then after it hath stood a while, take the thicke thereof that lyeth in the bottome, and put it into the horses eye, and with the thinne wash his eye, doe thus once a day till the pearle bee consumed.

Others use to take the juyce of Rue, and put it into the horses eye, or else to make an hole in an Egge, and put forth all that is within it, and fill the shell with Pepper, and closing it an earthen pot, put it into a hot burning Oven till it be white hote, then take it forth, and beate the Pepper to powder, and blow thereof into the horses eye. Others use to take of Pummis stone, of Tartarum, and *Salgemma* of each like weight, and being beaten into very fine powder, to blow a little of that into the horses eye, continuing so to doe till the eye be well. Others use onely to blow the powder of *Sandevoire* into the Horses eye, affirming that it alone hath sufficient force and vertue to breake any Pearle or Webbe in a very short space, without any other composition: but surely I have found the powder of flint, and the powder of white Salt burnt, to bee much more stronger.

## CHAP. XIII.

*A most excellent and infallible cure for any  
Pinne, Webbe, Pearle, or spot in a  
horses eye.*

**T**AKE an egge, and making a hole in the top, put out halfe the white, then fill up the empty place with Salt and Ginger finely mixt together, then roste the egge extreame hard, so as you may beate it to powder, having formerly lapt it in a wet cloath, then morning and evening, after you have washt the horses eye with the juyce of ground Ivy, or Eye-bright water, you shall blow of this powder thereinto, and it is a certaine remedy.

## CHAP. XIIII.

*Of the Haw in a horses eye.*

**T**HE Haw is a gristle growing betwixt the nether Eye-lidde and the eye, and it covereth sometimes, more then the one halfe of the eye. It proceeds of grosse and rough flegmy humours, which descending downe from the Head, and knitting together, doe in the end grow to a Horne or hard Gristle. The signes thereof, are a watring of the eye, and an unwilling opening of the nether lidde: besides any apparant shew of the Haw it selfe, if with your thumbe you doe but put downe the nether lidde of the horses eye. The cure is, take a needle and a double threed, put it through the tippe of the horses eare, which done, put the needle likewise through  
the



the upper eye-lid of the horse upwards, and so draw up the eye-lid, and fasten it to the eare, then with your thumbe put downe the neather lidde, and you shall plainly see the Haw: then thrust your needle through the edge of the Haw, and with the thrid draw it out, so as you may lap it upon your finger, then fasten the thrid about your little finger, to hold it constantly, and then with a very sharpe knife cut crosse the Gristle of the inside next the horses eye, and so separating the skinne and the fat from the Gristle, cut the Gristle quite out; then cutting your thrids draw them cleane out, both of the eye-lids, and out of the Haw: then wash all the horses eye either with Ale, Beere, or White Wine, and plucke away al the long haire from about the horses eyes, being sure to leave no blood within the horses eye. And in this manner of cure you must observe, that by no meanes you cut away too much of the wash or fat about the Haw, or any part of the black that groweth by the end of the Haw, for that will make the horse bleare-eyed. There be other *Farriers* which use after they have cut out the Haw, to annoynt the eye fixe dayes after with Sallet oyle, the marrow of Sheepes-shanks and Salt mixt together.

Others doe take of the juyce of ground Ivy stamp in a mortar, with the juyce of Ivy berries, and mixe them either with water or white wine, and so plaister-wise lay it to the horses Eye, renewing it morning and evening, and it will eate away the Haw. Others use after the Haw is cut away, to lay to the eye a plaister of Camomil and of honey beaten together; and of all which is sufficient enough. Now you  
are

are to note by the way, that the horse which hath one Haw, commonly hath two, for they continually goe together.


## CHAP. XV.

*Of Moone-eyes, or Lunaticke-eyes.*

**T**HE Moone-eyes, or Lunaticke-eyes, are of all fore eyes the most dangerous and noysome, and doe prooceede from hot humours, descending from the head, and stirred up by the extremity of over-riding, or compelling a horse to doe more then nature will give him leave: as I have seene a floathful and heavy horse brought to bee Moone-eyed by the folly of his rider, who would force him to stand and Trot, contrary to the vigour of his spirit: So likewise I have seene delicate mettald horses brought to be Moone-eyed, when the riders would not temper the freeness of their natures, but have given them leave to runne into all violence. Now they be called Moone eyes, because if the Farrier doe observe them, hee shall perceive that at sometimes of the Moone, the horse will see very prettily, and at some times of the Moone hee will see nothing at all. Now the signes hereof are, when the horses eyes are at the best, they will looke yellowish and dimme: and when the are at the worst, they will looke red, fiery, and angry.

The cure is to lay all over the temples of the horses head, the plaister of Pitch, Rozen, and Masticke, mentioned in the Chapter of watry eyes: then under each of his eyes with a sharpe knife make a slit  
of:



of an inch long about foure fingers beneath his Eyes, and at least an inch wide of the eye-veines; then with a Cornet loosen the skinne about the bredth of a groat, and thrust therein a round peece of leather as broad as a two-pence with a hole in the midst, to keepe the hole open: and looke to it once a day that the matter may not bee stopped, but continually run the space of tenne dayes; then take the leather out, and heale the wound with a little flaxe dipt in this salve. Take of Turpentine, of Honey, and of Waxe, of each like quantity, and boyle them together, which being a little warmed will be liquid to serve your purpose: and take not away the Plaisters which are upon his temples untill of themselves they fall away; which being falne, then with a small hote drawing Iron, make a Starre in the midst of each temple-veine, where the Plaisters did lye, which Starre would have a hole in the midst, made with the button end of your hot drawing Iron in this sort .

Now there bee other Farriers which in stead of the flits under the eie, and the peeces of leather, which is a plaine Rowel, onely doe take a smal blunt hot Iron, and about an inch and an halfe beneath the nether lidde, to burne some five holes all of a row, according to the compasse of the horses eye, and to burne those holes even unto the bone, and then once a day to annoynt them with fresh grease, or sweete butter.

## CHAP. XVI

*Of the Canker in the eye.*

**A** Canker in the eye commeth of a ranke and corrupt blood, descending from the heade into the Eye, where it congealeth and breedeth a little worme in manner as it were the head of a Pismire, which groweth in the neather end of the Horses Eye next to his Nose-ward: It proceedeth many times into the Gristle of the nose, which if it chance to eate through, it will then passe into the head, and so kill the horse. The signes therefore are, you shall see red pimples, some great and some small, both within and without the Eye, upon the Eye-lids, and all the Eye it selfe will lookered, and bee full of very corrupt matter. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is to take as much burnt Allome as an hazle nut, and as much of greene Copperus, and bake them both together upon a Tyle-stone, and then grinde them into powder, and put thereto a quarter of a spoonefull of Honey, and mixe them all together, and then with a clout dipt therein, rub the sore till it bleede: and doe thus seven dayes together, and it wil cure the Canker. There be other Farriers which for this Canker in a horses eye, will first let the horse blood in the necke-veine of the same side that the fore Eye is, and take away to the quantity of a pottle of blood: then take of Roch-Allome, and of greene Copperus, of each halfe a pound, of white Copperus one ounce, and boyle them in three piats of running water, untill the halfe be



be consumed : then take it from the fire , and once a day wash his eye with this water , being made lukewarme, with a fine linnen cloath, and cleanse the eye therewith, so as it may looke raw, and doe this till the eye be whole.

### CHAP. XVII.

*For a stripe or blow upon a horses eye.*

**I**F a horse shall catch any stripe or blow upon his eye, either with whip, rod, cudgell, or any such like mischance, or by one horses biting of another, when they either play or fight : Then for the cure thereof ( if you take it when it is new done ) you shall onely blow into his eye either the powder of Sandevoire, or the fine powder of white Salt, after the eye hath beene washt with a little beere, but if the eye be more sore and have continued longer, then you shall take a small Loafe of bread, and pull out all the crummes; then fill the Loafe full of burning coales, until it be wel burned within, then take of that crust and put it in White Wine, and after it is wel soaked lay it to the sore, then take Sope-water, and cold water mixt together, and wash all the Eyebrowes therewith, and if foral that it goe not away, then you shall let him blood on the Temple-veines; and if hee doe rub or chafe his eye, you shall let him blood of the veines under his Eyes, and wash his Eyes with cold Sope-water, but if his Eyes doe chance to looke red with the blow, then you shall lay unto them a plaister of redde Lead and Sallet Oyle beaten wel together. Others use to take

take the juyce of Plantaine, stamp and mixt with white Wine, and so laid to the sore eye. Others use both for this disease, or any other sore eye, to stamp strong nettles with a little Beere, and then straying it to squirt thereof into the Horses Eye, twice or thrice together: then to put of the fine powder of Sandeviore a little into his eye, and then bee carefull to keepe the horses eye from Winde or Cold: but if you must needs ride him, then put a wollen cloath before the horses eye: also it is not amisse to let him blood on his eye-veines, and the twice dressing will be sufficient.

Other Farriers use first to annoynt the sore eye three dayes together with Hennes or Capons grease to mollifie it: Then take a little life honey, and warming it, wipe it into the horses eye with a feather. Others take the juyce of Plantaine mixt with Hony, or else the juyce of Time mixt with honey, and put it into the Eye. Others use to take the ashes of an old shoe-sole burnt in an Oven, and put into the Horses eye: or else the powder of a gray Whetstone blowne into the sore eye, both are speedy remedies. Others use to take the juyce of Smallage and of Fennel, and mixing them with the white of an egge, put it into the horses Eye once a day til the eye be whole.

### CHAP. XVII.

#### *For a Wart in the Eye.*

**A** Wart in a horses eye, is a fleshly excretion, or a fleshly knot growing either upon the eye, or upon



upon the edge or inside of the eye-lids. It proceedeth from a thicke flegme, which descendeth to the eye by meanes that the horse is too much kept in a darke stable without light : And this infirmity will make a horses eye consume and grow little. The cure is to take roch Allome, and burne it on a Tile-stone, and then put as much white Copperus thereunto not burnt, and grinde them to powder, then lay some of that powder just upon the head of the wart, and doe this once a day till the Wart be consumed away.

### CHAP, XIX.

*For any inflammation in a horses eye.*

**H**orses may diversly have inflammations in the Eyes, as by long standing in the stable, with foule feeding and no exercise, or by moates falling into his eyes, or by ranknesse of blood and such like, any of which will breede an inflammation or sorenesse in the Eye. The signes are itching and rubbing of the Eyes, and a little swelling, with some loathnesse to open the eye-lids. The cure is, first to let him blood upon the temple-veines, and upon the eye-veines, and then to wash his eyes with Milke and honey mixt together. Others after blood letting, will wash the horses eyes with honey and *Aloes Epatica* mixt together : And others will wash his Eyes with *Aloes* dissolved in white Wine, any of which is approved to bee most excellent for any sore Eye.

## CHAP. XX.

*Of the Impostume in the eare of a horse.*

**I**mpostumes which breed in the Eare of a horse, proceede from divers causes, as from some great blow about the head, or from Wringings with a hard halter or from some evill humours congealed in the eares by some extreame cold. The signes whereof appeare plainely by the burning and painefull swelling of the rootes of the eares, and the other parts thereabout. The cure thereof, is first to ripe the Impostume with this plaister: take of Linseed beaten into powder, and Wheate flowre, of each halfe a pint, of Honey a pint, of Hogges grease, otherwise called Barrowes grease, one pound: warme all these things together in an earthen pot, and stirre them continually with a flat stick or slice, untill they be thoroughly mingled and incorporated together, and then spread some of this plaister being warme, upon a peece of linnen cloath or soft white leather, so broad as the swelling and no more, and lay it warme unto it, and so let it remaine one whole day, and then renew it againe, continuing so to doe untill it either doe breake, or else grow so ripe that you may launce it downward, so that the matter may have passage out, then taint it with this taint of flaxe dipped in this salve even to the bottome, that is to say, take of Metrosatum, of Sallet oyle and Turpentine, of each two ounces, and mingle them together, and make the horse a biggen of Canvase to close in the sore, so as the taint with the oyntment may abide within the  
T fore



fore, renewing the taint once a day untill it bee whole: but if the horse have paine in his eares, without any great paine or inflammation, then thrust into his eare a little blacke Wooll, dipt in the oyle of Camomile, and that will ease him: but if the Impostume be broken before you perceive it, and that you see matter runne from the Horses eares, then you shall take of oyle of Roses, of Venice Turpentine, and of honey, of each like quantity, and mixing them well together, warme it luke-warme upon a few coales, and then dipping blake wooll therein, thrust it downe into the horses eare that runneth, renewing it once a day till the eare leave running.

## CHAP. XXI.

*Of the Pole-evill.*

THE Pole-evill is a great swelling inflammation, or Apostume in the nape of the horses necke, just betweene his eares towards his maine, and proceedeth sometimes from the horses struggling or striving in his halter, especially if the halter bee of hard new twound Hempe: sometimes it proceedeth from evill humours, gathered together in that place, or else from some stripe or blow given to the horse by some rude Keeper, Cartter, or Man of little discretion: for that part being the weakest and tenderest part about the head, is the soonest offended and grieved with Sorrance. The signes of this disease is an apparant swelling betweene the horses Eares, and on each side his necke, which in continuance of time, will breake of its owne accord, yet doth ever

ever rot more inwardly then outwardly, from whence it comes that this disease is more commonly called of our common and ignorant *Farriers*, the *Fistula* in the necke, then the *Polle-evill*, and in truth it is an *Ulcer* so hollow and so crooked, and so full of sharpe matter, like unto like, that it very little differeth from a *Fistula*, and is of all *Impostumes*, except the *Fistula* it selfe, the most hardest to cure: therefore I would wish every carefull *Farrier* to take this cure in hand so soone as is possible, that is to say, before it breake, if it may be.

Now for the generall cure (according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*) it is thus: First, if it be not broken, ripe it with a plaister of Hogges grease, laid unto it so hot as may bee, and make a biggen for the pole of his head to keepe it from cold, which biggen would have two holes open, so as his eares may stand out, and renew the plaister every day once untill that breake, keeping the sore place as warme as maybe, and if that you see it wil not break so soone as you would have it, then looke where it is softest, and most meetest to be opened, take a round hot Iron or a Copper iron (for that is the better) as bigge as a mans little finger, and sharpe at the point, made like an Arrow head; and then about two inches beneath the soft place, thrust it in a good deepnesse upward, so as the poynt of your *Cauterizing Iron* may come out at the ripest place, to the intent that the matter may descend downward, and come out at the neether hole, which would alwaies be kept open: And therefore taint it with a taint of flaxe dipt in hoggs grease warme, and lay also a plaister of hogges grease



grease upon the same, renewing it every day once for the space of foure dayes, which is done chiefly to kill the heate of the fire: then at the foure dayes end, take of Turpentine halfe a pound, cleane washed in nine fundry waters, and after that thoroughly dried, by thrusting out the water with a slice on the dishes side, then put thereunto two yolkes of egges, and a little Saffron, and mingle them well together: That done, search the depth of the hole, either with a quill or a probe, and make a taint of a peece of drie sponge never wet, so long as it may neere reach the bottome, and so big as may fill the wound, and anoint the taint with the afore-said oyntment, and thrust it into the Wound either with that quill, or else by winding it up with your finger and thumbe by little and litile, untill you have thrust it home, and then lay on the plaister of hogs-grease made luke-warme, renewing it every day once untill it be whole: but if the swelling cease, then you need not to use the plaister, but onely to taint it; and as the matter decreaseth so make your taint every day lesser and lesser, untill the wound be perfectly cured.

Now if this disease of the Pole-evill have broken of it owne selfe, and by negligent looking unto, have continued so long that it is turned to a Fistula, which you shall know both by the great and crooked hollownesse inwardly, and by a sharpe thin water which will issue out thereof outwardly, then you shall take (according to the opinion of the Farriers) of unsleckt Lime, and of *Arsnicke*, of each like quantity; beat them together into very fine powder, put thereto of the juyce of Garlick, of Onions, and of Wal-

Wal-woort, of each like quantity, and of Holly as much as all the rest; boyle them upon a soft fire, and stirre them all well together untill they be as thicke as an oyntment; then wash the sore with very strong vinegar, and fill the hole full of the afore-said oyntment, by dipping a taint therein twice a day; then lay a plaister of hogs grease upon the Taint to make it keepe in, and use this untill the Horse bee whole.

Other Farriers use to take orpiment, unleackt lime, and verdigrease of each like quantity, temper them with the juyce of pellitory, blacke inke, hony, and strong vinegar of each like quantity, boyle them and stir them well together, untill they be very thicke, then make thereof small rolles, and put them into the hollw place of the same sorrhance: now you are to note, that both this and the last recited salve before this are onely to kill the rankerous and sharpe humour which brings the sore unto a Fistula, which so soone as you have killed, which you shall know by the matter which will be white and thicke, then you shall heale up the sore either with the powder of Savin, or the powder of hony and lime baked together or else by annointing it with tarre and faller oyle, or fresh hogs grease mixt together. There be other Farriers which for this sorrhance do first open the sore with a hot Iron, and then take red lead and blacke sope, and mixing them well with water till it bee good and thicke, taint the horse therewith till he bee whole.

Others use to take a quart of water, halfe a pound of roch allum, foure pennyworth of Mercury, a quar-



ter of a pound of Verdigrease, and mixing them well together, wash the horses sore with his water till it begin to dry up, and then heale it with the powders before named. See further in the new Additions for the Fistula, marked thus ♀.

### CHAP. XXII.

*A true and certaine approved Cure for any  
Pole-evill whatsoever*

♂ **F**irst shave off the haire from the swelling, then lay on a plaister of blacke Shoo-makers waxe, spread upon white Allom'd leather, and let it lye till it have ripened and broake the Impostume: then take a pint of Wine vinegar, and when it is boyling hot, mixe with it as much clay-loame with the strawes, and all in it, as will bring the vinegar unto a thicke Pultus, then apply this as hot as the horse can suffer it to the sore, and renew it once a day till the impostume be whole.

### CHAP. XXIII.

*Of a horse that is lave-eard, and how to  
helpe him.*

♂ **F**Or a horse to be Lave ear'd, is as foule a disgrace and as much deformity to his beauty, as to want the true proportion and use of any outward member whatsoever. It proceedeth from a naturall infirmity, and is ingendred even from the first conception, and  
— although

although few of our *Farriers* either have endeavored themselves, or know how to helpe it; yet there is nothing more certaine then that in this sort it may be cured. First, take your horses eares, and place them in such manner as you would have them stand, and then with two little boords, or peeces of Trenchers three fingers broad, having long strings knit unto them, binde the eares so fast in the places where they stand, that by no meanes or motion they may stirre, then betwixt the head and the roote of the care, you shall see a great deale of empty wrinkled skinne, which with your finger and your thumbe you shall pull up, and then with a very sharpe paire of Sizers you shall clippe away all the empty skinne close by the head: then with a needle and red silke you shall stitch the two sides of the skinne close together, and then with a salve made of Turpentine, Deeres suet, and honey, of each like quantity melted together, and made into an oyntment, heale up the fore; which done, take away the splents which held up his eares, and you shall see within a short time that his eares will keepe the same place still as you set them, without any alteration: And this you shall ever finde to be as certaine and true, as the healing of a cut finger.

---

T 4      C H A P.

---




## CHAP. XXIIII.

*Of the Vives or hard Kirnells betweene the  
Chaps and the Necke.*

**T**He Vives are certaine great Kirnells which grow from the roote of the horses eare, downe to the lower part of his nether jaw, betweene the chappe and the necke, they are in proportion, long, narrow, and round, and are naturall things proper and due to every horse: but when either through rankenesse of blood, or aboundance of corrupt humours, resorting to that place, they begin to bee inflamed, then they become very foule Sorrances and Impostumations most dangerous: they are inwardly very full of little white salt Kirnells, and they breed great paine in the horses throat. This disease as farre forth as I can finde by any demonstration, is the disease which in men we call the Squinansie, or Quinzie, and not as some of the old Farriers suppose, the Strangle, for that hath no coherence with the infirmity. For the signes of the disease, there needs small repetition, insomuch as the grieve is apparant to the eye: and the cure, according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers, is thus: If you see the Kirnells begin to rangle and swell, you shall take the horses eare, and laying it downe alongst the necke of the horse, at the very end or tippe of the eare, cut a hole through the skinne of the necke, the length of an Almonde, or better; and then with a crooked Wire, picke out all those Kirnells which you finde inflamed: Which done, fill the hole full of Salt: then about the end

of three dayes, you shall finde the sore beginne to matter: then wash it either with barke water, or with the juyce of Sage: Then take of honey, of sweet butter, and of tarre, of each halfe a spoonefull, and melt them together, and as soone as you have washed the sore cleane, put into it of this oynment the quantity of a beane, and so dresse the horse once a day untill he be whole.

There bee others of our most ancient english *Farriers*, which for this Sorrance use first to draw the sore right downe in the midst with a hot Iron, from the roote of the eare, so farre as the tippe of the eare will reach, being pulled downe, and under the roote againe draw two strikes on each side, like an Arrow head in this forme:  then in the midst of the first Line, launce them with a Lancet, and taking hold of the Kirnells with a paire of fine thinne Pinsons, pull them so farre forward as you may cut the Kirnells out without hurting the veine: That done, fill the hole with salt, and heale it up as is aforesaid. Now most of the *Italian* Farriers use this cure: First, take a sponge steeped well in strong Vineger, and bind it unto the sore place, renewing it twice a day untill the Kirnells bee rotten: That done, launce it then in the nethermost part, where the matter lyeth, and let it out, and then fill up the hole with salt finely brayed, and the next day wash all the filth away with warme water and a sponge, and then anoynt the place with honey and Fitch flowre mixt together, but in any case beware, during this cure, you touch not the Kirnells with your bare



beare finger, for feare of venoming the place, which is very apt for a Fistula to breede in. Now there be other English *Farriers*, which use either to ripen the sore by laying to a plaister of hot hogsgrease, or a plaister of Barley meale, mixt with three ounces of Raisins sod well together in strong Wine, or else they cut out the Kirnels. Now whether you cut them out, burne them out, or rot them out ( of all which I hold rotting the best, ) you shall ever fill the hole with nettles and salt being chopt and mixt together, or else taint it with taints dipt in water and mixt with sallet oyle and salt. Others use to burne them downwards with a hot Iron in the midst, from the eare to the jaw-bone, drawing two crosse strokes, and then launce it in the midst, and plucke out the Kirnels, and fill the hole with bay Salt, and the crops of nettles well chopt and mixt together: or else put onely Salt into the hole, and take the crops of nettles well chopt and mixt with Bay salt, and two spoonfull of strong vineger: and straine it, and put in either eare a spoonfull thereof, and put some blacke woole after it, and so bind up his eares.

Others use to ripen them, either by laying to the sore, wet hay, or wet horse-litter: And as soone as they are ripe (which you shall know by the softnesse) to launce the skinne, and take out the Kirnels; and then fill the hole with the powder of honey and unsleckt lime mixt together, and burnt upon a Tile-stone. Others use likewise after the Kirnels are ripened and taken out, to take of Egrimony, honey and violet leaves, of each like quantity, and stamping them well together, to plaister the sore therewith,

with, till it be whole. Others use after the Kirnells are taken out, to wash the sore with Copperus Water, and then to taint the hole with flaxe dipt in the white of an egge, and after to heale it with Waxe, Turpentine, and Hogges grease molten well together.

## CHAP. XXV.

*A most rare and certaine approved medicine, which will cure the Vives without either burning, melting, rotting, or any such violent extremity.*

**T**AKE a penyworth of Pepper beaten to fine powder, of Swines grease one spoonfull, the juyce of a handful of Rue, of vineger two spoonful, mixe them all well together, and put it equally into both the horses eares, and tye them up with two strings, or else stitch them together: Then shake the eares that the medicine may sinke downwards: Which done, you shall let the horse blood in the necke-veine, and in the temple-veines. And this cure is infallible.

## CHAP. XIXVI.

*Another cure for the Vives, most certaine and approved.*

**I**F in any of the former receits you can finde either difficulty or doubt, then to make certaine and speedy Worke: first shave off the haire from the sweld place, and then clap upon it a plaister of Shooe-makers waxe, and remooove it not till the sore breake, then renew the plaister & it wil both heale and dry it.

CHAP.



## CHAP. XXVII.

## Of the Strangle.

**T**HE Strangle (howsoever our old Farriers make a long discourse thereof) is not (as they suppose) a kinde of Quinzy, but a meane inflammation of the throat, proceeding from some Cholericke or bloody fluxion, which comes out of the branches of the Throate-veines into those parts, and there breedeth some hot inflammation, being stirred up either by some great cold Winter, or cold taken after Labour: It is a great and a hard swelling betwene the horses nether chaps, upon the rootes of the horses tongue, and about his throate, which swelling, if it be not prevented, will stop the horses wind-pipe, and so strangle or choake him: from which effect, and none other, the name of the disease took his derivation. The signes of this disease, besides the apparant signe thereof, and the palpable feeling of the same, is, the horses temples of his head will be hollow, and his tongue wil hang out of his mouth, his head and eyes also will be swolne, and the passage of his throat so stopt, that hee can neither eate nor drinke, and his breath will be exceeding short. The cure thereof, according to the most ancient Farriers, is with a round small hot Iron to thrust a hole through the skin on both sides the wessand, and then after it beginneth to matter, to mixe butter, Tan-ners water, and Salt together, and every day anoynt the sore therewith till it be whole. Other of the ancient Farriers use first to bathe the horses mouth  
and

and tongue with hot water, and then anoynt the fore place with the gall of a Bull, that done, give him this drinke: Take of old Oyle two pounds, of old Wine a quart, nine Figges, and nine Leekes heads well stamped and brayed together, and after you have boyled these a while, before you straine them, put thereunto a little *Nitrum Alexandrinum*, and giue him a quart of this every morning and evening: Also you may if you will, let him blood in the Palate of the mouth, and powre wine and oyle into his nostrils, and also give him to drinke the decoction of Figges and *Nitrum* sodden together or else to anoynt his throate within with Nitre, Oyle, and Honey, or else with honey and hogs dung, mixt together. Other *Farriers* use to rowell the Horse under the throate, and to draw the Rowell twice or thrice a day, anoynting it with fresh butter, and keeping his head warme. Other of our latter and better experienced *Farriers*, use first, (if his yeares will permit him) to let the horse blood in the necke-veine, then to lay to the fore this ripening plaister: Take of Mallowes, Linseed, Rue, Smallage and ground Ivy, of each like quantity; boile these together in the grounds of Beere: then put to it some Oyle de Bay, and a little *Dia Althea*, then take it off the fire, & make of it a plaister, and lay it to the sore, suffering the horse to drinke no cold water: after the sore is broken, lay bran steep in Wine unto it, till it bee whole. Others use to cut the Kirnells out betweene the jawes, and then to wash the fore with Butter and Beere, giving the horse to drinke new milke and Garlicke, and the juyce of the leaves of Birch, or in winter



ter the barke of Birtch, or else to anoynt it with tarre and oyle till it be whole. Now, for mine own part, the best cure that ever I found for the Strangle, was this.

✶ As soone as I found the swelling begin to arise betweene his chaps, to take a Wax candle, and holding it under the Horses chappes, close unto the swelling, burne it so long till you can see the skinne bee burnt through, so that you may as it were, raise it from the flesh, that done, you shall lay unto it, either wet hay, or wet Horse-litter, and that will ripen it, and make it breake : then lay a plaister unto it onely of Shoemakers Wax, and that will both draw and heale it. Now if it breake inward, and will not breake outward, and so avoydeth onely at his nose, then you shall twice or thrice every day, perfume his head by burning under his nostrils either Frankinsence or Masticke, or else by putting a hot coale into wet hay, and so making the smoake thereof to ascend up into the horses head : Or else to blow the powder of Euforbium with a quill into his nose, and also note that whatsoever cureth the Vives, cureth the Strangle also.

#### CHAP. XXVIII.

##### *Of the cankerous ulcer in the nose.*

**T**Hat which wee call the cankerous Ulcer in the Nose, is onely a fretting humour, eating and consuming the flesh, and making it all raw within, and not being holpen in time, will eate through the Gristle of the nose. It commeth of corrupt blood, or else  
of

of a sharpe hunger ingendred by meanes of some extreame cold.

The signes are, the horse will oft bleede at the nose, and all the flesh within his nose will bee raw, and filthy stinking savours and matter will come out at the nose.

The cure thereof, according to the ancient Farriers, is: Take of greene Copperus and of Allome of each a pound, of white Copperus one quarterne, and boyle these in a pottle of running water untill a pint be consumed: then take it off, and put thereunto halfe a pint of Honey: then cause his head to bee holden up with a drenching staffe, and squirt into his nostrils with a squirt of Brasse or Pewter, some of this Water being luke-warme, three or foure times one after another; but betwixt every squirting give him liberty to hold downe his head, and to snort out the filthy matter: for otherwise perhaps you might choake him: and after this it shall be good also without holding up his head any more, to wash and rub his nostrils with a fine clout bound to a stickes end, and dipt in the aforesaid water, and doe thus once a day untill the horse be whole. Other Farriers use, if they see this Canker to be of great heate, and burning in the sore with exceeding great paine, then you shall take the juyce of Purslaine, Lettice, and Night-shade, of each like quantity, and mixe them together, and wash the sore with a fine cloth dipt therein, or else squirt it up into his nostrils, and it will allay the heate.

Other take of Hyssope, Sage, and Rue, of each a good handfull, and seeth them in urine and water  
to



to the third part of them: then straine them out, and put in a little white Copperus and honey, and Aquavita, and so either wash or squirt the place with it: then when the Canker is kild, make this Water to heale it: Take of Rib-wort, Bettony and Daisies, of each a handfull: then seeth them well in Wine and Water, and wash the sore three or foure times a day thewith untill it be whole. Others also use to take Chry stall, and beating it into fine powder, to strow it upon the Canker, and it will kill it.

#### CHAP. XXIX.

##### *Of bleeding at the Nose.*

**M**Any horses, (especially yong horses) are oft subject to this bleeding at the nose, which I imagine proceedeth either from the much abundance of blood, or that the veine which endeth in that place, is either broken, fretted or opened. It is opened many times by meanes that blood aboundeth too much, or that it is too fine, or too supple, and so pierceth through the veine. Againe, it may be broken by some violent straine, cut, or blow. And lastly, it may be fretted and gnawne through by the sharpnesse of the blood, or else by some other evill humour contained therein. The cure is, according to the ancient Farriers, to take the juyce of the rootes of Nettles, and squirt it up into the horses nostrils, and lay upon the nape of the Horses necke, a wadde of hay dipt in cold water, and when it waxeth warme, take it off, and lay on a cold one. Other Farriers use to take a pint of red Wine, and put there-  
in

in a quarterne of Bole-armonicke beaten into fine powder and being made luke-warme, to powre the one halfe thereof the first day into his nostrile that bleedeth, causing his head to be holden up, so as the Wine may not fall out, and the next day to give him the other halfe.

Others use to let the horse blood on the breast-veine, on the same side that he bleedeth at severall times: then take of *Frankinsence* one ounce, of *Aloes* halfe an ounce, and beate them into fine powder, and mingle them thoroughly with the whites of three egges untill it bee as thicke as honey, and with soft Hares haire thrust it up into his nostrils, filling the hole so full of Ashes, Dung, or Hogges dung, or horses dung mixt with Chalke and Viner.

Now for mine owne part, when none of these will remedy or helpe (as all have failed me at some times, then I have used this) take two small whipe-cords; and with them garter him exceeding hard about some ten or twelve inches above his knees of his fore-legges, and just beneath his elbowes, and then keepe the nape of his necke as cold as may bee, with moyst cloathes, or wet hay, and it will staunch him presently.

V

CHAP.



## CHAP. XXX.

*Of the bloody rifts, or chops in the Palate  
of the horses mouth.*

**T**Hese Chops, Clefts, or Rifts, in the palate of a horses mouth, doe proceede (as some *Farriers* suppose,) from the eating of rough hay, full of whimmes, thistles, or other pricking stufte, or else Provender full of sharpe Seede, which by continuall pricking and fretting the furrowes of the mouth, doe cause them to rankle, swell, and breede corrupt blood, and stinking matter, and without speedy prevention, that Ulcer will turne to the foulest *Canker*.

The cure thereof is (according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*) to wash the sore places very cleane with Salt and vineger mixt together, then to anoynt it with Honey and Allome mixt together. Other *Farriers* use (especially if the Palate bee much swelled,) to pricke the rooffe of the mouth with an hot iron, that the humours may issue out abundantly, and then to anoynt the place with Honey and Onions boyled together, til they be whole.

## CHAP. XXXI.

*Of the Gigges or Bladders in a horses  
mouth.*

**T**Hese Gigges, Bladders, or Flappes in a horses mouth, are little soft swellings, or rather pockles with blacke heads, growing in the inside of the horses

horses lips, next unto his great jaw-teeth : they will sometimes be as great as a Wal-nut, and are so painefull unto him, that they make him let his meate fall out of his mouth, or at least keepe it in his mouth unchawed, whereby the horse can in no wise prosper: they doe proceed either of eating too much grasse, or naughty rough pricking hay or provender, they are most apparently to be felt: and the cure is (according to the opinion of the oldest and most experienced *Farriers*) first to draw out the horses tongue of the one side of his mouth, and then take a Lancet and slit the swellings the length of a Date; and then with a Probe picke out all the Kirnells like Wheate cornes very cleane: then take the yolke of an Egge, and as much salt as will temper it thicke like leaven: then make it into little Bals, and thrust into every hole, and faile not to doe so once a day untill it bee whole.

Other *Farriers* use after they have slit them with an incision Knife, and thrust out the corruption, onely to wash the sore places either with vineger and Salt, or else with Allome water. Others use with a small hot Iron to burne the swellings, and then wash them with Beere and Salt, or Ale and Salt, and it will heale them. Now that you may prevent this Disease before it come, it shal bee good to pul out the horses tongue often, and to wash it with Wine, Beere, and Ale, and so shal not Blisters breed thereon, nor any other disease.



## CHAP. XXXII.

## Of the Lampasse.

**T**He *Lampasse* is a swelling or growing up of the flesh, which overgroweth the upper teeth, which are the shearers in the upper chap, and so hindreth the horse from eating. They doe proceede from a boundance of blood resorting to the first Furrow or bar of the mouth, I meane that which is next to the upper fore-teeth, it is most apparant to be seene, and therefore needeth no other signes. The cure is (according to the custome of the oldest *Farriers*,) first with a Lancet to let them blood in divers places of the swelled flesh: then take an Iron made at one end broad and thin, and turned up according to this Figure, and heating it red hot, burne out all that superfluous sweld flesh which overgrows the fore-teeth, and then annointe the fore place with fresh Butter untill it bee whole. Others use after it is burnt out, onely to rub the fore place with Salt onely, or wash it with Salt and Vinegar till it be whole. Others use to take a hooked Knife made very sharpe and very hot, and therewith cut the swolne places in two parts crosse against the teeth; but if they be a little sweld, then cut but the third ranke from the teeth, and so let him bleed well: then rub it with a little Salt, and the Horse will be well: but if you finde afterwards that cyther through too much burning, or cutting, or through the eating of too course meate, that the wound doth not heale, but rather rankleth: then you shall

shall take a Saucer full of hony, and twelve pepper-cornes, and bray them together in a mortar, and temper them up with vinegar, and boyle them a while, and then once a day annoynt the sore therewith till it be whole.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

*Of the Camery, or Frounce.*

**T**HE Camery, or Frounce in horses, are small Pimples, or Warts in the midst of the palate of the mouth above, and they are soft, and sore, they will also sometimes breede both in his Tongue and in his Lips: it proceedeth sometimes from the eating of frozen grasse, or by drawing frozen dust with the grasse into their mouthes: sometimes by eating of moyst hay, that Rats or other Vermine have pist upon, and sometimes by licking up of venome. The signes are the apparant seeing of the pimples, or whelkes, and a forsaking of his foode, both through the sorenesse of them, and through the unsavourinessse and ranknesse of the foode that hee hath eaten before.

The Cure (according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers (is first to let him blood in the two greatest veines under his tongue, and then wash all the sore places with Vinegar and Salt: Then get the horse new bread, which is not hote, and give it him to eat, and the Horse will doe well enough, But take heede you give but a small quantity of such bread for feare of surfeite, which is both apt and dangerous.



Others use with a hot Iron to burne the pimples on the head, and then wash them with Wine and Salt, or Ale and Salt untill they bleede, and they will soone heale. Other *Farriers* use to take out his tong, and to pricke the veines thereof in seven or eight places, and likewise under his upper Lippe also, and let him bleede wel: then rub every sore place with Salt well: then the next day wash all the sore places with white wine warme, or else with strong vinegar, and rub it againe with Salt: then for two or three dayes let the horse drinke no cold water, and he will doe well.

#### CHAP. XXXIIII.

##### *Of the Canker in the month.*

**A** Canker is said of the ancient *Farriers* to be nothing but the rawnes of the mouth and tongue, which is full of very sore blisters, from whence wil runne a very hot and sharpe lye, which will fret and corrode or rot the flesh wheresoever it goeth. The signes are, the apparant sight of the sore, besides the forsaking of his meate, because he cannot swallow it downe, but lets it lye halfe chawed betweene his jaws: and sometimes when he hath chawed his meate, hee will thrust it out of his mouth againe, and his breast wil favour very strongly, chiefly when he is fasting.

☞ This disease proceedeth ofttest from some unnaturall heate comming from the stomacke, and sometimes from the venom of filthy food.

The cure is (as the oldest *Farriers* instruct us)

to take of Allome halfe a pound, of hony a quarter of a pint of Collombine leaves, of Sage, of each a handful, boyle al these together in three pints of running Water untill one pint bee consumed, and wash al the sore places therewith, so as they may bleed, and do thus once every day until it be whole. Other Farriers use first to cast the horse, and with a rolling pinne to open his mouth, then with a crooked Iron wrapt about with Tow or Flaxe, to take out all the stinking grasse, or other meate that lyeth in his jawes, and under the roote of his tongue: then when you have cleansed it thus, you shall heat strong wine vineger somewhat warme, and then with the same Iron wrapt in tow, and dipt in wine vineger, you shall wash al the sore places till they bleed: then wash all his tongue and lippes with the same vineger, and so let him rise: and then feede him at least seven dayes with warme Mashes and hot graines: but in no wise with any hay, and hee will soone be whole.

Other Farriers use to take of the juyce of Daffadil rootes seven drams, of the juyce of Hounds-tongue as much, of vineger as much, of Allome one ounce: mixe these wel together, and wash the Canker therewith once a day untill it be whole. Others use to take of Saven, of pay salt and of Rue, of each like quantity, and stamp them together with as much Barrows grease, and anoynt the sore places therewith untill the Canker bee kild, which you may know by the whitnesse, and then heale it up onely with Allome water.

Others use first to wash the Canker till it bleede



with warme Vineger, to take a good quantity of Allome beaten into very fine powder, and to mixe it with strong vineger till it be as thicke as a Salve: then to anoynt all the sore places therewith, and doe not faile thus to doe twice or thrice a day untill the Canker be whole.

Now for mine owne part, the best cure that ever I found for this Sorrance, is to take of Ginger and of Allome, of each like quantity, made into very fine powder: then with strong vineger to mixe them together till they be very thicke like a Salve, then when you have washt the Canker cleane, either with Allome water or with vineger, anoynt it with this Salve, and in twice or thrice dressing the Canker will be kild, and after it will heale speedily.

#### CHAP. XXXV.

*Of heate in the mouth and lips of a horse.*

THE unnaturall and violent heate which ascendeth up from the stomacke into the mouth, doth not alwayes breed a Canker, but sometimes onely heateth and inflameth the mouth and lippes, making them onely swell and burne, so as the horse can take no joy in his foode, but through the griefe refuseth his meate. The cure thereof is first turne up his upper lip, or that which is most fweld, and with a Lancet jagge it lightly, so that it may bleede, and then wash both that, and all his mouth and tongue with vineger and Salt.

## CHAP. XXXVI.

*Of the Tongue being hurt with the Bit, or otherwise.*

**I**F the tongue of a horse be either hurt, cut, or galled by any accident or mischance whatsoever, the best cure is (as the old *Farriers* suppose) to take of English honey, and of salt Lard, of each like quantity, a little unflecked Lime, and a little of the powder of Pepper: boyle them on a soft fire, and stirre them well together till they bee thicke like unto an oyntment: then wash the wound with white Wine warmed: after that, annoynt the wound with the said oyntment twice a day, and by no meanes let the horse weare any Bit till he be whole.

Other *Farriers* use first to wash the sore with Alome water, and then to take the leaves of a blacke Bramble, and to choppe them together small with a little Lard: that done, to binde it with a little clout, making it round like a ball: Then having dipped the round end in honey, to rubbe the tongue therewith once a day untill it be whole.

## CHAP. XXXVII.

*Of the Barbes or Pappes underneath a horses tongue.*

**T**He Barbes are two little pappes which naturally doe grow under every Horses tongue whatsoever, in the nether Jawes: yet if at any time they shoote out, and grow into an extraordinary length  
or



or by the over-flow of humours become to be inflamed, then they are a Sorrance, and with the extremity of their paine, they hinder the horse from feeding. The cure of them is, both according to the opinion of the ancient and late *Farriers*, absolutely to clip them away with a paire of sheares close to the jaw, and then to wash the sore either with water and salt, or else with Tartar and strong vinegar mixt together, or else with vinegar and salt. Any of all which will heale them.

#### CHAP. XXXVIII.

*Of the paine in a horses teeth, of Wolfes teeth, and law teeth.*

**A** Horse may have paine in his teeth through divers occasions, as partly by the descent of grosse humours from the head downe unto the teeth and gummes, which is very proper to Colts and young horses, and plainly to bee seene by the ranknesse and swelling of the gummes, and also he may have paine in his teeth, by having two extraordinary teeth, called the Wolfes teeth, which be two little teeth growing in the upper jawes, next unto the great grinding teeth, which are so painfull to the horse, that hee cannot endure to chew his meat, but is forced either to let it fall out of his mouth, or else to keepe it still halfe chewed. Againe, a horse will have a great paine in his teeth, when his upper jaw teeth bee so farre growne, as they over-hang the nether jaw teeth; and therewith also bee so sharpe, as in mooving his jawes, they cut and raze the in-  
sides

sides of his cheekes, even as they were razed with a Knife. Lastly, a horse may have great paine in his teeth, when either by corruption of blood, or some other naturall weaknesse, the horses teeth grow loose and sore in such manner, that through the tendernes thereof hee is not able to chaw or grinde his foode. Now for the severall cures of these infirmities, you shal understand that first as touching the general paine in a horses teeth, which doe come by meanes of the distillation of humours, it is thought fit by the ancientest Farriers, first to rub all the outside of the horses gummes with fine Chalke and strong vinegar wel mixt together.

Other ancient Farriers use after they have so washed the gummes, to strow upon them the powder of Pomegranate Pils, and to cover the temples of the head with a plaister of Pitch, Rozen, and Masticke moltent together, as have beene before sufficiently declared.

Now for the cure of the Wolfes teeth, or the jaw teeth (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) it is thus. First, cause the horses head to bee tyed up high to some post or rafter, and his mouth to be opened with a cord so wide that you may easily see every part thereof: Then take an instrument of Iron, made in all poynts like unto a Carpenters Gouge, and with your left hand set the edge of the toole at the foote of the Wolfes teeth, on the outside of the jaw, turning the hollow side of the toole downward, holding your hand steadily, so as the toole may not slip nor swarve from the aforesaid teeth: Then, having a mallet in your right hand, strike



strike upon the head of the toole a good stroake, wherewith you may loosen the tooth, and make it bend inward, then straying the midst of your toole upon the Horses neather jaw, wrinch the tooth outward with the inside or hollow side of the toole, and thrust it cleane out of his Head: Which done, serve the other Woolfes tooth on the other side in like manner, and then fill up the empty holes with Salt finely brayed.

Other ancient Farriers use (and I haue in mine experience found it the better practice) onely when the Horse is eyther tyed up or cast, and his mouth opened, to take a very sharpe file, and to file the wolfs teeth so smooth as is possible, and then Wash his mouth with a little Allome water. Now if the upper jaw teeth over hang the nether jaw teeth, and so cut the inside of the mouth as is aforesaid, then you shall take your former toole or gouge, and with your Mallet strike and pare all those teeth shorter by little and little degrees, running alongst them even from the first unto the last, turning the hollow side of your toole towards the teeth, by which meanes you shall not cut the insides of the horses Cheekes: then with your file, file them all smooth without any raggednesse, and then wash the Horses mouth with Vinegar and Salt. Lastly, if the paine doe proceed from the loosenesse of his teeth, then the cure is, according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, first to cast the Horse, and pricke all his Gummes over with a Lancet, making them bleed well, then rubbe them all over with Sage and Salt, and it will fasten them againe.

Others

Others use to let the horse blood in the veine under the Tayle, next the Rump, and then to rubbe all his gums with Sage, and to give him in his provender, the tender croppes of blacke bryers : or else wash all his mouth with hony, sage, and salt beaten together, and by no meanes let the horse eat any moyst meat, for cold, moyst, and marrish feeding in the Winter, onely breedeth this disease of loosenesse in the teeth, and it is of all other, most proper to the *Sorrell* horses.

## CHAP. XXXIX.

*Of diseases in the necke and Withers, and first of the cricke in the necke.*

**T**He *Cricke* in the necke of a Horse, is when hee cannot turne his necke any way, but holds it still right foorth, in so much that hee cannot bow downe his head to take up his meate from the ground, but with exceeding great paine, and surely it is a kinde of convulsion of sinewes which proceedeth from cold causes, of which wee have spoken very sufficiently before : It also proceedeth sometimes from over-heavy burthens that be laid upon a horses shoulders: or by over-much drying up of the sinewes of the necke. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient *Farrriers*, is, first to thrust a sharpe hote iron through the flesh of the necke in five severall places, every one distant from the other three inches, (but in any case beware of touching any sinew) then rowell all the afore-said places either with horse haire, flax, or hempe, for the space of fiftene dayes, and



and anoynt the rowels with hogs grease, and the necke will soone be restored. Others use if the cricke causeth the horse to hold his necke straight forward, which sheweth that both sides are equally perplexed, to take a hot drawing Iron, and draw the horse from the roote of the eare, on both sides the necke, from the midst of the same, even downe the breast, a straw deep, so as both ends may meet on the breast: then make a hole through the skin of the fore-head, hard under the fore-toppe, and thrust in a corner upward betwixt the skinne and the flesh, a handfull deepe: then either put in a goose feather doubled in the midst, and anoynted with hogs grease: Or else a rowell of either horne or Leather, with a hole in the midst: any of which will keepe the hole open, to the intent the matter may issue forth: And this you shall keepe open the space of ten dayes, but every day during the time, the hole must be cleansed once, and the feather or rowel also cleansed, and fresh anoynted, and put in againe: and once a day let him stand upon the bit an houre or two, or else be ridden abroad two or three miles, by such an one as will beate the horses head, and make him bring it in: but if the cricke bee such that it maketh the horse to hold his head awry upon the one side, which sheweth that but one side of the necke is troubled, then you shall not draw the horse with a hot Iron on both sides of the necke, but only on the contrary side, as thus: If hee bend his head towards the right side, then to draw him, as is aforesaid, onely on the left side, and to use the rest of the cure as is abovesaid, and if necessary doe

doe require, you may splent the horses necke also straight strong with splents of wood.

I have cured this *Cricke* in the necke onely by bathing the horses necke in the oyle of Peeter, or the oyle of *Spike* very hot, and then rolling it all up in wet Hay, or rotten Litter, and keeping the horse exceeding warme, without using any burning, wounding, or other violence.

#### CHAP. XL.

##### *Of the Wennes in the necke.*

**A** Wenne is a certaine Bunch or Kirnell upon the skinne, like a tumour or swelling: the inside whereof is sometimes hard like a Gristle, and spongius like a skinne full of soft Warts; and sometimes yellow like unto rusted Bacon, with some white graines among. Now of Wennes some are great, and some be smal, also some are very painefull, and some not painefull at all. They proceede, as some imagine of naughty, grosse, and flegmaticke humors, binding together in some sicke part of the body. And others say they proceede from taking of cold, or from drinking of waters that bee most extreame cold; but I say, that albeit they may proceed from these causes, yet most generally they proceed from some pinching, bruising, biting, ripping, or galling, either of girthes, halter, collar, or any other thing whatsoever.

The most certainst cure thereof is this, take of Malloves, Sage, and red Nettles, of each one handfull: boyle them in running water, and put thereunto a little



little butter and honey, and when the hearbes be soft take them out, and all to bruiſe them, and put thereunto of oyle de Bay two ounces, and of Hogs greafe two ounces, and warme them together over the fire, mixing them well together: that done, plaister it upon a peece of leather, ſo big as the Wen, and lay it to ſo hot as the horſe can endure it, renewing it every day in ſuch ſort the ſpace of eight dayes, and if you perceiue it will come to no head, then launce it from the miſt of the Wenne downward, ſo deepe that the matter in the bottome may be diſcovered and let out: which done, heale it up with this ſalve: Take of Turpentine a quarterne, and waſh it nine times in faire water, then put thereunto the yolke of an egge, and a little Engliſh Saffron beaten into powder, and make a taint or role of flaxe, and dippe it in that oyntment, and lay it to the ſore, renewing the ſame every day once or twice, untill the Wenne be cured.

Others uſe in this caſe, with a hot Iron to burne and ſcare away all the ſuperfluous fleſh, and then to heale vp the ſore eyther with the Oyntment laſt rehearſed, or elſe with the powder of Hony and Lime mixt togther: and this manner of cure is by much, the ſpeedier.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XLII.

*Of swelling in the necke after blood-letting.*

**T**He swelling of a horses necke after blood-letting may come through divers occasions, as namely by striking through the veine, so as some of the blood being gotten betwixt the flesh and the veine, it there corrodeth and turneth to an impostume, or else by striking the veine with a rusty fleame, whereby the veine rankleth, or by some cold wind striking suddainely into the hole, or lastly, by suffering the horse too soone to thrust downe his head, and graze or feed, whereby humours resorting to that place, breeds a great impostumation. The cure is, according to the opinion of some Farriers, to take Hemlocke and stampe it, and then to mingle it with Sheeps dung, and wine vinegar, and so making a plaister thereof, to lay it to the swelling, renewing it once a day untill it be whole. Other Farriers use first to annoynt the place with the oyle of Camomil warmed, and then to lay upon it a little hay wet in cold water, and bind it about with a cloath, renewing it every day for the space of a weeke, to see whether it will grow to a head, or else vanish away: if it grow to a head, you may then launce it, and thrust out the matter: then heale it up by tainting it with flaxe dipt in Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together, dressing it so once a day untill it be whole.



## CHAP. XLII.

*How to stanch blood.*

**I**F your horse, either by wound or other accident, or by the ignorance of any unskillfull *Farrier* that letteth him bleed when the signe is in that place, bleed so exceedingly that hee will not bee stanch'd, you shall then according to the opinion of the old *Farriers*, lay unto the wound a little new horse dung, tempered with Chalke and strong vineger, and not to remoove it from thence the space of three dayes: Or else to lay unto it burnt silke, burnt felt, or burnt cloath, any of which will stanch blood. Others use to powre into the wound the juyce of Coriander; or else to let the horse chew in his mouth the leaves of Periwinkle. Others use to take of bruised Nettles, and lay them to the wound: or else wild Tansey bruised, or hor hogges dung. Others use to take bruised Sage and lay to the wound: or else the coame about the Smiths forge: or else a clode of earth, or bruised Hyssope: or the soft crops of Hawthorne bruised: or else to take two ounces of the horses blood, and boile it til it come to a powder, and then put that powder into the wound.

☞ But when all these faile, as in some extremities I have found them do, then for your onely refuge, you shall take the soft Doune either of a Haires skin, or of a Coniesskin, and stop the wound well therewith, holding it too with your hand til the blood stanch: if it be a grievous sore wound, then as soone as the blood is stayed, spread a plaister of Bolcarmonicke and

and Wine vinegar mixt over the wound.

### CHAP. XLIII.

#### *Of the falling of the Crest.*

**T**He falling of the horses Crest, is when the upper part of a Horses necke which is called the Crest, leaneth either to the one or the other side, and will not stand upright as it ought to doe. It proceedeth most commonly from poverty and very hard keeping, and especially when a fat horse falleth away suddainely upon any inward sicknesse. The cure (according to the oldest *Farriers*) is first to draw his Crest well a full strawes breadth deepe on the contrary side with a hot Iron, the edge of which Iron would be halfe an inch broad, and make both your beginning and ending somewhat beyond the fal, so as the first draught may goe all the way hard upon the edge of the maine, close by the rootes of the same, bearing your hand right downeward into the necke-ward: Then answer that with another draught beneath, and so farre distant from the first, as the fal is broad, compassing, as it were, all the fall: but still on the contrary side, and betwixt those two draughts, right in the middest, draw a third draught: then with an Iron button of almost an inch about, burne at each end a hole, & also in the spaces betwixt the draughts, make divers holes distant three fingers one from another, as this figure doth plainely shew you. That done, to kill the fire, annoynt it every day





once with fresh butter for a weeke or more: Then take of Mallowes and of Sage, of each one handful, boyle them wel in running Water, and wash the burning away til it be raw flesh, and then dry it up with the powder of hony and Lime.

Other Farriers use for this infirmity, first to cast the horse upon some soft dunghill, or other easie place, and with a knife to cut away the flesh on the hanging or under side of the Crest, even from the fore-end thereof to the hinder end, sixe inches broad and two inches thicke, or somewhat more in the middle thereof where it is thickest: then groping the Crest with your hands, to pare the thickest part thereof, till it come all to one thinnesse, then holding the horse still fast bound, to cover all the place with great handfuls of Swines dung prepared for the purpose, and helde to the fore place an houre together, vntil the blood be stanch'd. Then let the Horse arise, and leade him into the Stable, tying him in such sort, that he may neither rubbe his necke nor lye downe: then the next morning take good store of burnt Allome beaten to powder, and strow it all over the fore place, and so let him stand for two dayes after without any stirring, least the wound should bleede againe: then at the end of these two dayes you shal bathe the sore gently with a fine Linnen cloath, dipt in warme Vrine, and then drying the sore, againe throw more burnt Allome upon it, and after annoint all about the out side of the edges of the sore with *Unguentum Album Camphyratum*, more then an inch broad: thus you shal dresse him every day once on that side of the Crest which did fal: then for the contrary

trary side you shall draw his maine thereon, and plat it in many plates: which done, you shal to those plats with thongs of leather, fasten a cudgel of a foote and a halfe long: then to the middest of that cudgel you shal hang a peece of Lead with a holc in it, of such weight as will poize the Crest up even, and hold it in his right place: Then shal you draw his Crest on that side the weight hangs with a hot drawing Iron, even from the toppe of the Crest, downe to the point of the shoulder, making divers stroakes one an inch and an halfe from another: Then shall you lay upon the burnt places, a plaister of pitch, Tarre, and Rozen, moltent together, and so let the waight hang till all the fore places bee healed, and there is no question but the Crest wil stand both upright and strongly.

### CHAP. XLIIII.

*A certaine and approved way, how  
to raise up the Crest that  
is false.*

**T**He most infallible and certaine way to raise up, and to keepe when it is so risen a Crest that is false: Is first to raise up the false Crest with your hand, and to place it in such wise as you would have it, and it ought to stand: then having one standing on the same side the Crest falleth from, let him with one hand hold up the Crest, and with the other thrust out the bottome or foundation of the Crest, so as it may stand upright: then on that side



to which it falleth, with an hot Iron (somewhat broad on the edge) draw his necke first at the bottom of the Crest, then in the midst of the Crest, and lastly at the setting on of the Haire, and be sure to draw it through the skinne, but bee sure no deeper, for this will enlarge and open the skinne.

Then on the other side (from whence the Crest falleth) gather up the skinne with your hand, and with two plaisters of Shoo-makers Wax laid one against another at the edge of the wound, and with smooth splints so stay the skinne, that it may shrinke neither upward nor downeward, then with a paire of sharpe Syzers clippe away all the spare skinne which you had gathered up with your hand, then with a needle and some red silke, stitch the skinne together in divers places, and to keepe the skinne from breaking, stitch the edges of the plaister together also, then annoynt the sore with Turpentine, Honey and Waxe molten together, and the places which you drew with the hot iron, with peece-grease made warme. And thus doe twice a day till all be whole, and have great care that your splints shrinke not.

## CHAP. XLV.

## Of the Manginess in a horse's

## Maine.

**T**HE Mainginess which is in the Maine of a Horse, and maketh him shed his haire, proceedeth either from the rankness of blood, poverty, or lousiness, or else of rubbing where a mangy horse hath rubbed, or else of fretting dust lying in the Maine for want of good dressing. The signes are, the apparent rubbing and itching of the horse about the Maine and Necke, and the scabbes fretting both the flesh and skinn, besides the shedding and falling away of the haire. The cure (according to the opinion of some of our ole Farriers) is, first let him blood on the necke-veine, and cut away al the haire from the scabbes, then with a hot Iron as bigge as a mans finger, seare all the sore place, even from the one end to the other. Then annoynt all the place you so burnt with blacke Sope, and now and then wash it with strong Lye and blacke sope mixt together.

Other good Farriers for this manginess onely take of fresh grease one pound, of Quicke-silver halfe an ounce, of Brimstone one ounce, of Rape oyle halfe pint, mingle them together, and stirre them continually in a pot with a slice, untill the Quick-silver bee so wrought with the rest, as you shall perceiue no Quick-silver therein: that done take a blunt Knife, or an old horse-combe, and sear chal the mangy places therewith until it bee raw and bloody, and then



anoynt it with this oyntment in the Sun-shine, if it may be, to the intent the oyntment may sinke in, or else hold before it either a hot fire pan, or a hot bar of Iron, to make the oyntment melt into the flesh, and if you see that within three dayes after thus once anoynting him hee leave not rubbing, then marke in what place he rubbeth, and dresse that place againe, and questionlesse it will serve.

## CHAP. XLVI.

*Of the shedding of haire in the Maine.*

**H**Aire, for the most part sheddeth or falleth from the Maine of a horse by reason of certaine little Wormes which eate and fret the roots of the haire asunder. The cure whereof is, first to anoynt the Maine and crest with blacke sope, and then to make a strong lye either of running water and Ashe-ashes, or else of Urine and Ashe-ashes, and with that to wash the Maine all over, and it wil helpe him.

## CHAP. XLVII.

*Of the paine and grieve in a horses Withers.*

**B**Oth a horses Withers and also to his backe, doe happen many infirmities and Sorraunces, some proceeding from inward causes, as of the corruption of humours, and sometime of outward causes, as through the galling, pinching and wringing of some naughty Saddle, or some heavy burthen layd on the Horses backe, or such like: And of these grieues some be small, and some bee great: The small are onely

onely superficial Blisters, Swellings, Light-galls, or bruifings, and are easily cured : but the great are those which pierce to the very bone, and bee most dangerous, especially if they be nigh to the backe bone. Thento speake first of the smaller gallings whensoever you shal see any swellings to arise, either about your horses Withers, or any other part of his backe, the cure is (according to the opinion of some of the olde Farriers) first of al if the place be much swolne and festered, then to pierce it with a sharpe hote Iron in many parts on both sides of the necke, and then put into the same, taints of Linnen cloath, dipt in warme sallet Oyle, and then after to dry and heale it up with the powder of hony and Lime mixt together.

Others use to take Butter and Salt, and to boyle them together untill they be blacke, then to powre it hot on the swelling : and then to take Warne horse-dung, and lay it on the sore Backe untill it be whole, dressing it once a day.

Others (especially the best of the ancient Farriers) use as soone as they see any swelling to arise, to binde unto it a little hot horse-dung, to see if that wil asswage it; which if it wil not, then to pricke it round about the swelling with a Fleime, Knife, or Lancet, yet not too deepe, but so as it may pierce the skin, and make the blood issue forth: that done, take of Mallowes, or Smallage, two or three handfuls, and boile them in running Water untill they be so soft as pappe: then straine the Water softly from it, and bruisse the hearbes in a traine dish, putting thereunto a little hogs grease, or else Sallet oyle, or Sheepes



Sheepes suet, or any other fresh grease: boile them and stirre them together, not frying them hard, but so as they be soft and supple: and then with a clout lay it warme upon the sore, renewing it every day once untill the swelling be gone, for it will either drive it away, or bring it to a head, which lightly chanceth not in these small swellings, except some Gristle or bone be perished. Others of the ancient *Farriers* use, when they see any swelling ro arise about a horses backe, first to shave the place with a Razor, and then to lay thereunto this plaister: take a little Wheate flowre, and the white of an egge beaten together, and spread it on a linnen clout, which being laid unto the swelling two or three dayes, and not remooved will bring it to a head, and when you come to take it off, pul it away so softly as you can possible: and whereas you see the corruption gathered in a head together, then in the lowest place thereof, pierce it upward with a sharpe Iron somewhat hot, that the matter or corruption may come out, and forget not to annoynt the sore place every day once with fresh Butter or Hogges grease untill it bee whole.

Others of our latter *Farriers* use when they see any swelling, only to lay wet hay unto it, for that will either drive it away, or bring it unto a head, and then when it is broken, you shal lay upon it a plaister of wine lees, renewing it as often as it grows dry, and if your Lees be too thin, you may thicken them with Wheat flower: or if you like not this medicine, then you may make a plaister of thicke Barme, as great as the sore, and renew it once a day until the swelling be asswaged:

asswaged: but if you see that any corruption be knie together, then you shal Launce it in the nethermost part, and let out the matter: then wash the sore either with Urine, Ale, or Beere, made scalding hot; then dry up all the moysture from the sore, either with a linnen cloath, or with a sponge: then cover all the sore over with burnt Allome beaten to powder: And thus dresse the horse once a day untill the flesh be growne up so high as you would have it, then shal you dresse the sore but once in two or three dayes. But if you see it skinneth but slowly, then may you annoynt the edge of the sore all about after it hath beene washed as aforesaid, with *Vnguentum Album*, for that will make the skinne to come fast; but if you doe perceiue that by dressing it too seldom there doth begin to grow any proud flesh, then shal you take a dram of Mercury, and mingle it with an ounce of *Vnguentum Album*, and annoynt al the sore places therewith once in two dayes: this wil correct the proud flesh, and cause it to skinne and heale suddenly.

Others use for the abating of these swellings, to boyle Mallowes in the grounds of Ale, and to clap it hot to the swelling: and if the swelling doe breake, wash it with pisse, and powre hot molten butter upon it. Others use to shave away the haire, and then to lay very hot unto it a handful of Leekes stampd and mixt with Boares grease, or else to take a turfe of earth burnt red, and laid to as hot as the horse can suffer it. Others use to take nettles beaten to peeces, and mixt with hot urine, and so lay it on hot, and then set on the saddle: and then if after two or three dayes  
dressing



dressing the swelling breake, then looke if there be any dead flesh within the sore, and eyther eate or cut it out: then take a pound of fresh grease, and a pound of Sallet Oyle, three ounces of White Wax, one ounce of turpentine, and three drams of Verdigrease, melt al these together, and taint the sore therewith till it be whole: for this will both eate away the ill flesh, and incarnate good. Other stake greene Coleworts and stampe them with swines grease, and then lay it plaister-wise on the sore, and it wil asswage it, especially if you ride the horse a little to make the medicine enter in. Now if there bee no great swelling, but onely the skin chaffed off, then you shal wash the raw place with water and salt, or else with warme wine, and sprinkle upon it the powder of honey and lime: or else the powder of Myrre, or the powder of burnt filke, or felt, or cloath, or of any old poast.

Other *Farriers* use when onely the skin is gald off, to take a spoonefull of thicke Creame, and to put as much Chimney soote unto it, as will make it thicke like a oyntment, and then to lay it upon the sore, and questionlesse it will heale it presently, if the wound be not very deepe.

#### CHAP. XLVIII.

*Of any gald backe or Withers, how great soever the swelling or inflammation be.*

IF the swelling, pinch, wringing, or gall, either upon the Withers, or any part of the backe of a horse be extraordinary great, and much inflamed, so that

there is now no apparant hope that it can bee got away without much Apostumation, then the cure, according to the opinion of the ancientest *Farriers*, is, to take Barme, and mixe it with so much soote of a Chimney, and make it so thicke therewith, that it shall seeme like Tarre, and with that make a plaister, and lay it to the sore place, renewing it twice a day, and it will very suddainely, both draw and heale it perfectly.

Others use to take a handful of Bay salt, and a handfull of great and smal Oate-meale, and put a quantity of old stale urine thereto, and stirre them altogether, and temper it like pap or paste, and then make round bals thereof, then through them in a fire, and make them red hot, then take them forth and beate them to fine powder, and then strow of that powder all over the sore, so oft as you shal see any part thereof bare, & it wil heale it. Other *Farriers* use if they see the swelling to be any thing great, first to draw round about the swelling with a hot Iron, and then crosse him with the same iron, in manner of this figure: then take a round hot Iron, having a sharpe poynt, and thrust it up into the swelling on each side upwards towards the poynt of the withers, or toppe of the backe, to the intent that the matter may issue downewards at both the holes: that done, taint both the holes first with a taint dipt in Hogges grease to kill the fire, and also annoynt all the burnt places therewith, continuing so to doe untill the swelling bee aswaged, renewing the taint every day once untill the fiery matter bee fallen away:





way: then taint him againe with washed Turpentine, mingled with the yolkes of three or foure egges and saffron, renewing the taint every day once until it be whole.

✶ But if for all this the swelling doe not goe away, then it is a signe of some inward impostumation, and then it shall bee good that you launce it, and let out the corruption: then take of Honey halfe a pint, of Verdigrease two ounces beaten to powder, and mixe it together with honey, then boyle them in a pot untill they looke red, then being luke-warme, make either a taint or a plaister, according as the wound shall require, renewing the same every day once untill it be whole. But the sore may bee so vehement, that for want of looking to in time, if it bee on the Withers, it will pierce downwards betwixt both the shoulders, even into the body, which is most dangerous and very mortall: therefore whensoever you shall feare any such hollownesse, you shal taint the hole with Salve last mentioned, and thrust after it a good peece of dry sponge, as well to keepe the hole open, as also to sucke out the corruption, and this you shall renew once a day untill the sore be whole.

Others of our late Farriers use to take Butter, Vineger, and bay Salt, and melting them together, lay it to the sore warme until it breake, then strow upon it either Soot or the powder of clay Wall; but if it be much festred, then take a pottle of Verjuyce, two peny-worth of greene Copperus, and boyle it unto a pinte and a halfe: then wash and searh the hollownesse therewith, then fill the hole with red Lead, and  
so

so let it remaine three dayes untouched, then wash it with the same water againe, and fill the hole againe with red Lead, and so every other day wash it with that Water, and lay red lead thereon, and it will heale the forest backe whatsoever. Now all these medicines already rehearsed are sufficient enough for the healing of any gald backe whatsoever, yet forasmuch as divers *Farriers* hold divers opinions, and thinke what they know to be onely best approoved, and in as much as you shall not bee ignorant of any mans Skill or Knowledge, which beareth any ground of reason in it, I will repeate you a Catalogue of other medicines which assuredly are all good in their kinds, and you may use them as occasion shall be administered.

First then know that the powder of Bryer leaves wil dry and heale up any gald backe. Also Rye flower, the white of an Egge, Honey, Barley straw burnt and Soote, wil dry up and heale a fore backe: The powder of Hony and unsleckt Lime will skin any gal: the powder of wilde Cowcumbes dryed in an Oven will heale any gal, provided the sore be first washed with Vineger. Onions boyld in Water, and layd hot to a swolne horses backe, will asswade the swelling, and the yolke of an Egge, Salt, and Vineger beaten together, wil heale it when it is broken, provided that you wash the sore first with Ale, wherein Rosemary hath beene sod. The Soote or grime of a brasse pot, the powder of the bone of a Crabfish, or the powder of Oyster-shells, any of these wil dry and skin a gald backe.

Lastly (and besides it, a man needeth no more  
medi-



☞ medicines) for this purpose, take hay and boyle it in strong Urine, and lay it to the swelled place, and it will either aswage it, or bring it to a head, then launce it, and let out the matter, then stop the hole with Rozen, Waxe, and fresh grease molten together, but if you find any dead flesh to grow within the sore, then cate it out either with Verdigrease beaten to powder, and strowed thereon, or else with *Mercury calcinan*, called of some *Precipetate*, being likewise strowed on the proud flesh; and when the proud flesh is gone, you may dry up the sore onely with the powder of Rozen, and nothing else. See further for this disease in the new Additions, for the Fistula marked thus ☞.

#### CHAP. XLIX.

##### *Of a Canker in the Withers of a horse.*

**I**F a horse after he hath beene violently wrung upon the Whithers, be suffered to go unlooked to, and that the sore breaketh upward through its owne violence, yet the great substance of the matter or corruption descending and rotting still downeward, it cannot chuse but breed to a Cankerous and vile Ulcer, as dangerous as is any Fistula, which you shall know by these signes: First the matter that issues from the sore, will be a sharpe, hot, and watrish lye fretting the haire away where it runneth downe, and about the hole of the sore will be a kinde of spongi-ous proud, dead flesh, which stoppeth the passage of the grosse matter. Now the cure of this cankerous sore is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers

to take a Razor, and cut open the hole of the Ulcer, so that you may see into the hollownesse, then cut out all the dead flesh til you come to the quicke, then take a quart of old stale urine, and put thereto a handful of Salt: then boyle it well on the fire, then having cleansed the sore either with a Cloath, or a wispe of Hay, wash it wel with the Liquor: then take the yolkes of foure Egges, and a penny-worth of Verdigrease, and a spoonefull of flower, and make a plaister thereof, and lay it to the sore, dressing him in this sort once a day untill he be whole.

Others of our ancient and latter Farriers use to take of the strongest Beere a pint, put into it a quarter of of a pound of Allome, and halfe a handful of Sage, seeth it to the one halfe, then take out the Sage leaves, and with the rest dresse the horse once a day, and it wil heale any rankerous sore in that part whatsoever.

### CHAP. L.

*Of the Stickfast, or Stitfast hornes, or hard bones growing under the Saddle.*

**T**Hese Stickfasts, Stitfasts, or hornes that grow in a horses skinne under the saddle, is a certaine dead skin like a hard peece of leather, growing fast into the flesh: it commeth of some old bruise, which not impostumating, the skin falleth dead, and sticketh hard and fast to the flesh.

The cure is, to take either a sharpe crooked instrument made for the purpose, or else a long nayle with the poynt turned inwards, and catching hold on the  
Y edge



edge of the dead skinne, or horne, which wil chap  
or rise from the sound skinne, and with a sharpe Knife  
cut away all the dead hard skinne from the sound  
flesh: and if when it is cut out, the hollownesse bee  
somewhat deepe, then you shall heale it up by pow-  
ring hot molten Butter into it evening and morning,  
then when the flesh is made even, dry and  
skinne it either with the powder of Honey and Lime,  
or with Soote and Creame mixt together. Others  
use first to annoynt the Stickfast or hard skinne with  
fresh Butter or Hogges grease, untill it be molten and  
made soft, so as you may either cut them, or  
pull them away, and then wash the wound either  
with mans Urine, or with white Wine, and then dry  
it up with the powder of Oyster-shells, or of Bolear-  
monieke.

#### CHAP. LI.

##### *Of Wennes or Knobs growing about the Saddle Skirts.*

**T**He Wennes or Knobbes which grow about the  
saddle skirts, doe most commonly grow betwixt  
two ribs, and doe ever proceed of old bruiſes. And the  
cure is, first to mollifie them by annoynting them  
twice or thrice a day with Hogges grease, for more  
then a weeke together, and sometimes to bathe them  
with hot Wine Lees, but if in that space it wil come  
to no head, then launce it from the middle downe-  
wards, and taint it with washed Turpentine, yolkes of  
egges and Saffron mingled as well together as is be-  
fore shewed, renewing the taint every day once, until  
the

the sore be sufficiently and perfectly healed. Look into the cure for the Splint, and what cureth that, helpeth this.

### CHAP. LII.

#### Of the Navel-gall.

**T**He Navel-gall is when a horse at times is bruised on the top of the Chine of the backe, behind the saddle, right against the Navell, whence it taketh the name, it commeth either by splitting of the saddle behind, or for lacke of stuffing, or by meanes of the Crupper buckle sitting downe in that place, or through some hard Weight or Knobs lying directly behind the Saddle: of all bruifings on the backe, it is the most vile and dangerous, and you shall perceive it by the puffed up and spungie flesh looking like old rotten Lights about the mouth of the sore. The cure thereof is, according to some of the ancient *Farriers*, first to cut away all the dead or proud flesh even to the bone, then burne a hole foure inches lower then the Navil-gall, and put a rowell of horse haire through it: then take the powder of Oyster-shells, or of an old shooe-sole burnt, and strow it on the sore, and ever as it waxeth moylt, put on more powder.

Other *Farriers* for the Navel-gal take the white of an egge, wheate flowre, honey, mustard, and sope of each like quantity, and mixing them together, make a plaister thereof, and after the dead flesh is taken out, and the sore washt with Ale, Butter, and Urine, then lay on the plaister: and if the proud flesh be-



gin to grow againe, then the powder of an old burnt shoe, or Nerve oyle, or Verdigrease wil kill it, and the powder of Oyſter-ſhells will ſkin it. Other of the ancient Farriers uſe, after they have cut out all the Rotten and dead fleſh, to take the white of an Egge, and Salt beaten together, and lay that plaſter-wiſe to the ſore upon a little Tow, renewing it once a day the ſpace of two dayes, then take of honey a quarterne of a pint, and of Verdigrease one ounce beaten into powder, and boyle them together in a pot, ſtirring it ſtil untill it looke red, and being luke-warme, make a plaſter with Tow, and clap it to the wound, waſhing and cleaſing wel the wound firſt with a little warme Vineger or white wine, continuing ſo to doe once a day untill it begin to heale and to ſkinne: then dry it up by ſprinkling thereon this powder following: Take of honey a quarterne, and as much of unſlecked Lime as will thicken the honey, and make it like a paſte, and in a fire panne over the fire, ſtir it ſtil untill it be hard baked, ſo as it may be beaten into powder: but ever before you throw on the powder, waſh the wound firſt with warme Vineger, continuing ſo to doe untill it be perfectly ſkinned. Others uſe to heale this Gal by laying on the ſore, a plaſter of Chimney ſoot and Barne mixt together, or elſe mixe Nettle ſeeds and Sallet oyle together, and annoynt the ſore therewith.

There be others which uſe onely to waſh the ſore with warme Urine and Salt, and then annoynt the place with freſh greaſe and ſalt mixt together, or elſe to take of Betony, powder of Brimſtone, Elibor, pitch, and old greaſe, of each like quantity, and ſtamp them together,

together, and when you have washed the sore with old Urine, then annoynt it with this oyntment until it be whole. See also for this disease in the new Additions for the Fistula, marked G.

## CHAP. LIII.

*Of the swaying in the backe.*

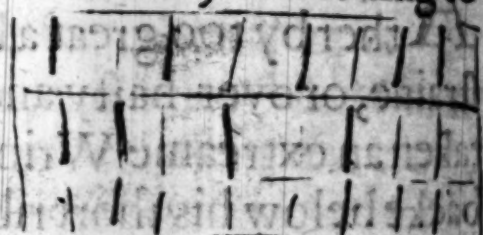
A Horse is said to be swaid in the backe, when either by too great a burthen, or by some slippe, straine, or over-hasty and straight turning, he hath taken an extreame Wrinch in the lower part of his backe below his short ribbes, and directly betweene his fillets: the signes whereof are a continual reeling and rolling of the horses hinder parts in his going, and also he wil folter many times, and sway sometimes backwards, and sometimes sidelong, and bee ready to fall even to the ground, besides, the horse being layd, will with a great deale of difficulty rise up againe.

The cure, according to the opinion of the old *Italian Farriers*, is, to take of the fat of the fruite of the Pine-tree two ounces, of Olibanum three ounces, or Rozen foure ounces, of Pitch foure ounces, of Bole-armonicke one ounce; and of *Sanguis Draconis* halfe an ounce: incorporate all these well together, and lay it playster-wise all over the Reines of the horses backe, not taking it by any meanes away until it fall off.

Others of our owne *Farriers* use first to cover the horses backe with a sheeps skinne comming hot from the Sheeps backe, laying the fleshy side next to his backe,



backe, and then lay a warme houffing cloath upon the same, to keepe his backe as hot as may be, and so let it continue until it begin to smel: then take the olde skin away, and apply a new unto it, continuing so to doe the space of three weekes, and if he amend not with this, then draw his backe with a hot Iron, right out on both sides of the ridge of his backe, from the pitch of the buttocke, unto a handfull within the saddle: and then againe over-thwart, according to this Figure, and let every



Line be an inch one from another, neither let the stroke be deepe, and burned no more then that every one may looke yellow: then lay upon the burning this charge or plaister: Take of Pitch one pound, of Rozen halfe a pound, of Bole-armonick halfe a pound made into powder, and halfe a pint of Tarre, and boyle al these together in a pot, and stirre it till every thing be molten and thoroughly mingled together, then being luke-warme, daube all the burning therewith very thicke, and thereupon clap as many flockes of the hortes colour as you can make to abide on, and remoove it not before fall away of it selfe: and if it be in Summer you may turne the horse to grasse.

## CHAP. LIIII.

*Of speciall weaknesse in the Backe.*

According to the opinion of our oldest Farriers, (though my selfe have taken little notice of the infirmity) there is another kind of weaknesse belonging

ging to a horses backe, which they call the fretting or biting of the Reines, which doth proceed from abundance of humours resorting to that place, whereby al the hinder parts of the Horse doe loose their feeling and strength, and the Horse falleth downe to the ground: yea, and such humours many times resorting to the heart, doe suffocate the same, and in two or three houres doe cause the horse to dye. The cure, according to the opinion, is first to let the horse blood abundantly in the necke-veine, and to draw his backe with a hot Iron, in such sort, as is deeleared in the last Chapter, and then to make him swim a pretty while in some River: then Rowel him upon the haunches neere unto the huckle-bones, and then to annoynt the sore place with Hogs grease, and three leaved Grasse stamped together until he be whole.

## CHAP. LV.

*Of the swelling of the Cods or Stones.*

**T**His kinde of swelling or inflammation of the cods commeth either by some wound received, or by the stinging, or else biting of some venomous beast, or else by some great straine, either in running or leaping, or by the biting of one horse with another. The cure is, according to the opinion of the most ancient *Italian Farriers*, first to bathe the Cod with water, wherein hath beene sodden the rootes of wild Cowcumbers and Salt, and then to annoynt it with an oyntment made of oyle, Goats grease, and



the white of an Egge, or else to bathe the Cod in warme water, Nitrum, and Vineger mingled together, and also to bee annoynted with an oynment made of *Chalke*, or of Potters earth, Oxè dung, Comin, Water and Vineger mingled together: or else to be annoynted with the juyce of the Hearbe called *Night-shade*, or with the juyce of *Hemlocke*, which growes on dunghils: and if neede require, to let him blood on the flanke-veines. But our latter Farriers, who hold that this Disease cometh ofttest after some sicknesse or surfeit with cold, being a signe of amendment from that sicknesse, doth cure it in this sort: take of Beane flower, Wheat-meale, Comin, and hogges grease, of each like quantity, and making a plaister thereof, spread it al over the Horses cods and stones. Others boyle Grundfel in Wine Vineger, and so bathe the hortes cods therewith: or else take a quart of good Ale wort, and set it on the fire with crummes of browne Bread strongly leavened, and better then a handfull of Comin made into powder: then with beane flowre make a plaister of them al, and apply it to the grieffe as hot as can be suffered: or if this helpe not, take Cowes dung, and seeth it in milke, and lay it upon the swelling as hot as may bee, and it wil asswade it. But if this inflammation proceed from ranknesse of Seede, which you shal see by the much moyst sliminesse of his yard, then you shal first make him cover a Mare, then keepe him without Provender, and let him blood above the great veine, which is betweene his lippes, and lay thereto hard Egges, beaten in his owne dung, and make a plaister of the same and lay it

to his Cods, and once a day wash his Cods with cold water.

Other ancient Farriers use to let the horse blood in his flanke-veines, and then take of oyle of Roses and of Vineger, of each halfe a pint, of Bolearmonicke halfe a quarterne beaten to powder, mixe them together in a cruze, and being luke-warme annoynt the coddles therewith, with two or three feathers bound together: and the next day ride him into the water, so as his Coddles may bee within the Water, giving him a turne or two therein, and so returne faire and softly home unto the stable: and when the horse is dry, annoynt him againe as before, and doe this every day until the horse bee whole.

Now there be other Farriers, which hold that this disease may come by meanes of evill humours and corrupt blood, which resort unto the Cods, and then the cure is to cover all the Coddles over with a charge made of Bolearmonicke and vineger wrought together, renewing it every day once untill the swelling goe away, or that it breake of it selfe, and if it breake, then to taint it with *Acet. Rosatum*, and make him a breech of Canyas to keepe it in, renewing the taint every day once untill it be perfectly well.

CHAP.



## CHAP. LVI

*Of incording, or bursting, or the rupture.*

**T**His Rupture, or as our old *Farrriers* call it, this incording or burstinesse in horses, is when the rim or thin filme which holdeth the guts up in a horses body is broken, so that the guts falleth downe either into the Cods of the horse, or into the horses flanke, as I have seene divers: Now this burstinesse commeth either by some stripe or blow of another horse, or else by some straine in leaping over a Hedge or a Ditch, or by teaching a horse to bound when hee is too young, or when a Horse goeth himselfe upon some Pole or Stake, or by forcing a horse when hee is full to run beyond his strength, or by stopping a horse too suddainely upon naughty and hollow ground, whereby the stradling and slipping of his hinder feet, may stretch or teare the rimme.

The signes to know this Sorrance before it be apparant to the eye, are: the Horse will forsake his meate, and stand shoaring or leaning alwaies on that side that hee is hurt, and on that side, if you search with your hand, betwixt the stone and the thigh, upward to the body, and somewhat above the stone, you shall finde the guts it selfe bigge and hard in the feeling: Whereas on the other side you shall finde no such thing.

Now for the cure, although for mine owne part,

Both doe and shall ever hold it incurable, as long as a horse is a beast without reason, yet for your satisfaction I will not sticke to repeate what the best Farriers, and my selfe, have practised, in as much as it worketh much good, though no absolute cure.

The cure then is, to bring the horse into some house or place which hath over-head a strong baulke or beam going over-thwart, and strow that place thicke with straw, then put on foure strong pasternes with foure rings on his feete, and fasten one end of a long rope to one of those rings, then threede all the other rings with the loose end of the roope, and so draw all his foure feete together, and cast him on the straw, that done cast the rope over the Baulke, and hoyft the horse so as he may lye flat on his back, with his legges upward without strugling; then bathe his stones well with warme water and butter molten together, and the stones beeing somewhat warme and well mollified, raise them up from the body with both your hands, being closed by the fingers close together, and holding the stones in your hands in such manner, worke downe the gut into the body of the horse, by striking it downewards continually with your two thumbs, one labouring immediately after another, until you perceiue that side of the stone to bee so smal as the other: and so having returned the gut into his right place, take a List of two fingers broad, thoroughly anoynted with fresh Butter, and tye his stones both together with the same, so nigh the body as may be, yet not over hard, but so as you may put your finger betwixt that done, take the horse quietly downe, and lead him gently  
into



into the stable, where he must stand warme, and not be stirred for the space of three Weekes: but forget not the next day, after you have placed his gut in his true place, to unloosen the List and to take it away, and as well at that time, as every day once or twice after, to cast a dish or two of cold water up into his cods, and that will make him to shrink up his stones, and thereby restraints the Gut from falling downe; and at the three weekes end, to make your cure so much the surer, it were not amisse to geld the stone on that side away, so shall hee hardly be bursten againe on that side: and during the cure let him not eat much, nor drinke much, and let his drinke be alwaies warme.

#### CHAP. LVII.

##### *Of the Botch in the groines of a horse.*

**I**T is the opinion of the best Horse-leaches, that if a grosse horse which is full of humours, be suddenly and violently laboured, that then the humours will resort into the weakest part, and there gather together and breede a botch, and specially in the hinder parts betwixt the Thighes, not farre from the Cods. The signes are, the hinder legges will be all swolne, specially from the cambrels or hooles upward, and if you feele with your hand you shall finde a great knob or swelling, and if it be round and hard, it will gather to a head.

✿ The cure according to the generall practice is, first to ripen it with this plaister, take of wheate flowre, of Turpentine, and of honey of each like quantity; stir-  
ring

ring it together to make a stiffe plaister: and with a cloath lay it to the sore, renewing it every day once until it brtake or waxe soft: and then Launce it, so as the matter may runne downeward; then taint it with Turpentine and hogges grease molten together, renewing it every day once, until it be perfectly whole.

### CHAP. LVIII.

*A most certaine and approved cure for  
Botch in the Groine, or any Im-  
postumation.*

**A**S soon as you perceive the swelling to appeare, lay upon it a plaister of Shooe-makers Waxe spread upon Allome leather, and let it lye untill the sore grow soft: then open it with a Lancet, or let it breake of it selfe: when the filth is come out, wash the sore very wel with strong a Allome Water, then taint it with the oyntment called *Aegyptiacum* till it be whole.

### CHAP. LIX.

*Of the Itch, Scab, or Manginess in the Tayle or  
generall falling of the haire.*

**H**Orses, through the corruption of blood, or the fulnesse of ranke feeding, or through overheating and labouring, or by the infection of other horses, doe many times get the generall Scab, Itch, or Manginess in the Taile, and sometimes in the Spring times horses are often troubled with the Truncheon Wormes



into the stable, where he must stand warme, and not be stirred for the space of three Weekes: but forget not the next day, after you have placed his gut in his true place, to unloosen the List and to take it away, and as well at that time, as every day once or twice after, to cast a dish or two of cold water up into his cods, and that will make him to shrink up his stones, and thereby restraints the Gut from falling downe; and at the three weekes end, to make your cure so much the surer, it were not amisse to geld the stone on that side away, so shall hee hardly be bursten againe on that side: and during the cure let him not eat much, nor drinke much, and let his drinke be alwaies warme.

#### CHAP. LVII.

##### *Of the Botch in the groines of a horse.*

**I**T is the opinion of the best Horse-leaches, that if a grosse horse which is full of humours, bee suddenly and violently laboured, that then the humours will resort into the weakest part, and there gather together and breede a botch, and specially in the hinder parts betwixt the Thighes, not farre from the Cods. The signes are, the hinder legges will be all swolne, specially from the cambrels or hooles upward, and if you feele with your hand you shall finde a great knob or swelling, and if it be round and hard, it will gather to a head.

✶ The cure according to the generall practice is, first to ripen it with this plaister, take of wheate flowre, of Turpentine, and of honey of each like quantity; stir-  
ring

ring it together to make a stiffe plaister: and with a cloath lay it to the sore, renewing it every day once until it brtacke or waxe soft: and then Launce it, so as the matter may runne downeward; then taint it with Turpentine and hogges grease molten together, renewing it every day once, until it be perfectly whole.

### CHAP. LVIII.

*A most certaine and approved cure for*

*Botch in the Groine, or any Impostumation.*

**A**S soon as you perceive the swelling to appeare, lay upon it a plaister of Shooe-makers Waxe spread upon Allome leather, and let it lye untill the sore grow soft: then open it with a Lancet, or let it breake of it selfe: when the filth is come out, wash the sore very wel with strong a Allome Water, then taint it with the oyntment called *Aegiptiacum* till it be whole.

### CHAP. LIX.

*Of the Itch, Scab, or Manginess in the Tayle or generall falling of the haire.*

**H**Orses, through the corruption of blood, or the fulnesse of ranke feeding, or through overheating and labouring, or by the infection of other horses, doe many times get the generall Scab, Itch, or Manginess in the Taile, and sometimes in the Spring times horses are often troubled with the Truncheon Wormes



Wormes in their fundament, which wil make them rubbe their tailes, and fret the haire, yet are free both from mange and scurfe. Wherefore if then you onely take the horse with your hand annoynted with sope and pull out the Wormes, you shall cause the horse to leave his rubbing: but if you perceive the haire to shed and fall from the Tayle, through some smal Wormes that growes at the rootes of the haire, or through some little fretting scurfe, then you shall annoynt all the Tayle with sope even to the ground, and then wash it with very strong lye after, and that wil both kil the Wormes, and scour out the scurfe: but if much of the tayle bee false away, then you shall keepe the tayle continually wet with a sponge dipt in faire water, and that will make the haire to grow very fast. Now if in the horses tayle shall grow any Canker which will consume both the flesh and bone, and make the joynts to fall away one by one; then you shall wash his tayle with *Aqua fortis*, or strong water made in this sort. Take of greene Copperus and of Allome, of each one pound, of white Copperus a quarterne, boyle all these together in three quarts of running water, in a very strong earthen pot, until the one halfe be consumed: and then with a little of this Water being made luke-warme, wash his tayle with a little clout, or flaxe bound to the end of a sticke, continuing so to doe every day once till it be whole. But if as I said before, through the corruption of blood, food, or labour, this scab itch, or mangle, spread universally into many parts of the taile, you shall then likewise wash it with the same strong water, until it be whole.

## CHAP. LX.

*Of the generall Scab, Manginess, or Leprosie,  
over the whole body.*

**T**He generall Manginess or Leprosie, which runneth al over the horses body, is a cankered filthy scurfe which covereth the same, proceeding from abundance of melancholy corrupt blood, ingendred by affection or unwholesome food, or else by indiscreet labour. The signes whereof are, the horse will bee all mangy, and covered over with a white filthy scurfe, full of scabs, and raw plots about the necke and flanks, and evill favoured to looke on, and rubbing, scratching, and biting: Of all diseases there is none more infectious, nor wil more certainly kil a horse if it be not prevented.

Now the cure, according to the opinion of skilfull *Farriers*, is first to let the horse blood in the one side of the necke-veine, and within two dayes after on the other side of the necke, and within two dayes after that, in the flanke-veines, and last of all in the veine under the tayle: then wash all the sore places with Salt brine, and rubbing them hard with a wispe of straw hard twisted, so as they may bleed wel and be all raw: that done, anoynt the places with this oyntment; take of *Quick-silver* one ounce, of Hogges grease one pound, of Brimstone beaten into powder a quarterne, of Rape oyle a pint, mingle these things well together, untill the *Quick-silver* be thoroughly incorporated with the rest, and having annoynted all the raw places with this oyntment, make it to sinke into the flesh, by holding and waving up  
and



and downe over it, a hot broad bar of iron, and then touch him no more againe the space of two or three dayes: during which time, if you see that hee rubbeth still in any place, then rub the place againe with an old Horfe-combe, or a haire-cloath, to make it raw, and annoynt it with fresh oyntment. But if all this will not helpe, then with a hot Iron round and blunt at the poynt, so big as a mans little finger, burne all the mangy places, making round holes, passing on-ly through the skin and no further: for which intent it shall be needful to pul the skinne first from the flesh with your left hand, holding it stil until you have thrust the hot Iron through it, and let every hole be a spanne one from another, and if neede be you may annoynt those holes with a little Sope, and let the horse bee very thinne dyeted, during this curing time.

✶ Now for mine owne part, I do utterly dislike this burning, for it is a foule manner of cure, and breedeth much eye-sore in the horse, and therefore other of our latter *Farriers* use for this disease, after the horse is let blood in the necke-veine, to take a good quantity of fresh grease, and mixe it well with the powder of *Chalke*, then put thereto a good quantity of the powders of Brimstone and Elicampane rootes, and stirre them all well together, then take a pretty quantity of *Quick-silver*, and kil it with your fasting spittle, or sallet oyle, and mixe it with al the rest very well together, and so anoynt al the sore places about the horse with this oyntment. Others use to take of Lampe oyle, the fine powder of Brimstone, of blacke Sope, of Tar, of hogs grease, and the soote of a Chimney,

ney, of each like quantity, and then mixe them all wel together, by boyling them on the fire, and then annoynt all the fore places therewith, as hot as the horse can endure or suffer it, alwaies provided that the horse be let blood before you use the oyntment.

Others use after the horse is let blood, to take of oyle de Bay a pound, and of Quick-silver one ounce, and mixing them together, never leave stirring thereof, till the Quick-silver bee kild and incorporated with the oyle, then annoynt al the fore places therewith, after you have made them raw by rubbing them.

Other Farriers use first to let the horse blood, then to wash all the fore places within two dayes after, with water wherein yong Broome, or the hearbe of Arsmart hath beene wel sod in, and smally chopt and mixt with a little foote, and rubbe him well untill the fore places bleed; then take a pound of blacke Sope, a pottle of keene Mustard, foure penyworth of Brimstone made into powder, three penyworth of Quick-silver well killed with fresh grease, two penyworth of Verdigrease, a quarter of a pint of grease, stir al these together in a vessell, till the grease and other things be molten with labour, and without fire, and therewithall annoynt all the fore places and with once anoynting, and twice washing, this wil cure him.

Other Farriers use, if the horse bee yong, to let him blood on both sides the necke, and then to cut the skinne downe the midst of his fore-head two fingers in length, then with a cornet open the skin an  
Z inch



inch wide on both sides the slit, and put therein thin slices of the greene roote of *Elicampne*, or *Angelica*, which is better: so let them remaine under the skinne till the matter rot, then crush it forth after two or three dayes, and in twelve dayes the rootes wil fall out as it healeth, and this wil cure the Mange, provided, that you annoynt all the fore places with the powder of brimstone, verdigrease, and oyle olive, mixt upon a fire very well together. Others use after blood-letting, to rowell the horse under the necke, that the evill humours may issue forth, then to rubbe all his body quite over with an hard haire cloath, or an old curry combe, until the horse bleedeth: after that take of Sulphure, Salt, and Tartar, of each a like quantity, beate them and temper them with very strong vinegar, and as much common oyle, and therewith annoynt all the fore places: or else take very strong Wine vinegar, the urine of a boy under twelve yeares of age, and the juyce of Hemlocke, mixe them together, and wash the horse therewithal.

Other *Farriers* use after blood-letting, to annoynt the horse with one of these Oyntments, the sore having bin before rubbed till it bleed, either with brimstone, Oyle, Vineger, Salt, Soote, Swines dung, and unsleckt Lime, of each like quantity, well mixt and boyled together, or else with brine Water sod with nettles, or else with Vineger, Allome, and Salt-niter boyled together, or else wash the sore with Beefe-broath, then boyle Pepper beaten to powder, Verdigrease, and Chervel in fresh grease, and annoynt the horse all over therewith, holding a Chaffing-dish  
and

and coales, or a hot bar of Iron to his body, to make the oyntment sinke in.

Lastly and as good as any of the rest, after the horse hath bin let blood, take an old carry combe, or a wool card, and rub every sore place about the horse till it bleed, then take of the oldest pisse you can get, a pottle, and of greene Copperus three quarters of a pound; mixe and stir them wel together; then set them on the fire, and boyle them a while, then as hot as the horse can suffer it wash him with the same: after his washing is a little dried, take of oyle one ounce and an halfe, of Quick-silver two ounces, of white *Elleborus* one ounce, with a good quantity of Swines grease, mingle all these well together, till no part of the Quick-silver can be scene, and then annoynt the horse all therewith: and if the first time doe not cure him, the second will most assuredly, provided that during the time of cure you keepe the horse with a very thin dyet.

#### CHAP. LXI.

*Two most excellent and approoved medicines (especially the latter) for the foulest Mangy or Leprosie, that can possibly happen to any horse.*

**T**Ake Hogges grease; Bay-salt, Wormwood, and Rew of each a pretty quantity, stampe them together wel in a mortar, and when it is brought to one entyre salve, stoppe it hard into the horses Eares, then either bind them up, or stitch them together, that the medicine may not fall out: and doe thus three or foure dayes together, and it will not onely



cure the Mangy, but any foule Farcy whatsoever.

The second medicine, and most assured for the Mangy is, to take fresh grease, and yellow or white *Arsnicke*, and mixe them very well together till it come to a pale yellow salve, then your horse having bin let blood, and all the skurfe taken away, either with an old curry combe, or such like hard thing, so as the sore places may lye raw, then annoynt them all over with this oyntment, and let the horse stand so tyed, that he may by no meanes touch any part of his body with his mouth, and when he hath stood thus two or three houres, then take old Urine warmed, and wash away all the oyntment, and then give the horse his meate: thus dresse the horse twice or thrice at the most, and it is sufficient for any Mangy whatsoever.

#### CHAP. LXII.

*How to know when a horse halteth before, and in what part his grieve is.*

There is nothing more necessary for any mans understanding that shall have occasion at any time to use a Horse, especially for the skilful *Farrier*, then to know the reason why a horse halteth, and where the grieve remaineth, as well because those griefes lye most concealed, as also because our Kingdome is so very full of subtill unconscionable horse-courfers, that they are carefull most to conceale that which may soonest cozen their Neighbours: you shall know then that no horse halteth before, but his grieve must bee either in his shoulders, in his legs,

or

or in his feete: if it be in his shoulders, it must either be on the toppe of his shoulder blades, which we call the Withers, or at the bottome of the shoulder blade joyning to the marrow-bone, which is the fore-pitch of the breast, or in the Elbow of the horse, which joynes the nether end of the marrow-bone and the leg together.

Now for the generall knowledge whether the grieve be in the shoulder or no, looke if the horse doe not lift up his legge, but traileth it upon the ground, then it is in the shoulder and is a new hurt: if hee cast his legge more out in his going then the other, and that almost with an unbended knee, then it is also in the shoulder, and it is an old hurt: if you take him by the headstall of the bridle, and turne him as short as you can possible of both hands, if then you see him when he is turned on the lame side, to favour his legge very much (as hee cannot chuse but doe) then also his grieve is in his shoulder: or if when a horse standeth in the stable, he stretcheth out his fore leg, and setteth it more forward then the other, it is partly a signe the grieve is in the shoulder, but not absolutely.

Now when you know generally that the grieve or paine is in the shoulder, then you shall learne to know in what part of the shoulder, as thus: if the horse halteth more when the rider is upon his backe, then when is off, then the grieve is in the top of the Withers: if when with your hand you gripe and handle him upon the top of the shoulder blades, you finde that he shrinketh much, and offereth to bite at you (not having had any gaid backe before, for that



may deceive you) then assuredly the griefe is on the Withers. If the horse goeth bowing unto the ground and tread his steps very thicke, then it is a signe the griefe is in his breast, betweene the nether part of the spade-bone, and the upper part of the marrow-bone, and therefore if with your thumbe you presse him hard in that part, you shall see him shrink, and be ready to fall downe.

Now if when you take his Elbow in your hand betwixt your finger and your thumbe, and gripe it, the horse presently taketh his foote from the ground and lifts up his legge, offering therewithall to bite or snappe at you, then the griefe is onely in the Elbow.

Now if the griefe whereof a horse halteth bee in his legge, it is either in his Knee, in his Shanke, or else in the Pastorne joynt: If it be either in his knee or Pastorne joynt, hee will not bow them in his going like the other, but will goe very stiffly upon them. If the paine or griefe bee in the Shanke, then it is by meanes of some Splent, screw, Windgall, or such apparant griefe, most apparant to bee beheld.

Now if the griefe of his halting be in his foot, then it is either in the Cronet, in the Heele, in the Toe, in the quarters, or in the sole of the foote; if it bee in the Cronet, either the griefe will be apparant, the skinne being broken or swolne some manner of way, or else laying your hand upon the Cronet it will burne and glow exceedingly, and then he hath got some straine of the joynt within the hooft: if it bee in the Heele, as by over-reach, or otherwise, then

it is to be seene, and he will tread altogether upon the toe: if upon any of the quarters, which is to bee under stood from the middle-hoofe to the heele, then going on the edge of a Banke or Hilly ground, hee will halt more then on the plaine ground, and by the Horses comming towards you, and going from you upon such edge or banke, you shall perceiue whether his griefe bee in the inward quarter or outward quarter: Also hee may halt upon his quarters by the pricking of an Nayle, and then you shal with a paire of pinsons nippe the head of every Nayle and his Hoofe together, and where hee complaineth there draw the Nayle, and if the Nayle sinke, then there is his paine. If hee halt in the toe, which is feldome or never seene, then he will tread altogether upon his Heele: If his griefe bee in the Sole of his Foote, as by the treading upon some Nayle or stubbe, or by surbayting, or such like, then he will halt all after one fort, upon any ground whatsoever, unlesse it be upon the stones, and then he will halt the most.

Now to be sure in what part of the foote the griefe is, it shall bee good, first to make him goe upon the plaine ground, and then upon a hard and stony way, and after upon a Bancky ground, and by taking careful notes, and carefully handling him, you shall easily see of what member he halteth.



## CHAP. LXIII.

*Of halting behind, and where the  
griefe is.*

**I**F a Horse halte behind, his griefe of necessity must  
Leyther be in his hippe. (of some called the huckle  
bone) or in the stiffe, in the Hough, in the Hamme,  
in the Legge, in the nether ioynt, in the pastorne, or  
in the foote. If hee halt in the hip of any new hurt,  
the Horse will go side-long, and not follow so well  
with that Legge as with the other, neyther will he be  
able to turne uppon that side without much favou-  
ring of his Legge: But if it be any old hurt, then the  
fore hippe will shrink, and bee lower then the other,  
and it is best seene when he goeth up a Hill, or upon  
the edge of some Banke, so as the worst Leg may  
goe on the higher side; for then hee will halte so  
much the more, because it is very painefull unto him  
to go so unevenly wrinching his Legge; if the griefe  
bee in the stiffe, then the Horse in his going wil cast  
the stiffe ioynt outward, and the bone on the inside  
will be somewhat bigger then the other, neither can  
hee any more then touch the ground with his toe:  
if his griefe be in the hough, then it is by means of  
some Spaven, which is apparant both to bee seene  
and felt, or else of some strayne or blow: and then  
the swelling will most evidently appeare: And  
the like is to be sayd of the Hamme, wherein may  
be seene the Sellander, or such like apparant Sor-  
rance, causing the Horse to halt: If the griefe bee  
eyther

either in the Legge, Pastorne, or Foot, you shall finde it by such signes as have bin taught you in the former Chapter.

### CHAP. LXIIII.

*How to know if a horse have any hidden grieve  
in him that maketh him to halt, when  
he commeth to travaile, and  
whence it proceedes.*

NOW for as much as there are some horses which through long rest and running at Grasse, will weare out the worst of their griefes, so that when they come to bee but gently ridden they will cover their halting, and through a naturall awe they beare unto the man, will, whilst he is on their backs, goe as if they were as sound as might bee, yet be truely of themselves very unperfect: in this case, both to keepe your selfe from couzening, and to discover the most hidden infirmity, you shall first take the horse out of the stable in a long string, and causing one to runne him in his hand, at the length of the halter, marke how he sets downe his Legs, for if any be imperfect, then that he will favour: but if at first he go upright, and favour no Leg, then take his backe and ride him a while roundly up and downe a rode, then light from his backe, and let him stand stil an houre, then as before, let him be runne in a mans hand, at the halters length, without any man on his backe: and beleewe it as a most certaine rule, if he have the least grieve that may be, he wil then shew it, and favour  
your



vour that limbe which is most pained or grieved: for by this rule onely are many bad Horse-courfers discovered.

Now to know whereof these griefes proceede, you shall understand that if the griefe proceede of a hot cause, then the horse halteth most when hee travel-  
leth, or is chaft. But if it proceed from cold causes, then he halteth most when hee is cold, and least when he is hot and much travailed.

#### CHAP. LXV,

#### *Of the griefe and pinching in the shoulder*

**T**HE griefe or pinching of the horses shoulder, commeth either by labouring and straining the horse too young, or by the carriage of two great burthens. It is to be knowne by the narrownesse of the breast, and by the Consumption of the flesh of the shoulders, in so much that the fore part of the shoulder-bone, will sticke out and bee much higher then the flesh, and if it bee of any longer continuance, he will be very hollow upon the Brisket towards the fore-boothes, and hee will goe wider beneath at the feete then at the knees. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of some *Farriers*, is to make a slit of an inch long, with a sharpe knife, upon both sides, an inch under the shoulder-bone, and blowing the skinne well from the flesh, with a Swannes quill, both of the one and the other shoulder, even up to the top of the Withers, and stroaking the Winde up equally with your hand, into both the shoulders, and then when they are full, sticke the Windy places

places with a Hazel sticke ouer al the shoulder ; then loosening the skinne from the flesh againe, Rowel both the slits, either with tampins of horse hayre, or with round peeces of the vpper Leather of an olde shooe, with a hole in the midst, which is called a French Rowel, for the matter to issue foorth at, and let the tampins bee at least two handfuls long in the skinne, and the round Rowel at least three inches broad, and being so put as they may lye plaine and flat within the cut, then once a day you shall turne the Rowels in the skin, and thrust out the matter : but if the hole grow so straight that the matter cannot easily come out, with a sharpe knife you shall enlarge it, then put a paire of Pastornes on his fore-legges, and so let him stand fifteene dayes, at the end whereof walke him abroad, and trye how hee goeth, and if he doe not goe to your liking, then continue him in the same manner other fifteene dayes, and he will goe sound.

But our best *Farriers* use, after they have Rowelled the horse, as is afore-said, then to lay this charge or plaister all over his Withers, shoulders, and brest: take of Pitch and Rozen, of each a pound. Of Tar halfe a pint, boyle all these together in a pot, and when it is somewhat cooled, take a sticke with a wollen cloth bound to the end of it, and dip it into the charge, and cover or daube all the shoulders therewith: that done clap floxe of the colour of the horse (or as neare as you can get it) upon the charge, and every other day make your Rowels cleane, and put them in againe, continuing thus to doe the space of fifteene dayes, then take out the Rowels, and heale up the wounds with



with two taints of flaxe dipt in Turpentine and Hogs greafe molten together, renewing the same every day once, untill the Wounds be whole, but let the charge lye stil until it fall away of it selfe; and if you let the Horfe runne at Graffe till hee have had a Frost or two, there is no question but hee will be a great deale the sounder.

There bee other *Farriers* which use to Rowell the Horfe, as is afore-sayd, yet crosse-wise, that is, one over-thwart the other, then draw all the shoulder over, with a hot drawing Iron in the comliest wise you can, making many scortches downe his shoulders: then annoynte both them and the Rowels once a day with sweete Butter, and walke the Horfe up and downe evening and morning, that the humours may flow to the sore places, and issue forth, and with your hands once a day, at the least, thrust out the matter: this cure is likewise to bee continued the space of fifteene dayes, and then the horse will be whole: yet for mine owne part, in so much as the cure is foule, I doe not much affect it.

#### CHAP. LXVI.

##### *Of the wrench in the shoulder.*

**T**HE Wrench or straine in the shoulder, commeth of some dangerous slipping or sliding, eyther in the Stable or abroad, or of too suddaine stopping, when a horse gallops, or by fals, eyther on the planks, or on slippery ground, or by too suddaine turning on unsure ground, or by going too rashly out of some doore, or by the stroake of another Horfe: you shall perceive

perceive it by his trailing his legge upon the ground close after him.

The cure is, to let him blood upon the plat-veine, and take away the quantity of three pints of blood, which blood you must save in a pot, and put thereunto, first of strong vineger a quart, and halfe a dozen broken egges, shels and all, and so much wheate flowre as wil thicken all the liquor; that done, put thereunto of *Bolearmonicke* beaten into fine powder, a pound of *Sanguis Draconis*, two ounces, and mingle them together so as the flowre may not bee perceived, and if it be too stiffe, you may adde a little more vineger; then with your hand daube all the shoulder from the maine downward, and betwixt the fore-bewels all against the haire, and let not the horse depart out of that place, untill the charge be surely fastned unto the skinn, that done, carry him into the stable, and tye him up to the racke, and suffer him not to lye downe all the day, and give him a little meate, dyeting him very moderately the space of fifteene dayes, during which time he may not stir out of his place, but onely to lye downe; and every day once refresh the shoulder point with this charge, laying still new upon the old; and at the fifteene daies end lead him abroad to see how he goeth, and if hee be somewhat amended, then let him rest without travelling the space of one month, and that will bring his shoulder to perfection: But if hee mend nothing at all, for all this that is done, then you shall rowel him; as is before shewed in the former Chapter, just upon the shoulder poynt, and so keepe him rowelled the space of fifteene dayes,  
not



not forgetting to stir the Rowel, and cleanse the Wound each other day, and then walke him up and downe faire and softly, and turne him alwaies on the contrary side to the sore: And when hee goeth upright pull out the rowel, and heale up the wound with Turpentine and hogges grease molten together, as is before said.

But if all this will not serve, then it shall be very requisite and needful to draw him Chequor wise with a hot Iron, over all the shoulder poynt, and also to make him to draw in a Plough every day, two or three houres at the least, to settle his joynts, for the space of three weekes or a month: and if any thing will helpe, these two last remedies wil set him sound.

Now there be other *Farriers* which for this grieve first let the horse blood in the breast-veine, and then rowell him from the nether part of the spade-bone downe to the poynt of the shonlder, which done, you shall set a patten shooe upon the sound foote, and so turne the horse to grasse for the space of a month, not forgetting every other day to stir and remoove the rowels, and so thrust out the matter: Then as soone as you see him goe sound, you shall take off his patten shooe, and pul out the rowels and then let him run still at grasse, till hee have taken a Frost or two, and no doubt but he will continue sound.

## CHAP. LXVII.

*Of the Wrench in the nether ioynt.*

**T**His wrench cammeth by treading his foote in some hole, or in some rough or stony way. The signes whereof are chiefly these; the horse will halt, and the toppe of his backe upon the poynts of his shoulder will be swolne, and somewhat hard to handle.

The cure is, take of blacke Sope halfe a pound, and having made it hot in a pan, take a handfull or two of Tow, and dip it into the sope, then lay it very hot over all the horse Withers, then clap a plaister of Waxe, Turpentine, and hogges grease molten together over it, then cover it with two or three warme cloathes, and keepe the joynts as warme as may be: thus let him stand twenty foure houres ere you dresse him againe, and continue this manner of dressing for fifteene dayes, and the horse will goe soundly.

Now there be other ancient Farriers, that instead of this blacke Sope will take Wine Lees, and Wheate flowre mingled together, and making a plaister thereof, lay it very hot to the grieved place, and so renew it once a day until the horse goe sound.

CHAP.



## CHAP. LXVIII.

*Of splaiting the shoulder, or of shoulder-torne.*

**T**He splaiting of the shoulder, is when by some dangerous slippe or slide, either upon the side of some banke, or upon the plaunchers, the horse hath his shoulder parted from his breast, and so leaves an open clift, not in the skinne, but in the flesh, and filme next the skinne, whereby the horse halteth and is not able to goe; it is to be seene by the trailing of his legge after him in going.

The cure whereof is thus, first put a paire of strait pastornes on his fore-feete, keeping him still in the stable without disquieting of him; then take of *Dialthea* one pound, of Sallet oyle one pint, of oyle de Bay halfe a pound, of fresh butter halfe a pound; melt all these things together in an earthen pot, and annoynt the grieved place therewith, and also round about the inside of the shoulder; and within two or three dayes after, both that place and all the shoulder will swell, then either pricke him with a Lancet or Fleame in al the swelling places, or else with a sharpe hot Iron, and then annoynt it still with the oyntment before said; but if you see that it will not goe away, but swell still, and gather to a head: then launce it where the swelling doth gather most, and is softest under the finger, and then taint it with flaxe dipt in Turpentine, and Hogs grease molten together as is before shewed, renewing the taint twice a day till the sorraine be whole.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXIX.  
*Of the Shoulder pighte.*

**T**He shoulder pighte is, when a horse by reason of some great fall, rush, or straine, hath the poynt of his shoulder thrust out of joynt, which is easie to be seene in that the poynt of the fore shoulder will sticke out much farther then the other, and the horse will halt downe right. The cure whereof, as the old *Farriers* hold it, is first to make him swimme in a deepe water, up and downe a dozen turnes, for that will make the joynt returne into his true place, then make two tough pins of Ashen wood as much as your little finger, being sharpe at the poynts, each one five inches long; that done, slit the skinne an inch above the poynt, and an inch beneath the poynt of the shoulder, and thrust in one of the pinnes from above downe-ward, so as both ends may equally sticke with the skinne; and if the pinne of wood will not easily passe through, you may make it way first with an iron pinne; that done, make other two holes crosse to the first holes, so as the other pinne may crosse the first pinne right in the midst, with a right crosse, and the first pin would be somewhat flat in the midst, to the intent that the other being round, may passe the better without stop, and close the iuster together; then take a peece of a little line somewhat bigger then a Whippe-cord, and at one end make a loope, which being put over one of the pins ends, winde the rest of the line good and straight about the pins ends, so as it may lye betwixt the pins ends

A a

and



and the skinne, and fasten the last end with a packe-needle and a packe-threed unto the rest of the cord, so as it may not flippe; and to doe well, both the pinnes and the cord would be first annoynted with a little hogges grease, then bring him into the stable, and let him rest the space of nine dayes; and let him lye downe as little as may bee, and put a pastorne on the fore-legge, so as it may bee bound with a cord unto the foote of the manger, to keepe that legge alwaies whilst hee standeth in the stable, more forward then the other, and at the nine daies end take out the pinnes and annoynt the fore place with a little *Dialthea*, or with hogges grease, and then turne him to grasse. Other of our latter Farriers, use first to lay good store of straw under the horse, and then put a paire of strong pastornes on his fore-legges, and another on his hinder, then having throwne him upon his backe, to hang him up by the legs from the ground, with two ropes drawne over some beame or baulke, which will put the bone into his true place againe, then having let him downe againe faire and softly, loose the fore-pastorne of the sound leege, and with a cord, before you let him rise, tye the same legge to the foote of the manger, so short as in his rising hee shall bee forced to hold his legge before him for feare of putting his shoulder out of joynt, and let him stand so tyed for the space of three daies; & presently when he is up, burne all the poynt of his shoulder with a hot drawing Iron Chequor-wise, a full foote square at the least, & let every stroke be no more then an inch distant one from another: and having burned him well, charge all these burned places

places, and all the rest of his shoulder with pitch, rozen, and tarre molten together, and layd on something hot with a cloth tyed to a stickes end; then clap floxe of the colour of the horse upon it, then charge him againe over the floxe, and at the three daies end loole his foote, and put a paire of Pastornes upon his feet, and let him neither lye downe, nor stirre out of the stable for the space of sixteene or twenty dayes: then may you leade him abroad, and see whether hee goe well or no, and if he be not perfect, you may then give him as much more rest, and that will recover him.

## CHAP. LXX.

*A generall and certaine cure for any desperate  
and incurable straine in the shoul-  
der or any other hidden  
parts.*

**T**AKE a large earthen vessell, and fill it full of the hearbe *Arswert* and *Brooke-lime* equally mixt together, then put in as much of the oldest and strongest urine that can bee got, as will cover the hearbes all over, then cover the pot close, and keepe it in some safe coole place.

Now when you have occasion to use it, take an earthen pipkin, and put therein both of the urine and the hearbes, so much as shall be convenient for the grieve, and boyle it well, then if it be for a shoulder straine, you shall take an old boote and cut off the foote that you may draw it over the horses foot,



and above his knee almost to the elbow of his shoulder, keeping the nether part of the boote as close about his legge as may bee, but the upper part wide and spacious, into this boote thrust all your mixture as hot as the horse can suffer it, and lay it fast and close about his shoulder, especially before and behind, then drawing the upper part of the boote, so fasten it to the maine of the horse that it may not slip downe: and thus doe once a day till the grieve depart, for this medicine is so violent, that if there be any foule matter that must come forth it will bring it to an head, ripen, breake, and heale it, if there be no such thing, then in as short time it will draw away the offending humours, and give present cause.

### CHAP. LXXI.

*Of the swelling of the fore-legges after great labour.*

**T**Hose horses that are not used to travell, wil after great labour swell upon their fore-legs, because heat and violent excesse wil cause humours to resort downe into the legges, especially if such horses shall be inwardly fat; for the indiscreete labour will melt that inward grease, and make it descend downe into the legges.

The cure, according to the practice of some Farriers, is, to take a pound of Nerve-oyle, a pound of blacke Sope, and halfe a pound of Boares grease molten, and boyle them all well together, and then

then straine it and let it coole, then annoynt your horses legges therewith being made luke-warme againe, and then keepe his legges cleane from dust. Other Farriers use to bathe his legges in butter and beere, or in vineger and butter; some with sheeps-feete oyle, some with neats-foote oyle, some with traine oyle, and some with pisse and salt-peeter boild together, of all which pisse and salt-peter is the best; and after any such bathing, you must roule up the horses legges with hay-ropes wet in cold water, even from the pastorne to the knee, but in any wise not too strait, for feare of doing hurt, so let him stand continually when he resteth.

Now other Farriers somewhat more curious, use for the swelling of the legges this bathe, take of Mallowes three handfuls, a Rose cake, of Sage one handfull, boyle them together in a sufficient quantity of water, and when the Mallowes be soft, put in halfe a pound of Butter, and halfe a pint of Sallet oyle, and then being somewhat warme, wash the swelling therewith every day once, the space of three or foure dayes; and if the swelling will not goe away with this, then take Wine-lees and Cummin, and boyle them together, and put thereunto a little wheate-flower and charge al the swelling therewith, and walke him often, and if all will not serve, then take up the great veine above the knee on the inside, suffering him not to bleede from above, but all from beneath: and it will take away the swelling.



## CHAP. LXXII.

*Of a horse that is foundred in his feete.*

**A** Horse is said to bee foundred of his feete, when he hath such a numbnesse, and pricking or tingling within his hofes, that hee hath neither sence nor feeling of his feete. but is in all respects like a man that be hard or crooked sitting hath both his feete a sleepe (as we call it) during which passion we know we can neither well goe nor stand; and even so it fa-  
 reth with a horse in this case, for the course of the blood being stopped, those obstructions causeth this torment. It commeth most commonly when a horse is very fat, and hath his grease moken within him, and then suddainly cooled by taking his saddle off to soone; or by standing still in the cold unstirred, or else by letting him stand in some shallow water little higher then his fet-lockes.

A horse may also be foundred by wearing straight and uneasie shoes, especially in the Summer season, when a horse travaileth upon the hard ground.

The signes to know it, is, the horse goeth crouching, and drawing all his foure feete within the compasse almost of a peeke, and will stand so fearefully as though he stood upon needles.

Now you shall understand, that a horse will sometimes be onely foundred of his fore-feete, and not of his hinder, which you shall know in that the horse will tread onely upon his hinder feete, and not

not on his fore-feete, and goe as though his buttockes would touch the ground; and sometimes he will bee foundred upon his hinder-feete, and not upon his fore-feete, and that you shall perceiue by his fearefulnesse to set his feete to the ground, beeing also so weake behind, that hee will stand quivering and quaking, and covet alwaies to lye downe, and sometimes he will be foundred of all his fore-feete, the signes whereof were first declared.

Now forasmuch as the cures be all of one and the selfe same nature, and what cureth the first, cureth also the rest, I will joyne them altogether, with this advice, that if you finde the horse to bee foundred of the fore-feete onely, then to apply your medicine to the fore-parts onely, if on the hinder feete, then to the hinder parts; but if of all foure feete, then to lay your medicine to all the severall parts of the body, as shall be presently declared.

To come then to the cures (according to the opinion of a worthy Knight well experienced in this disease) if your horse be foundred of all his foure Feete, you shall cause him to be let blood on his two brest-veines of his two fore-legges, somewhat above his knees, also you shall let him blood on his two spur-veines, and on the veines of his two hinder feete a little above the hoofe, betweene the hoofe and the pastorne: you shall let these veines bleed well to the quantity of a quart or three pints, which blood you must save in some vessell, and stirre it with a sticke to keepe it from clearing; and when it



hath bled as above said, put it all into one vessell, then stoppe the wounds with some horse-dung, or some earth, and make a charge with the blood in this sort: take as much Wheate meale, branne and all, as will make the blood somewhat thicke, and put it into the blood; take eight or tenne egges, and breake them also into this blood, shels and all; take a pint of strong vinegar, and a quantity of Bole-armonicke brayde, and put them into the blood also, which done, you shall stirre them altogether; then shall you with your hand lay the said charge all along upon the reines of the horses backe, upon his buttockes, and downe his shoulders: when you have laid on this charge thus, you shall take two long linnen rags dipped in the same charge, with which so dipped you shall garter the horse above the kees of his fore-legges somewhat hard, and likewise with two other like ragges so dipped; you shall garter him hard above both his hinder hooves also: that done, cause him to bee walked upon the hardest ground you can finde, for the space of two or three houres: if hee be loth to goe, as commonly hee will be, let one follow him, and beate him with a sticke or wand to force him to goe; then after this walking let him bee set up and tyed to the racke, that hee lye not downe, and there let him rest two or three houres; which done, let him be walked againe two or three houres more as aforesaid, then set him up, and let him feed; and when you give him drinke, which you may doe within two or three houres after his feeding, let it be a warme mash of malt and water, then let him feede a little after it, then ride him a little; and

and if you let him stand an houre or two in a poole or standing water up to the belly, and one upon his backe, it is good also, and after that ride him againe a little: then let him be set up well dressed and covered, and so by little and little ride him a day or two, and then may you boldly journey him, for it is riding that bringeth the horse to the perfectnesse of his feete, and you shall find your horse as sound as ever he was.

Now during this cure, you are to take these observations in your memory.

First, you shall not need to remove or stir the horses shooes; then you must after twenty foure houres, rub off the charge from the horse backe.

*Item*, You shall take away his garters after twelve houres, and rub his knees and hooftes with your hand, and with wispes, to take away the numbnesse.

*Item*, If you cannot get wheat meale, you may take oaten meale.

*Item*, If hee will not bleed in the veines before named, then you may take your blood from the neck-veine.

Lastly, if you take the horse in hand to cure within twenty foure houres after he is foundred, he will be found againe within twenty foure houres after; if he goe longer, the cure will be longer in doing.

Now the ancient Farriers of this kingdome, and amongst the *Italians*, differ not much in their practice from this already rehearsed, onely into the charge they adde of *Sanguis Draconis* halfe a quarterne, and as much beane flower, as wheat flower, and of Turpentine halfe a pound; then if they did see that within



in foure daies the horse did not recover, then they did know that the hurtfull humours did onely lye in the horses feete, and there you shall search his feete with your buteryffe, paring all the soles of his feete so thinne, that you may see the water issue through the sole: that done, let him blood at the toes, and let him bleed well; then stop the veine with Turpentine and hogges grease molten together, and laid upon a little flaxe, and then tack on his shoes, and cramme the place where you did let him blood hard with tow, to the intent it may be surely stopt; then fill all the soles of his feete with hogges grease and branne boyld or fryed together so hot as is possible, and upon that stopping clap a peece of leather, and two crosse splents, to keepe in the stopping: and immediately after this take two egges, and beate them in a dish, and put thereunto as much *Bolearmonicke* and beane flowre as will thicken the same, and mixe them well together, and make thereof two plaisters such as may close each foote round about somewhat above the cronit, and binde it fast with a list or a rowler, that it may not fall away nor be removed for the space of two dayes; but let the soles of his feet bee cleansed and new stopped every day once and the cronets to be removed every two dayes untill the horse bee sound; during which time let him rest unwalked for feare of loosening his hooftes: but if you that see he beginne to amend you may walke him faire and softly once a day upon some soft ground to exercise his legges and feete, and let him not eate much, nor drinke cold water, but if his foundring breake out above the hooft, which  
you

you shall perceive by the loosenesse of the Coffin above by the cronet, then when you pare the sole you must take all the fore part of the sole cleane away, leaving the heeles hole, to the intent the humours may have the freer passage downward, and then stop him, and dresse him about the cronet, as is before said. Now if the horse during this cure chance to fall sicke, or grow so dry in his body that he cannot dunge, then you shall first take him, and after give him a glister of Mallowes, three handfuls boyld in water from a pottle to a quart: then after it is strained, put to it halfe a pound of Butter, and a quarter of a pint of sallet oyle, and so administer it, then when the horse hath emptied his belly give him this comfortable drinke. Take of Malmsey a quart, and put thereunto a little cinamon, mace and pepper beaten into fine powder, & of oyle a quarter of a pint, and give the horse to drinke of that lukewarme; that done, let him bee walked up and downe a good while together if he be able to goe, if not, then tye him up to the racke, and let him bee hanged with canvas & ropes, so as he may stand upon the ground with his feete, for the lesse he lyeth downe the better; but these extremities doe seldome happen. Now there be other Farriers which for the foundring of a horse, onely take Verdigrease, Turpentine, sallet oyle, and hogges grease, of each like quantity, of waxe one ounce; boyle altogether, and so dippe flaxe or tow in it: then having pared his feete thinne, and let him blood on the soes, stoppe all his feete with that oyntment very hot: or else they take the rootes of nettles, and hemlocke, with elder pilles of each a handfull;



handfull; boyle them tender in Beares grease, or Hogges grease, so let him blood in the midst of the foote on the toe-veine; then bathe and chafe his joynt and leg therewithall about from his knee unto the tetrocke, and then clap it to, and binde a cloath fast to as hot as you can. So use this once a day till it be well.

Now for mine owne part, although there is not any of these former receited practises but are found perfectly good in their kindes, yet I have not found any so absolute either for old or new founders, as this which I shall rehearse. First, you shall with a very sharpe drawing knife, draw every part of the soles of the horses feete so thinne as is possible, even till you see the very water and blood issuing forth, and being sure to draw or pare every part alike, - which can hardly bee done with a butterys: then at the very sharpe end of the trush of the horses foote you shall see the veine lye, then with your knifes end lift up the hoofe and let the veine bleede (which as long as you hold open the hoofe will spin a great way forth) when it hath bled better then a pint, you shall close the hoofe and so stop the veine: then tack on his foote a hollow shoe made for that purpose: that done, clap a little Tow dipt in Hogges grease and Turpentine upon the veine very hard: then take two or three hard egges roasted, and comming burning hot out of the fire, and burst them in the sole of the horses foote: then powre upon them hogges grease, Turpentine, and tarre boyling hot, and as much flaxe dipt therein as will fill up the hollow shoe, then lay on a peece of

of leather to keepe all the rest in, and splint it sure: and this manner dresse his fore-feete, if all bee foundred, otherwise no more then are foundred; and thus you shall dresse the horse three times in one fortnight, and without any further trouble you shall be sure to have the horse as sound as ever he was.

Now if the horse be foundred through the straiting of a shooe, which in truth is not a founder, but a fretizing, which is a degree lesse then foundring, then you shall for that forrance, first take off his shooe, and let him blood on the toes, then stopping the place with bruised Sage, tack on his shooe againe, and stop it with Hogges grease and bran boyled together, as hot as is possible; and doe this once in one fortnight, and it will helpe him.

#### CHAP. LX XIII.


*Of the Splent as well on the inside of the knee as of any other part of the legge.*

**A** Splent to the outward feeling, is a very gristle, or rather a hard bone, sometimes as big as a hazle nut, sometimes as bigge a wal-nut, according to the age thereof, growing upon the inside of the fore-leg, betweene the knee and the upper pasterne joynt, and sometimes just underneath, and close unto the knee, which is of all other the most dangerous splent, and doth the soonest make a horse lame: it commeth by travelling a horse too young, or by ouerpressing him with heavy burthens, whereby the tender finewes of his legs are offended. Now for the knowledge thereof it is easie, because it is apparant unto



unto the eye, and most palpable to bee felt. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is to take an onion, and picking out the coare, put into it halfe a spoonfull of honey, and a quarter of a spoonfull of unsleet Lime, and foure pency-waight of Verdigrease; then closing up the onion, roast it in hot embers untill it bee soft: then bruisse it in a mortar, and as hot as the horse can suffer it, lay it to the splent, and it wil take it away, but in any case cut no skinne. Other of the ancient Farriers use first to wash the splent with warme water, and then to shave off the haire, and lightly to scarifie or pricke the skin with the poynt of a razor, so as the blood may issue forth: then take of *Cantarides* halfe a spoonfull, and of *Euforbium* as much, beaten into fine powder, and mingle them together with a spoonfull of oyle *de bay*, and then melt them in a little pan, stirring them wel together, so as they may not boyle over; and being so boyling hot, take two or three feathers and annoynt all the sore places therewith: that done, let not the horse stirre from the place where you so dresse him for an houre after, to the intent hee shake not off the oyntment: then carry him faire and softly into the stable, and tye him so as hee may not reach with his head beneath the manger: for otherwise hee will covet to bite away the smarting and pricking medicine; which if it should touch his lippes, would quickly fetch off the skinne; and also let him stand without litter all that day and night; the next day annoynt the sore place with fresh butter, continuing so to doe every day once for the space of nine dayes: for this will allay the heate of the

the medicine, and cause both that and the crust of the splent to fall away of it selfe. There bee other Farriers which use with a fine hot drawing Iron to burne the forrance downe in the midst the ful length of the splent, and then over-thwart, like this figure;

 then foure houres, after such burning take Cowes dung new made, and Sallet oyle mixt and well beaten together, and therewith annoynt all the sore places, and this must be done when the splent is very young.

Others use to slit the forrance with a knife the whole length of the splent, and then with a cornet to open the slit, and lay the splent bare; then to make about the wound a Coffin of clay, all open to the top; then take Boares grease made scalding hot, and powre it into the wound untill the Coffin bee full; then let it rest untill the grease be cold: after that let the horse rise, and this with once dressing will take the splent cleane away without any blemish or eyesore. Others use to beate the splent with a sticke, and to bruise it well, then pricke it with an awle, and thrust out the blood; then lay on a peece of white leather, and with a hot Iron make the grease scald it, or else melt into it pitch and verdigrease, and then lay a plaister of pitch over it, not removing it untill it fall off by it selfe; or else after you have beaten and prickt the splent, take out the coare of an onion, and fill it with Bay salt; then roast it soft, and lay it hot to the splent, and instead of the onion you may, if you will, bind to a hard roasted egge, beeing fire hot. Other Farriers use to slit the skinne the length of the splent, then to dippe a little peece o' linnen  
in



in warme Wine, and sprinkle Verdigrease thereon, and so lay it to the slit, renewing it once a day untill the splent bee gone. Others use to shave off the haire, and to rubbe the splent twice a day with Tarre very heard untill the splent bee gone; but this splent must bee very young and tender: for fasting spettle is as good as Tarre. Other Farriers use to take a blacke Snaile and slit her, and put in bay salt, and lay it to the splent being opened, renewing it once a day untill the splent bee gone: then let the veine above the knee be taken vp, and let it bleede from below, least it feede the splent againe. Others use if the splent be upon the knee, to burn it, as is before sayd; then take Wormewood, Smallage, Pillitory of the wall, and Branke Urfine stampd with Swines grease, and lay it to the burnings, provided that first the haire be shaved off, and if the splent be below the knee, this cure is good also, and much the safer.

Now after all these former recited practises, you shall understand that the most cleanliest way to take away a splent, is first, after you have cast your horse, with a hazell sticke of a pretty poyse and bignesse, gently to beate the splent at the first, and then by degrees a little harder and harder, till the splent grow soft in every part; then with the point of your Launcet let out all the blood and water; then take a bricke-bat, and having layde it on the fire, when it is exceeding hot, fold it in a redde cloth, and therewith rubbe the splent, and smooth it upon the toppe till you have dried away the blood, and that no more moysture cometh out; then take o pitch, of rosen, and masticke, of each a like quantity  
melt

melt them well together, and being very hot, lay it over and all about the splent: then clap floxe of the colour of the horses legge upon it, and so let it rest upon the splint untill it fall away of it selfe: and if when it is faine away, you perceive that any part of the splent remaine behinde, which hardly will bee if it bee orderly beaten, then you shall dresse that remainder as you did the other before, and the splent will perfectly be cured. Now for the surest and most certainest way to take off a splent is thus: with the poynt of a sharpe knife, make a slit of more then a barley corne length just upon the top in the midst of the splent, and let it be so deepe that you may bee sure that the bone of the splent is bare; then put into that slit with the poynt of the knife, as much *Mercury Sublimat* as the quarter of an hazel nut kinnell; and within three or foure dayes, it will so have eaten the splent; that it will fall out of it selfe; then you shall heale up the fore either with fresh butter molten, or with a plaister of Hogs grease and Turpentine mingled and melted together; onely in this cure you must beware that you tye the horse so, as for foure and twenty houres he may not touch the fore place with his mouth. Now in conclusion, I am to give you this small precept, to beare ever in your minde, that is both for the healing of this, and for all other tumours whatsoever. You must first stay the falling downe of new humours to the place troubled, as by binding plaisters; as pitch, rozen, masticke, red-lead, oyle, Bolus armonicke, and such like; then to draw out the matter which is there gathered, with drawing simples, as Waxe, Turpentine, and such like.



like : and lastly, to dry up the reliques with drying powders, as honey and lyme, oyster-shells, soote, and such like ; and also you must know, that all splents, spavens, or knobs, must either be taken away at the beginning, or after the full of the Moone.

### CHAP. LXXIII.

*An approved and certaine way to take away any Splint without breaking any haire.*

**T**Ake the roote of *Elicampane* well washed and cleansed, and lap it in a browne Paper, wet it and roast it in the hot embers, as you would roast a Warden : then as hot as the Horse can suffer it, (for I would not have you scald) after you have rubb and chafte the excresion, clap this unto it and bind it fast on, and in two or three dressings it will consume away the splint.

Also if morning and evening you rub the splint with the oyle of *Origanum* it will take it away.

### CHAP. LXXV.

*Of the Serew, or chorum Splent.*

**A**Lthough divers of our Farriers doe distinguish and make a difference betwixt a Serew and a Splent, saying, that the Serew is ever of the outside of the legge, as the splent is of the inside, yet it is most certaine, that the disease and infirmity is all one, and may as well be cald a splent on the outside of the legge, as a splent on the inside of the legge, and this splent on the outside is ever least dangerous.

Now

Now a horse many times will have both these splents at one time, and upon one leg; nay I have seene them so just opposite one to the other, that one would have thought they had gone through the horses legge; whence it hath come to passe that many foolish Farriers being of that minde, have intituled them a thorow splent; and I have seene my selfe some well reputed Farriers, that having the cure brought unto them, have refused the same, saying it was a thorow splent, and therefore most incurable; but the opinion is most absurd and ridiculous: for the shia bone being hollow, and ful of pitch and marrow, there can nothing grow through it, but it must confound the marrow, and then the bone cannot hold but must presently breake in sunder, especially when such a weake spongy substance as a splent is, shall possesse the whole strength of the legge. Now for the cure, as the splent and it are all one, so they have all one cure, and what helpeth the first, with more ease helpeth the latter, in as much as it is not full so dangerous, nor so neere the maine sinewes.

## CHAP. LXXVI.

*Of the Mallander.*

**A** Mallander is a kind of dry hard scab, growing in the forme of lines or strakes, overthwart the very bought or inward bent of the knee, and hath hard haire with stubborne rootes, like swines bristles, which corrupteth and cankereth the flesh, like the rootes of a chilles scapped head; and if the sore bee great and deepe, it will make the horse go stiffe at his



first setting forth, and halt much. It doth proceed either from the corruption of blood, or from negligent keeping, when the horse wanteth cleane dressing: for you shall know that some horses naturally are given to have long haire from the toppe of the bought of the knee downe to the fetlocke, and that haire in the bought of the knee is oft apt to curl, whereby those horses if they bee not very carefully and cleane kept, are much subject to this disease. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus. Take a barreld herring out of the pickle, with a soft Roe, and two Spoonefuls of blacke sope, and so much Allome; beate all these in a mortar well together, and then lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day for three dayes, and it will kill the Malender; provided alwaies, that before you lay any thing unto a Mallender, you ever pull off the dry scabbes first, and leave no haire growing within the sore. Other *Farriers* use to take a paring of Cheese, and roasting it very hot, anoynt it with honey, and so hot lay it to the Mallender, and renew it once a day untill the Mallender be whole: or else beate Hennes dung and Gilly flowers wel together, and lay it to the sore till it be whole.

Other Farriers use after they have washt the sore cleane with warme water, and shaved off the haire and the scabbes, to take a Spoonefull of sope, and as much lime; mingle them together that it may be like paste, then spread as much on a clout as will cover the sore, and binde it fast on with a list, renewing it every day once the space of two or three dayes; and at the three dayes end take away the playster, and anoynt

anoynt the fore with oyle of Roses made lukewarme, and that will fetch away scurfe or crusty asker, bred by meanes of the burning plaister: which scurfe being taken away, wash the fore place well every day once with his owne stale, or else with mans urine, and then immediately strow upon it the powder of burnt oyster shelles; continuing so to doe every day once untill it be whole.

Others of our latter Farriers use to take a quart of water, halfe a pint of oyle, and as much flower as will thicken it with seething; then lay that hot to the fore twice a day for foure dayes together; then take masticke, frankensence beaten to fine powder, quicksilver, kild either in the juyce of Lemons, or in strong vinegar; of each an ounce; then of *Litergie* halfe an ounce; of *Ceruse* ten ounces, and as much of swines grease clarified; incorporate and mingle all these together with vinegar and oyle, and lay it to the fore untill the Mallander be kild; then heale it up as is before shewed. Others use after they have washed it and shaved it, to rub it with pisse and sope untill it be raw: then to lay to it Nerve-oyle, hony, and strong Mustard, untill it bee whole. Others use to take Sulphure, Vitrioll, Sal-nitre; Sal-gemme mixt with Oyle de Bay, and to rub the Mallender well therewith. Now to conclude; you shall understand, that some horses will have two Mallenders upon one legge, one above another, and sometimes one a little above the inward bending of the knee, and another a little below the inward bending of the knee, but the cure is all alike, and as you dresse one, so you may dresse two or three.



Now for mine owne part, I have not found any thing better for a Mallender, then after the sore is cleansed, to take the ordure or dung of a man, and annoynt the sore therewith, and it will kill it and heale it.

### CHAP. LXXVII.

*Of an upper Attaint, or over-reach upon the backe sinew of the fore-legge, somewhat above the pasterne joynt.*

**T**His which we call an upper Attaint, is nothing else but a painefull swelling of the master sinew, or back sinew of the shanke bone, by reason that the horse doth sometimes over-reach and strike that sinew with the toe of his hinder foot, and thereby causeth the horse to halt much. Now the signes are both the swelling and the halting: and the cure, according to some of the old Farriers, is to dresse the sore place with a playster made of wine-lees and wheat flowre laid hot to, or else to take of blacke sope and Boares grease of each like quantity scalding hot; make a plaister of seare-cloth thereof, and clap it all about the sore place: or else if the swelling by no salve will dissolve, take a fine thin hot drawing Iron, and draw his legge all downward with the haire in many smal stricks from the one end of the swelling to the other, and make the strikes very thicke together, and somewhat deepe: then annoynt his burning for two or three dayes with blacke sope, and so turne the horse to grasse; but if he will not run at grasse, then every day give him some moderate exercise; but this burning

ning I fancy not much, for it is foule, and albeit take away the swelling, yet the scames of the burning, when they are cured will keepe the member bigge, as if it were still sweld. Now other of the ancient Farriers, use first to wash the legge with warme water; then to shave off the haire as farre as the swelling goeth; then to scarifie the sore place with the poynt of a razor, that the blood may issue forth: then take of *Cantharides* and *Euforbium* of each halfe an ounce, mingle them together with halfe a quartern of sope, and with a slice spread some of this oyntment over all the sore, suffering him to rest there where you dresse him for halfe an houre after; and then you may carry him into the stable, and there let him stand withour litter, and so tyed as hee may not touch the sore with his mouth: and then the next day use him in the same manner againe: and the third day annoynt the the place with fresh Butter, continuing to doe the space of nine dayes, and at the nine daies end make him this bath: Take of Mallowes three handfuls, a Rose cake, of Sage an handfull, boyle them together in a sufficient quantity of water, and when the Mallowes be soft, put in halfe a pound of Butter, and halfe a pint of fallet oyle; and then being somewhat warme, wash the sore place therewith every day once till it be whole. Others use to cleave a chickin or a pidgeon, and to clap it hot to the swelling, and it will abate it: or else take *Dialthea*, *Agripa*, and oyle, and mixing it together, lay it to the swelling. Others use to take of Frankinsence, of rozen, of tarre, of *Euforbium*, of *Turpentine* and *Fenugreeke*, of each a quarter of an ounce, of suet an ounce, of oyle



an ounce, of waxe three ounces, and three quarters of an ounce of Myrhe; mixe and melt them altogether, and plaister-wise lay it to the sore place till it be whole: or else take for this sorrhance, three quarters of an ounce of *Sanguis Draconis*, an ounce of *Bolearmoney*, as much Oyle, three ounces of Mastick, and as much suet, and as much swines grease, the whites of halfe a dozen of Egges; melt and mixe them together, and lay them together, and lay it to the swelling; and it will take it away: then make the shooes of his hinder feete shorter then the hornes of his toes, by a quarter of an inch, and let the horne hang over uncut away, and make the fore shooe no longer then his heele, but rather shorter.

#### CHAP. LXXVIII.

*An excellent approved medicine for any sinew-straine whatsoever.*

Take of Vineger a pint, the whites of three or foure Egges, and as much *Bolearmonicke* and beane flower, as will bring it to a thick salve over the fire: then when it is very hot, lay it plaister-wise upon the straine, and round about the legge: and doe this not onely till the griefe be gone, but also till the swelling be taken away.

#### CHAP. LXXIX.

*Of a neather Attaint, or over-reach on the Pasterne joynt.*

The neather Attaint, or over-reach in the midst, and in the hollow of the pasterne joynt, is a little bladder

bladder full of jelly, like unto a winde-gall; and though it be not apparant to the eye, yet it is easie to be felt, and may come as well by some wrinch or straine, as by an over-reach, and it will make a horse halt much, the signes are, the neather joynt towards the fetlocke, wil be very hot, and somewhat sweld, and the little soft bleb will easily be felt.

The cure, after the opinion of the old Farriers, is, to take a smal cord, and rowle him somewhat strait from the knee to the neather joynt, and then in the pasterne, betweene the hoofs and the joynt with a scame strike him in the midst of the swelling, and let out the matter: then take the white of an Egge, and beate it with a little salt, and then dipping flaxe therein, lay it unto all the swelling, and then unrowle his legge, and renew the salve twice a day untill the grieffe be gone. But in any case let him not be labourred or ridden whilst he is in cure.

#### CHAP. LXXX.

##### *Of an Attaint, or over-reach in the heele.*

**A**N Attaint, or over-reach upon the heele, is when a horse striketh the toe of his hinder shooe into the heele, just upon the setting on of the hoofs, and this over-reach, if it be not looked unto, will fret and ranckle so much inward, that it will endanger the horses hoofs, and you shall commonly see by the cut the skin hang over the horses heele, and it will make a horse halt. Now the cure is, first to cut away the skin, and also the hoofs and the flesh, till you have made the sore even and plaine without any hollownesse;



nesse; then wash it very well with beere and salt, then bind unto it a little flaxe dipt in the white of an egge, mingled with a little *Bolearmony*, renewing it every day once, the space of three or foure dayes, and that will heale it.

## CHAP LXXXI.

*Of the Mellet on the heele.*

**A** Mellet is a dry scabbe that groweth upon the heele, sometimes through the corruption of blood; and sometimes for want of cleane rubbing and dressing when he is wet set up: it appeareth like a dry chap without any moysture, and it wil be sometimes as well on both heeles as on one. The cure, according to the practice of the old Farriers, to take halfe a pint of honey, and a quarter of a pound of blacke sope, and mixe them together: then put there-to foure or five spoonefulls of vineger, and as much Allome burnt as an Hennes egge, and two spoonefulls of Rye flower, mixe them all well together, and then take it away, and wash all his legge and foote with salt Beefe-broth; and then rope his leg all a day with wet hay-ropes, and he will be sound: provided alwayes, that before you dresse him, you ever take off the dry scab or scurfe, and make the sore as cleane and as plaine as is possible.

CHAP.

## CHAP. LXXXII.

*Of false quarters.*

**A** False quarter is a rift or open back seame, sometimes in the outside, but most ofttest in the inside of the hoofe; because the inside is ever the weaker part, which sides are ever called quarters: whence this sorrhance taketh his name, and is called a false quarter, as much as to say, a sicke and unsound quarter: for it is as if it were a peece set unto the hoofe, and the hoofe not all of one intire peece as it ought to bee. It commeth many times by evill shoocing, and evill paring, and sometimes by pricking the horse, and such like hurts. The signes to know it are, the horse will halt much, and the rift will bleede, and when the shooe is off, the whole sorrhance is apparant to be seene. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is, to shake off the shooe, and cut away so much of the shooe on that side where the sorrhance is, as the shooe being immediately put on againe, all the whole rift may bee uncovered: then open the rift with a drawer, and fill all the rift with a rowle of two dipt in Turpentine, waxe, and sheepes suet molten together, renewing it every day once till it be whole: and the rift being closed in the top, draw him betwixt the haire and the hoofe with a hot Iron over-thwart that place, to the intent that the Hoofe may shoote all whole downeward; and when the Horse goeth upright, ride him eyther with no other shooe then this, or else with such a shooe as may beare in every part, but  
onely.



onely upon the false quarter, untill the hoofe bee hardned. Others use to anoynt it once a day with sheepes suet and oyle mixt together, and that will close the rift.

Others use to cut away the old corrupt hoofe, and then take seven whites of egges, the powder of Incense, of unslect Lime, of Masticke, of Verdigrease, and of Salt, of each three ounces; mixe them well together, then dippe in as much hurds as will cover the fore-hoofe; lay it on, and then about it lay swines grease an inch thicke, and likewise below it also: bind this on in such sort that it may remaine unstirred a fortnight, then renew it so againe, and it will make perfect his hoofe. But if there be any corrupt matter gathered within the false quarter, and thereby causeth the horse to halt, then you shall lay your finger upon it, and if the horse shrinketh thereat, then it is ripe; then open it with a drawing knife, and let out the matter; then lay on the horse-dung, Oyle, salt, and vinegar mixt together playster-wise, and that will heale it, and make the hoofe good; yet however, you must have care in shooing him till his hooves be hardned, as before is shewed.

#### CHAP. LXXXIII.

*Of a Horse that is hippe, or hurt in the hips*

A Horse is said to bee hippe when either by straine, blow, or other accident, the hippe-bone is removed out of his right place. It is a sorrhance as hard to bee cured as any whatsoever: for if it bee not taken even at the first instant, there will grow with-

within the pot of the huckle bone, such a thick hard substance, that it will leave no place for the bone, and then it is utterly incurable. The signes to know the forrance are, the horse will halt much, and goe fidelong, and will trayle his leg a little after him; the fore hippe also will bee lower then the other, and the flesh will waste away on the side of the buttocke. The cure is, according to the best *Farriers*, if you take him in good time, first to cast him on his backe, and then having a strong pastorne on his grieved legge, with a rope draw that legge upright, and with your hands on each side his thigh-bone, guide it directly into the pot that done, let him down gently, and so suffer him to rise with all meeknesse; then goe with him into the stable, and there charge all his hippe and backe with pitch and rozen molten together, and layd on warme, and then some floxe of his owne colour to bee clapped upon the same, and so turne the horse to grasse untill he goe upright.

But if the horse be not hipped, but onely hurt in the hippe, and that newly, then first take of oyle de bay, of *Dialthea*, of nerve oyle, and of swines grease, of each halfe a pound; melt them altogether, stirring them continually untill they bee thoroughly mingled together; then annoynt the fore place therewith against the haire, every day once the space of a fortnight, and make the oymment sinke well into the flesh, by holding a hot barre of Iron over the place annoynted, weaving your hand to and fro untill the oymment bee entred into the skinne: and if at the fortnights end you see the horse  
not:



onely upon the false quarter, untill the hoofe bee hardned. Others use to anoynt it once a day with sheepes suet and oyle mixt together, and that will close the rift.

Others use to cut away the old corrupt hoofe, and then take seven whites of egges, the powder of Incense, of unsleat Lime, of Masticke, of Verdigrease, and of Salt, of each three ounces; mixe them well together, then dippe in as much hurds as will cover the fore-hoofe; lay it on, and then about it lay swines grease an inch thicke, and likewise below it also: bind this on in such sort that it may remaine unstirred a fortnight, then renew it so againe, and it will make perfect his hoofe. But if there be any corrupt matter gathered within the false quarter, and thereby causeth the horse to halt, then you shall lay your finger upon it, and if the horse shrinketh thereat, then it is ripe; then open it with a drawing knife, and let out the matter; then lay on the horse-dung, Oyle, salt, and vineger mixt together playster-wise, and that will heale it, and make the hoofe good; yet however, you must have care in shooing him till his hooves be hardned, as before is shewed.

#### CHAP. LXXXIII.

##### *Of a Horse that is hipped, or hurt in the hips*

A Horse is said to bee hipped when either by straine, blow, or other accident, the hippe-bone is removed out of his right place. It is a sorrhance as hard to bee cured as any whatsoever: for if it bee not taken even at the first instant, there will grow with-

within the pot of the huckle bone, such a thick hard substance, that it will leave no place for the bone, and then it is utterly uncurable. The signes to know the forrance are, the horse will halt much, and goe fide long, and will trayle his leg a little after him; the fore hippe also will bee lower then the other, and the flesh will waste away on the side of the buttocke. The cure is, according to the best *Farriers*, if you take him in good time, first to cast him on his backe, and then having a strong pastorne on his grieved legge, with a rope draw that legge upright, and with your hands on each side his thigh-bone, guide it directly into the pot: that done, let him down gently, and so suffer him to rise with all meeknesse; then goe with him into the stable, and there charge all his hippe and backe with pitch and rozen molten together, and layd on warme, and then some floxe of his owne colour to bee clapped upon the same, and so turne the horse to grasse untill he goe upright.

But if the horse be not hipped, but onely hurt in the hippe, and that newly, then first take of oyle de bay, of *Dialthea*, of nerve oyle, and of swines grease, of each halfe a pound; melt them altogether, stirring them continually untill they bee thoroughly mingled together; then annoynt the fore place therewith against the haire, every day once the space of a fortnight, and make the oyntment sinke well into the flesh, by holding a hot barre of Iron over the place annoynted, weaving your hand to and fro untill the oyntment bee entred into the skinne: and if at the fortnights end you see the horse  
not



not any thing amended, then slit a hole downeward in his skin an inch beneath the hip-bone, making the hole so wide, as you may easily thrust in a rowell with your finger; and then with a cornet and a quill, blow the skinn from the flesh above the bone, and round about the same, so broad as the rowell may lye flat and plaine betwixt the skinn and the flesh: and this rowell would be made of soft calves leather, with a hole in the midst, and a threed tyed unto it, to pull it out when you would cleanse it, or the hole; and if the rowell be rolled about with flaxe fast tyed on, and anoynted with the oyntment under written, it will draw so much the more.

Now you must thrust in your rowell first double, and then spread it abroad with your finger: that done, taint it with a good large taint of flaxe, dipt in a little Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together and made warme, and cleanse the hole and the rowell every day once; and also renew the taint for the space of a fortnight, and before you dresse him, cause him every day to be led up and downe afoote pace a quarter of an houre, to make the humours come downe; and at the fortnights end pull out the rowell, and heale up the wound with the same salve, making the taint every day lesser and lesser, untill it be whole: and so soone as it is whole, with a hot drawing Iron draw crosse lines of eight or nine inches long right over the hip-bone, so as the rowelled place may bee in the very midst thereof, and burne him no deeper but as the skinn may looke yellow; and then charge all that place, and over all his buttocke with this charge. Take of Pitch one pound;

pound, of Rozen halfe a pound, and of Tarre halfe a pint, boyle them together, and then being good and warme, spread it on with a clout tyed in a riven sticke, and then clapon a few floxe of the horses colour; and if it bee in Summer, let the horse runne to grasse awhile, for the more hee travelleth at his owne will, the better it is for him.

### CHAP. LXXXIII.

#### *Of stifling, and hurts in the Stifle.*

**T**hat horse is said to be stifled, when the stifling bone, which is a little bone of two inches in length, lying betwene the neather end of the thigh-bone, and the upper end of the great hoofe-bone of the hinder legge, is by any straine, stroake, slippe, or such like, thrust out of his right place; but if the stifling bone be not removed nor loosened, and yet the horse halteth by meanes of some grieve in that place, then we say the horse is hurt in the stifle, and not stifled. The signes are these. If the horse be stifled, the stifle bone will sticke out more of the one side then of the other, and is apparant to the eye, and in his halting hee will no more but touch the ground with his toe.

The cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is to thrust two round pins crosse the stifling bone, through the skinne; in such sort as you were taught for the shoulder pight, but the pins would not be any thing neare so big, nor so long, because the stifling bone is not so broad as the shoulder: and standing in the stable, let him have a pastorne and a ring upon



uppon his fore legge, and thereunto fasten a cord, which cord must goe about his necke, and let it bee so much strayned, as it may bring his fore Leg more forward then the other, to keepe the Bone from starting out: but this cure is foule and troublesome, wherefore other Farriers of better experience, use onely to set a patten shooe upon his sound foote, and so turn him abroad, that he may be compelled to tread upon his lame foot: and that straying of it will in a day or two make him as sound as ever he was, and put the stifling bone into his true place againe. But if you cannot readily get a patten shooe, then yo shall take either a plain suringle, or any other broad bindingweb that will goe three or foure times about the horses leg, and with it yon shall garter up the horses sound leg three fingers above his hamme, even upon his maine great sinew, so strait as your selfe and another man can draw it: and then turne the horse abroad where he may goe up and downe, and in eight and forty houres the horse will bee as sound as ever hee was: then take off the garter, and rub the place that was gartered up with fresh butter, for it will be much swelled.

Now if this mischance of stifling happen unto your horse in your travell, and that your occasions will not suffer you to stay for any of these cures, then you shall take your horse either to some deepe pond or deepe river that hath easie going in and out, and there swimme him up and downe a dozen turnes: which done, you may after travaile him at your pleasure: for the more he is laboured, the sounder he will goe, now if your horse be not stifled, but onely

onely hurt in the stifle, either with some stripe or some straine, then the bone will not stand out, yet perhaps the place will bee much sweld. The cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is to make a little slit in his skinne, a handfull below the fore place, and then with a quill blow all the skinne from the flesh upwards, and then with your hand presse out the winde againe, and then thrust in a rowell of horse haire from the first slit to the upper part of the stifle bone: this done, take a pottle of old pisse, and boyle it to a quart, and clense it well; then take a handfull of Mallowes, and halfe a pint of sallet oyle, and adde them to the pisse, and then boyle them well together: then bathe all the fore place therewith every day once the space of seven or eight daies, and let him not stir out of the stable during the cure, and in twenty one dayes he will be found.

Other *Farriers* use onely to take a pound of *Bol-armony*, a quart of red Wine-vineger, fixe egges beaten, shels and all, two penny-worth of English Hony, and as much *Venice* Turpentine, one quart of flowre, and one good handfull of Bay-salt; put all these in a pot, and incorporate them well together, then keepe them close one night, and the next day anoynt the fore place with some of it; and thus dressing it once a day the space of nine dayes, it wil make the horse found.

#### CHAP. LXXXV.

##### *Of the Bone-spaven, or dry Spaven.*

The Bone-spaven, or dry Spaven, is a great hard knob as bigge as a Wal-nut, growing in the inside



side of the hoofe; hard under the joynt; neare unto the master veine; it groweth at the first like a tender gristle, and by processe of time, it commeth to be a hard bone, and causeth the horse to halt much. This sorrhance will come sometimes by nature or descent, as when either the Sire or Damme of the horse have had the same disease; and sometimes (which is most generall) it commeth when a horse is laboured too young; for a horse in that part of his hinder leg hath small bones knit altogether upon one cluster, which being pressed before they be naturally hardned, cannot chuse but thrust forth these unnaturall excretions. Otherwhiles it proceedeth from extreame labour and heate, dissolving humors, which doe descend through the master veine, continually feeding that place with evill nutriment, and causeth the place to swell; which swelling in continuance of time becommeth so hard as a bone, and therefore is called the bone spaven. The signes are the apparant sight of the sorrhance; and truely for mine owne part, I am of the minde of other Farriers, that it is very hard absolutely to cure it; yet that the eye-sore may be taken away, and the halting much eased, is not hard, for I have done it many times. Thento proceede to the cure thereof, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is thus: First slit the skinne just over the head of the spaven or excretion and open it with a cornet, and in any case have a care that you touch not the master veine, but put it by: then with your lancet lay the spaven all bare, then with a fine chizell about a quarter of an inch broad, or little more, strike off the head of the spaven

ven; to the quantity of the 'quarter of an Almond, or according to the bignesse of the spaven : then take two peny waight of verdigrease beaten to fine powder, and two-peny waight of nerve-oyle, and beat them all well altogether : then laying some of it upon fine lint, lay it upon the spaven ; then lay dry lint betwixt the medicine and the veine, that the medicine may not touch the veine : then lay a playster of Pitch, Rozen, Turpentine, and Hogges grease molten together, all over the hoofe, both to comfort the joynt, and to keepe in the medicine. And thus dresse him the space of three dayes, and it will cleanse away the spaven even to the bottome ; at the end of three dayes you shall wash away the corrosive and the matter, either with Tanners water or with vinegar, and lay no more of that salve thereto for hurting the bone ; then make a playster of *Diaculum*, and lay it upon a linnen cloath : and lay that plaister unto the spaven, renewing it every day once for the space of seven daies, and it will heale him up.

Others of the old Farriers use first to wash the spaven with warme water, and shave off the haire so farre as the spaven extendeth, and then scarifie the place and make it bleede : then take of *Cantharides* one dozen, and of *Euforbium* halfe a spoonefull ; beate them in powder, and boyle them together with a little Oyle de bay, lay this boyling hot upon the sore, and let his taile be tyed up for wiping away the medicine ; and then within halfe an houre after set him up in the stable, and tye him so as he may not lye downe all that night, for feare of rubbing off the



the medicine ; and the next day anoynt it with fresh butter, continuing thus to doe every day once the space of five or sixe dayes ; and when the haire is growne againe , draw the sore place with an hot Iron in this sort , just upon the Spaven : then take another hot Iron like a bodkin , somewhat bowing at the poynt , and thrust it in at the neather end of the middle line , and so upward betwixt the skinne and the flesh , an inch and an halfe , and then taint it with a little hogges grease and Turpentine molten together , and made warme , renewing it every day once the space of nine dayes ; provided that first immediately after his burning you take up the master veine , suffering him to bleed a little from above , then with a red silke tye the upper end of the veine , and leave the neather end open , to the intent that hee may bleede from beneath untill it cease of it selfe , and this will diminish the Spaven , but not take it cleane away.

Now there be other Farriers which use after they have burnt it in manner aforesaid , and taken up the master veine , to anoynt it with fresh butter , till the burning beginne to scale , and then take of sage and Nettles , of each a handfull , and boyle them with foure handfull of Mallowes in faire water ; and then put thereto a little butter : and with that bathe him every day once for three or foure dayes till the burning be whole , and let him not wet his feete during the cure.

Others use to pricke the Spaven with a sharpe poynted knife , then take a peece of a candle , and lay a peece

a peece of browne paper upon it, and with an hot Iron melt the tallow, and after annoynt it with butter. Others use first to pricke the Spaven well, then to lay upon it for three or foure dayes together, every day, mans dung: after that lay to it *Galbanum* till the sore matter and rheume, and the humour come forth: then wash it with urine, and lastly heale it up with oyle and hony boyled together, for that will bring on the haire.

Now to conclude, that which I have ever found to bee the surest and cleanest way to take the bone spaven quite away, if it bee used with discretion and care, is to take of *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, and of white Mercury, of each a like quantity, but of Mercury rather the more, mixe them well together: then after you have cast your horse, make a slit iust the length of the Spaven, so that you touch not the maister veine: then opening it, and laying all the Spaven, baire, with a sharpe instrument scale so big as the excretion or bone spaven is: then spreading some of the salve thereon, lay it upon the Spaven; then with dry lint defend all other parts of the member, especially the maister-veine, from the corrosive: then lay the plaister of Pitch, Rosen, Turpentine and Hogges-grease before spoken round about his hough, and so let him rest foure and twenty houres: then take away all that medicine, and scaling the bone a little, if you finde the corrosive have not gone deepe enough, then dresse it in the same manner the second time, and that will bee altogether sufficient: then take of Turpentine, of

Cc 3

Decres



Deeres Suet, and of Waxe, of each a like quantity, and mixe and melt them well together, then dresse the fore place therewith being warmed, and lint or tow dipt therein, and within a day or two you shall see the whole crust of the spaven come cleane away, then may you with the same salve; heale up the wound; and this hath never failed me in any practise. Also understand that whatsoever taketh away the Splint, that taketh away the Spaven also.

#### CHAP. LXXXVI.

*Of the blood Spaven, wet Spaven, or through Spaven.*

**T**He blood Spaven, wet spaven, or through spaven, (for all is one disease) is a soft swelling growing on both sides the hoofe, and seemes as though it went through the hoofe, whereby it is called a through spaven; but for the most part, the swelling on the inside (because it is fed continually of the master-veine) is greater then the swelling on the outside, It proceedeth from a more fluxible and flegmy humour, and not so vitious and slimy as the other spaven doth, and therefore this never waxeth hard, nor groweth to a bone, and therefore it is a much easier cure then the other. The signes thereof are like the other, the apparant sight thereof; and for the cure, it is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, in this manner: First, wash the spaven with warme water, and then dresse it with *Cantharides* and *Enforbium*, in such sort as was at large shewed in the former Chapter; onely you shall not boyle them, but onely mixe them together, and dresse the fore

fore therewith two dayes together : then anoynt it with butter, and after burne it with a hot Iron both without and within, in manner as is shewed also in the former Chapter; but you shall by no meanes taint it : then immediately you shall take up the master-veine, and let it bleede, as was shewed before; and than for the space of nine dayes, anoynt him every day once with butter until the burning beginto scale; and then wash it with this bath : Take of Mallowes three handfuls, of Sage one handfull, and as much of red Nettles, boyle them in water untill they bee soft, then putthereto a little fresh butter, and bathe the place every day once for the space of three or foure dayes; and untill the burning be whole, let the horse come in no wet.

Other Farriers use, after they have shaved off the haire, and taken up the veine, to take of Mustard seed, of the great Mallow root, and of Oxe-dung, of each a like quantity, and as much strong vinegar as will mixe them together like a salve; then beate them all well together, and make thereof a soft plaister; or else an oyntment, and lay it upon the spaven; change it evening and morning, and binde it in such sort to the sorrhance with some peece of cloth, that it may not fall off or be removed; and when the spaven is cleane gone, lay upon the place a plaister of Pitch very hot, and take it hot off, untill it fall away of it owne accord. Other Farriers use unto this former medicine to adde Oyle de bay, Turpentine, and Bolearmony.

And other Farriers use but onely to take up the veine, both above and below the spaven, and suffering it to bleede well; then to knit up the veine, and



anoynt it with butter till it be whole, and it wil consume the spaven.

### CHAP. LXXXVII.

*A most rare and well approved medicine, which will take away any blood-spaven whatsoever.*

**A**fter you have taken up the veine, knit it fast above, and then cut it in sunder, you shall take of Lynseed two or three handfuls, and bruise it well in a mortar, then mixe it with new Cow-dung, and putting it in a frying-pan, heate it well upon the fire, and very hot apply it to the spaven, renewing it morning and evening till it bring the spaven like a byle to impostumation, and to breake it, then after it hath runne a day or two, you shall onely apply to the sore a plaister of pitch, till it be whole.

### CHAP. LXXXVIII.

*Of the Sellander.*

**T**He Sellander is a certaine kinde of dry scabbe, growing in the very bent of the hamme of the hinder legge; and it extendeth out into ill-favoured chaps or chinkes, which if it bee not prevented by medicine, it will fret in sunder the sinewes of the hoofe: It is in all poynts like unto a Mallander, and proceedeth from the selfe like causes, and requireth the selfe same cures; therefore looke into the Chapter of the Mallander, and whatsoever you finde there that will cure the Mallander, the same will also cure the Sellander.

CHAP.

## CHAP. LXXXIX.

*Of the hoofe bonny.*

**T**He Hoofe bonny is a round swelling like a *Par*  
*ris* ball, growing upon the very tip or elbow of  
the hoofe, and commeth ever of some stripe or  
bruise; but especially when hee beateth his hoofe  
either against the post which standeth behinde him,  
at the nether end of his stall, or against the barre  
which doth divide him from another horse, which  
many Rammish Jades will doe, when they seeke to  
strike at the horse that standeth next them.

Now the cure thereof is thus, according to the o-  
pinion of the old Farriers, take a round Iron some-  
what sharp at the end, like a good bigge bodking, and  
let it be somewhat bending at the Poynt; then hol-  
ding the sore with your left hand, pulling it some-  
what from the sinews, pierce it with a hot Iron, being  
first made red hot, thrusting it beneath in the bot-  
tome, and so upward into the jelly, to the intent that  
the same jelly may issue downward out of the hole:  
and having thrust out all the jelly, taint the hole with  
a taint of flaxe dipt in Turpentine and Hogges grease  
molten together, and also annoynt the outside  
with Hogges grease made warme, renewing it eve-  
ry day once untill the hole be ready to close up,  
making the taint every day lesser and lesser, till it be  
whole. Now for mine owne part, both for this sor-  
rance, or any other bruise in this part, I have  
found this cure ever the best. First, either with rot-  
ten litter or hay boyled in old urine, or else with a  
plaister



plaister of Wine-lees and wheate-flower boyled together, to ripen the swelling, and bring it to putrefaction, or else to drive the swelling away; but if it come to a head, then to launce it in the lowest part of the softnesse, with a thinne hot Iron, and so to let out the matter: then to taint it with Turpentine, Deeres suet: and Waxe, of each a like quantity molten together, laying a playster of the same salve over it, to hold in the taint untill it be perfectly well.

## CHAP. XC.

*Of the Curbe.*

**A** Curbe is a long swelling a little beneath the elbow of the hooft of the great sinew behinde, hard above the toppe of the horne, which causeth the horse to halt after a little labour: for the more his sinew is strayned, the greater is his paine, and the more he hath rest, the lesse is his grieve; it commeth as the spaven comes, either from descent; or from great burthens when the horse is young, or else from some straine or wrench. The signes are the apparant veiwt hereof; and the cure according to the old Farriers, is first to shave off the haire, then pricke it with a fleame in three or foure places, and for three or foure dayes together, lay unto it twice a day mans dung; then lay *Galbanum* to it likewise twice a day till it rot, and that the matter doth issue forth; then wash it with urine: and lastly, heale it up with honey and oyle boyled together, renewing the same twice a day till the Curbe be gone; and in  
any

any case let your salves bee applyed warme and new made, and if you make an issue with a hot Iron in the bottome of the curbe, it will not doe amisse.

Others use to take a very hot Iron, and hold it as nigh the fore as may bee, but not touching it: then when it is warme, vent it in fixe or seven places: then take a spoonefull of salt, halfe a spoonefull of nerve-oyle, and a penny waight of verdigrease, and the white of an egge; mixe these well together, and dipping flaxe to the same lay it to the Curbe, and this in few dressings will take it away. Orher Farriers use to chafe and rub the Curbe well with their hands: then take red wal-wort leaves, and borage, and braying them well together, lay it to the Curbe, renewing it once a day for a sevenight together. Others use to slit the Curbe all the length, then take a peece of linnen cloath, and wet it in Wine made warme: then strow verdigrease thereupon, and binde it to the sore, renewing it once a day untill the Curbe bee gone. Others of the ancient Farriers take of Wine-lees a pint, of comen halfe an ounce, and as much wheate flower as will thicken it, and stirre them well together, and being made warme, charge the sore place therewith; renewing it every day once the space of three or foute dayes, and when the swelling is almost gone, then draw it with a hot Iron made very thin in this sort, and cover the burning with pitch and rozen molten together, and layd on good and warme, and clap thereon some floxe of the horses colour, or so nigh as may be gotten, and remoove them not untill



till they fall away of themselves ; and for the space of nine dayes let the horse rest, and come in no wet. Now there be other Farriers which to this last received salve, will adde tarre, and it is not amisse, onely it will not sticke so well.

Now for mine owne part, I have ever found this practice the best.

First, with a broad inckle to binde up the hoofe strait a little about the cod : then with a smooth hazell stick to beate, rub, and chafe the Curbe : then with a fleame strike it as deepe as you can in two or three places of the Curbe : then thrust out the corrupt blood ; and after upon the poynt of your knife, put into every hole as deepe as you can thrust it, the quantity of two barley cornes of white Mercury, and so let the horse rest foure and twenty houres after ; then after, onely anoynt the sore place with hot molten butter till it be whole, one a day at the least. And likewise here understand, that whatsoever cureth the splint or Spaven, that cureth the Curbe also.

## CHAP. XCI.

### *Of the Paines*

**T**He Paines is certaine ulcerous scabbes growing in the Pastornes of a horse, betwixt the fetlocke and the heele, full of fretting matterish water, and commeth onely for want of good rubbing and cleane dressing, after the horse hath beene journeyed in the winter wayes, by meanes whereof the sand and durt remaining in the haire, fretteth the skinn  
and

and flesh, and so breedeth to a scabbe; and therefore your *Prisons* and *Flanders* Horses and Mares, which now are so much in use with us for the Coach, are the soonest troubled with this disease, if the keeper bee not much the more carefull. The signes hereof are, his legges will bee swolne and hot, the scabbe will be palpable to be felt, and the water will issue out of the scabbe; which water is so hot and fretting, that it will scald off the haire, and breed scabbes where it goeth. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is: Take of Turpentine, hogges grease, honey, and blacke sope, of each a like quantity; and having molten them upon a soft fire, take it off, and put in a little Bolearmony, finely beaten into powder; then worke all these things well together with a sticke in your right hand, and a dish of wheate flower by you; that with your left hand you may put it in by a little at once, till you have made it thick like an oyntment or soft salve then spread it upon a linnen cloath, as bigge as the fore, having first cut away the haire, and made the fore raw, apply to the salve, and dresse him thus once a day untill it be whole.

This medicine is well approved to cure all sorts of *Paine*, *Scratches*, *Mouly heeles*, or any other skirvy scalls whatsoever, that may breed in a horses legges or heeles, whether they come by meanes of evill humours, or for lacke of good dressing, or cleane keeping, whether they be mattery and filthy running sores, or else dry scabbes. Others of the old Farriers use for this sorrhance, to take a pint of red Wine-les, and a handfull of wheate branne, a saucer-full of



of honey, and halfe a pound of the powder of powdered Beete burnt, and as much of barke dust, and halfe a pound of Allome, and a quarter of a pound of swines grease, and halfe a handfull of Vervine; beate all these together in a mortar, and then fry them over the fire, and make a hot plaister thereof; and lay it to the sore as hot as the horse can suffer it, letting it abide there the space of three dayes, and in once or twice thus dressing him, it will make him found; yet some hold, if you doe with a hot drawing Iron seare the great veine overthwart, a handfull above the fetlocke, and then take a spoonefull of tarre, a spoonefull of butter, and a spoonefull of honey, and warming them well together, anoynt the veine therewith every day till the cure be perfected, and it is much availeable.

Other Farriers use, first to wash all the horses pastornes with butter and beere well warmed together, and then his leg being somewhat dried, clip away all the haire that doth annoy the sore: then take of Turpentine, of Hogges grease, and of honey, of each like quantity; mingle them together in a pot, and put thereunto a little Bole-armony, the yolkes of two egges, and as much wheate flower as will thicken the things aforesaid; and so by long working it, make it like a playster; then spread it upon a linnen cloth, and lap it round about the horses pastorne, and binde it fast on with a rowller, renewing it once a day till the horse be whole; and in no wise let the horse come in any wet during the cure. Others use, first to chafe the sore place with a hay-rope, or with a haire-cloth, till it either bleede or bee raw; then  
take

take a little strong Mustard, beane flower, and fresh grease, with a little Fenugreeke, then mixe al together in a dish, and make thereof a salve, and therewith anoynt the sore untill it leave mattering: then take honey, the white of an egge, and fresh butter; mixe them together, and anoynt the sore place therewith untill it be whole. Others use onely to bathe the sore with beefe broth, and then for foure or five dayes after, to anoynt it with sope, or else first to plunge his feete in scalding water twice or thrice, and bathe the sore in scalding water: then have ready a hard roasted egge, cleave it in the midst, and lappe it to as hot as you can, and let it lye bound all night; use this once or twice, and you may adventure to ride him.

Others use to take Pepper, Garlicke stamp, Cole-worts, and old Hogges grease, of each like quantity; then beate them in a mortar till they come to a salve, and so lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day till it be whole.

Others use first to take up the sheckle veines on both sides, then take the soft roe of a red herring, and mustard, and blacke sope, and when they are wel beaten together, boyle them in vineger till they come to a salve, and apply it to the sore; this will cure the Paines, albeit you doe not take up the shackle veines. If you cannot readily get this salve, you may take butter and hony molten together, and it wil helpe them; or else take a pound of Hogs grease, a penny-worth of Verdigrease, two ounces of Mustard, halfe a pound of Oyle de bay, a quarter of a pound of Nerve-oyle, halfe a pound of honey, halfe a pound of *English* waxe,



waxe, one ounce of arsnicke, two ounces of red-led, and halfe a pint of vineger; boyle all these together and make an oyntment of it: then having clipt and made the sore all bare, apply the medicine thereunto very hot, and renew it once a day until it bee whole. Others use to take five ounces of orpiment, five of Tartar, one of verdigrease, halfe an ounce of Sulphur, as much of vitrioll made into powder, the juyce of foure Citrions, the whites of two egges, with three ounces of sallet oyle; let all these bee very well beaten together, and applyed once a day to the sore, and it will not onely heale this disease, but any salt humour whatsoever. Mingle with soft grease, vineger, Honey, Orpiment and Arsnicke: but let Arsnicke be the least, and it will cure this disease, so will also white Waxe; Turpentine and *Camphora* mixt together. Others use to take an hundred blacke snails in the moneth of *May*, slit them, and put them into a bagge with a pint of Bay-salt; then hang them over the fire, with a vessell set under to receive what droppes from them, and keepe it in a close glasse: then anoynt the sore every day therewith, and it will heale this sorrhance. Others take honey and vineger, of each a like quantity, a little oyle, and suet of a Hee goat, of each a like also; boyle them with a soft fire and stirre it well: when it waxeth redde, adde of Verdigrease and Vitrioll, of each like quantity made into powder, still stirring it till it be red and thicke; then being warme, anoynt the sore place therewith once a day after it hath beene washed with warme water: and this not onely helpes the Paines, but also any sorrhance whatsoever

ver of like nature about the legges.

Also greene Copporas and roach Allome, of each halfe a pound, and a handfull of Bay salt boyled in a gallon of running water, will heale it; or else unto it adde a pint of hony, and boyle it over againe, and it will be the better: then when you have anoynted the fore therewith, rub it after with the powder of glasse, Mustard, and Vineger mixt together, and afterward skinne it with Creame, and the inner rinde of Elder beaten to a salve, which must be applyed to the fore twice a day at the least.

#### CHAP. XCII.

##### *Of the Mules, or Kibe heeles.*

**T**Hese Mules, or Kibe heeles, are certaine drye scabbes or chappes breeding behind upon the heels of a horse, and so a little inward even to the fetlocke, in long chaps and Chinkes: it proceedeth either from corruption of blood, or from being bred in wet Marrish grounds, or else from uncleane and negligent keeping, in such manner as the Paines are bred: this sorrhance will make the horses legge to swell much, especially in the Winter, and about the spring time, and hee will goe stiffely, and halt much.

Now for the cure, you shall understand, that whatsoever healeth the Paines, the same will in like sort heale these Kybed heeles, yet for more particularity, you shall know, that the old Farriers did use for this sorrhance, if they tooke it at the beginning, but onely to anoynt it for two or three dayes with

Dd

sope,



sope, and then after to wash it with strong urine, or beete broth till it were whole: but if it were of any long continuance, then first to cut away the haire, and lay the sore open and plaine; then take two ounces of *unsleckt Lime*, one ounce of *Sope* and the white of an egge, or else an ounce of *unsleckt Lime*, and as much *Salt*, and three ounces of *Soote*, and mingling them with strong vineger, anoynt the sore therewith, and it will heale and kill them.


✶ Other *Farriers* use to calcinate *Tartar*, and dissolve it to water: then congeale it like salt: and mingle it with sope like an ointment, and then dresse the sore therewith, and this wil in eight and forty houres heale any Mules, Paines, or Scratches whatsoever. If you take the juyce of the leaves and rootes of Elder it is very good to dry up any of these evill humours.

### CHAP. XCIII.

#### *Of Winde-galles.*

**T**He Winde-gall is a little bleb or bladder full of corrupt jelly, & like the white of an egge, growing on each side of the Master-sinew of the leg, hard above the pastorne. Now of them some wil be bigge and some will be little, and there will be sometimes more then one or two of a Cluster, and they are so painefull, especially in the Summer season, when the weather is hot, and the wayes hard, that the horse is not able to travaile, but halteth downe right: they proceede commonly from extreame labour in the Summer time upon hard wayes, whereby the humours

mors being dissolved, doe flow and resort into the hollow places about the neather joynts, which are most beaten and feebled with travaile, and there are congealed and covered with a thin skin like a bladder; they are most apparant to be seene and felt.

The cure thereof, according to the old *Farriers* is to take a knife and open it the length of a beane, piercing no further into it then through the skinne of the bladder, and then thrust out the jelly, which as I said before, will be like the white of an egge; then take the yolke of an egge, and as much Oyle de bay as a good nut, and mixing them together make a plaister thereof, and lay it to the sore, and in two or three dayes it will heale it. Others of the old *Farriers* dresse it with *Euforbium* and *Cantharides*, in such sort as is shewed for the taking away of the Splent; but if that will not serve, then with a hot drawing Iron to draw the Winde-gall in this sort:  then to open the middle line with a Launcet, the length of a beane, and thrust out the jelly: then lay Pitch and Rozen molten together upon it, and then a few floxe, and that will take it cleane away. Other *Farriers* use to take up the master-veines on the inside of his legges, and suffer him onely to bleede from below: then having put up the veine, cover all his legge ouer with a playster of Wine-lees and Wheate-flowre mingled together, and rowle it with a long rowler: dresse him in this sort once a day till he be whole.

Others use to open the skinne and put out the jelly; then take a spoonefull of Oyle de bay, a spoonful of Turpentine, a penny worth of Verdigrease, the



white of an egge, and a quarter of an ounce of red lead, boyle them together till it come to a salve; then lay it to the winde-gall and it will cure it; or else after you have let out the jelly: take Rozen, sheepes fuet, and Brimstone, o' each a like; and melt them together, and lay that upon the Winde-gall, so it be not too hot, and it will cure it. Others take the roote of Comin and beate them well with a little salt, and lay it to the Winde-gall; or else anoynt them with the juyce of Onions or Lecke-blades, and that will allay them: or else ground Ivy and Wormewood with the rootes fodde in Wine and layd to the Winde-gall, wil take them away, Others of our latter experienced Farriers, take an ounce of white waxe, an ounce of Rozen, two ounces of raw honey, three ounces of Swines grease, two ounces of oyle of the yolkes of egges, five ounces of Oyle de bay; mixe all these well together, and straine them; then rubbe them into the Winde-gall, by holding a hot barre of Iron against the oyntment, and it will take the Wind-gall away. Now for the making of the oyle of the yolkes of egges, it is thus: First seeth the egges hard, then stampe them, and seeth them in an earthen pot with a soft fire, and so straine them. Now this medicine will not only heale the Wind-gal, but the Ring-bone also, it is very good for the abating of the wind-gall, and for making the medicine to worke the better, to let the horse stand in a cold running streame an houre morning and evening. The scumme of the foure salts fod in mans urine, and laid to the Winde-gall, will take it away.

There bee others which take a pottle of vinegar,

her, a pound of Orpiment, a quarter of a pound of galls, and as much of the hearbe Molleyne stamp small; mingle these well together, and put them into a pot; then every day therewith bathe the wind-gall, and in three weekes it will dry them cleane up; it will also take away a curbe or spaven, or a ring-bone, if you take them at the first breeding. Other Farriers take of Civill oyle and Brimstone, of each like quantity, and seeth them in mans urine, and stirre them well together; after put in the quantity of a Walnut of Sope, to keepe the haire from scalding off: then bathe winde-gall with this hot, thrice together, rubbing it well in: then anoynt it above with Nerve-oyle, and Oyle de bay, and make it, by holding to it a hot barre of Iron, or a hot fire-pan, to sinke in to the flesh, and in three dayes it will dry up any Wind-gall.

Now for mine owne part, the best medicine I have found in my practice for this sorrhance, and the easiest, is with a fine Lancet to open the Winde-gall, making the hole no bigger then that the jelly may come forth: then having thrust it cleane forth, lap a wollen wet cloth upon it, and with a Taylors hot pressing Iron, rubbe upon the cloth till you have made the cloth sucke in all the moysture from the Wind-gall, and that the winde-gall is dry: then take of pitch, of rozen, and of masticke, of each like quantity, and being very hot, daube it all over the winde-gall; then clap good store of floxe of the colour of the horse upon it, and so let the horse rest or runne at grasse till the plaister fall off by his owne accord, and be sure the winde-gall will be gone.

Dd 3

Now



Now I would give you this for a rule, that by no meanes you use to a wind-gall either *Arsnicke* or *Re-falgar*: for commonly then the windgall will come againe; neither must you burne much, nor make any great incision: for any of these wil turne the soft substance of the wind-gall to hardnesse, and then the horse will be lame without cure.

### CHAP. XCIIII.

#### *Of a straine in the Pastorne joynt, or Fet-locke.*

A Horse may be strained in the Fet-locke, or Pastorne joynt; either by some wrench in the stable when the plaunchers are broken under him, or by treading awry upon some stone, or upon some Cart-rout, as hee travaileth by the way. The signes whereof be these: the joynt will bee swolne and sore, and the horse will halt; and the cure, according to the old *Farriers*, is, take a quart of stale urine, and seeth it till the foame arise; then straine it, and put thereto a handfull of Tanfie, and a handfull of Mallowes, and a saucerfull of honey, and a quarter of a pound of Sheepes suet: then set it on the fire, and seeth them altogether till the hearbes bee sodden soft; and then being very hot, lay this *Pultus* to the ioynt, & cover it over with a blew cloth; and in three times dressing it will helpe the straine.

Other Farrier take of *Dialthea* halfe a pound, and as much Nerve-oyle; mingle them together, and annoynt the sore place therewith, chafing it well with both your hands, that the oyntment may enter in;  
 conti-

continuing so to doe every day once, untill the oyntment be all spent, and let the Horse rest; but if this will not prevayle, then they will use *Cantharides*: as in case of the splent: But I doe not holde that cure convenient, because it will make a double grieve. Therefore I had rather you should take Pompillion, Nerve-oyle, and blacke Soape, of each a iust quantity, and heate them hot on the fire; and then anoynt the sore place therewith, and it will make the Horse sound.

## CHAP. XCV.

*To remedy any manner of halting that commeth by straine, stroake, or any other accident.*

NOW forasmuch as halting is such a generall Sorrance amongst Horses, that not any man that is maister of a Horse, but even in his smallest trauel, is at one time or other much vexed with the same, I will here before I doe proceede any further, set you downe certayne generall Receites selected and culd out of the private practice & experiments of the best Farriers in Christendome, of which I may give the boldert testimony, because I haue made practise of their vertues.

If then your Horse have taken any halt, eyther by stiffnesse of sinewes, strayne, wrench, stroake, or any other accident, if the grieve bee in his Legge, you shall take Smalage, Oxe-eye, and Sheepes suet, of each a iust quantity, choppe them all together, and boyle in it mans Urine, and bathe all the Legge therewith: then with Hay-ropes wet in cold water,



rowle up his legge. and he will be able to travaile the next day.

If you seeth a pound of blacke sope in a quart of strong Ale til it look like Tarre, and anoynt the legge therewith, and it will supple his sinewes, and bring them to their true course. If you wash his Limbes with the grounds of Beere or Ale made warme, and then rope them up in hay-rops wet in the same, it wil recover a straine. If you take of the flowre of Lin-seede, of Turpentine, and of life honey, of each a like, and boyle them with white wine untill they be thicke like unto an oyntment: then spread it on a cloth, and lay it to the grieve, and it wil take away any ache or paine in the sinews: likewise a playster of Wine-lees and wheate flowre, or a plaister of blacke sope and Boaresgrease will doe the like.

If you mixe Nerve oyle, Oyle de bay, and Aquavitæ together, and warme it, and chafe it in, and upon and about the straine, it wil take the anguish quite away. If the grieve be in the shoulder, or the hinder legge, then burne him upon the very joynt, by taking up the skinne with a payre of pynsons, and thrust the skin through with a hot Iron over-thwart; and if this cure him not, then his paine is betwixt the thin skin and the bone, which must then bee rowelled. If the grieve be in the shoulder, or in the hip, or elsewhere, then let him blood, and saving the blood, mixe there with the powder of *Frankinsence*, and anoynt the horse with the same. If the grieve be onely in the sinewes, then take the plaister called *Sologlianum*, made of Gum-dragant, new waxe, pitch and Turpentine mixt together, or else take the yolkes of two eggs,

an ounce of *Frankinsence*, and a little bran, and beate them well together, and lay it to the paine. If the griet do proceed from a hot cause, then let the horse blood, and with that blood mixe vineger and oyle, and anoynt him, and chafe it well in. But if it proceed from a cold cause, then let him bleed a little, and with figs soaked a day in warme water, and as much Mustard-seede, and make a playster, and lay it to the griete. If it come either by any rush or stripe, let the horse blood, and with that blood mingle strong vineger, eggs shels, and al, three ounces of *Sanguis Draconis*, toure of *Bolearmony*, and five of wheate-meale, and daube it all over the sore place. If the griefe be in the shoulder, and the skin broaken, take Galles of *Soria* a pound, and mingle them with hony, and lay it to the sore. If his paine come from the stiffenesse of his joynts, take a pound of blacke sope, and boyle it in a quart of Ale till it be thick, and it will comfort the joynts. If the joynts be sweld, then Rozen, Pitch, Turpentine, and *Sanguis Draconis*, molten together, and lay it to the swelling something warme, and it will either take away the swelling, or else ripen it and make it runne. If you take of the oyle of Camomile, oyle of Dill, butter and Agripa, of each a like quantity; or else make a plaister of an ounce of Turpentine, halfe an ounce of Verdigrease, and the marrow of a Stagge; or bathe the horse with warme water, wherein Rosemary hath beene sod, and it will ease any paine whatsoever. If the horses paine bee in his shoulder, first with a Lancet prick the skin through betweene the spade-bone and the marrow-bone: then putting in a quill, blow the skin from the flesh even.



even all about : then thrusting out the winde with your hand, put in a rowel; then take a pottle of stale urine, seeth it with a pound of butter, and as much Swines grease, and a handfull of Mallowes, a handfull of ranfic, a handfull of vervine, a handfull of red nettles, a handfull of southernwood, and a handfull of balmie leaves; then beate them all well together, and so anoynt his shoulder therewith, and let him not goe forth of the stable for seven dayes. If his grieve bee in any nether joynt, then take a handfull of Laurell leaves, and of Prim-rose leaves, of ground Ivy, of Crow-foot, of Mallowes, of red Fennell, and of fine hay: of each of them severally as much; seeth them well together, and then let them stand foure-teene dayes, then bathe the joynt once a day, and bind of the hearbes unto it for foure dayes together: then after chafe into the joynt fresh grease and oyle mixt together, and it will ease all his paine. Now to conclude, if any joynt or member about a horse bee by any fluxe of humours sweld and growne out of shape, whereby the horse goeth stiffe, and halteth; then to dissolve those humours, take Wormewood, Sage, Rosemary, the barke of the Elme-tree, and of a Pine, together with Lin-seed, and boyling these together, make a bath or *Pultus* thereof, and lay it to the sicke member, and it will dissolve the humours, and so likewise will figges, being stamp't with salt, and applyed to the sore.

## CHAP. XCVI.

*Three rare and well approved medicines which wil cure  
any manner of straine or swelling whatsoever,  
be it hard or soft, by what accident  
soever it shall come.*

**I**F the straine bee newly taken, you shall then take  
vineger of the best a pint, and of sweete butter bet-  
ter then a quarter of a pound, and melt them over  
the fire: then with fine wheate bran, make it into a  
*Pultus* upon the fire, and lay it as hot to the straine as  
the horse is able to endure it without scalding: and  
doe thus morning and evening till the straine bee as-  
swaged. But if the straine bee of longer continuance,  
then take Mallowes and Chicke-weede, and boyle  
them either in the grounds of Ale, or of strong U-  
rine, and lay them very hot to the straine. Lastly, if  
your straine, by length of time, or evill medicines,  
be growne, in mens imaginations, past cure, the fi-  
newes and swelling being bony, hard, and knotted:  
then you shall take Peece-grease which is made of  
Shoomakers shreds, and melting it on the fire, a-  
noynt and bathe the straine therewith very hot, not  
onely chafing it exceedingly with your hand, but also  
holding a hot bar of Iron against it to make the oynt-  
ment sinke in: then take a fine linnen rowler, and  
rowle up the legge gently: doe thus once a day, and  
it will take away the greatest and most desperate  
straine that may be.

CHAP.



## CHAP. XCVII.

*Another certaine approved cure for any  
straine whatsoever.*

Take Boares-grease, *Bolcarmonicke*, *Blacke Sope* and *Nerve oyle*, of each alike quantity, boyle them well together, and then apply it hot to the grieve, rubbing and chaffing it in exceedingly, & also heating it in, very wel, either with an hot *Bricke-bat*, a hot Fire-shovel, or a hot barre of Iron. And thus do once a day till the paine depart.

## CHAP. XCVIII.

*Of Enterfearing.*

Enterfearing is either when a horse through a naturall straitnesse in his pace, or through evill and too broad shooing goeth so narrow behinde with his hinder feete, that he heweth the one against the other upon the inside of his legges, even with the pastorne joynt; and by meanes of this hewing, there groweth hard mattery scabbes, which are so sore, that they many times make the horse to halt much. The signes are the straitnesse of his going, and the apparantnesse of the scabbes. Now the cure consisteth as much in prevention as in salve: For the prevention, which is to keepe a horse from hewing one legge upon another, it consisteth onely in the office of the Smith, and the making of his hinder shooes, whereby he may goe wider and not touch: of which we shall speake more at large when we in-  
treat

treate of paring and shooing of each severall foote. For the salve which is to cure the hurt being once received, it is thus : You shall take of May-butter (if you can get it) or else fresh grease, or fresh butter, with a quantity of Rozen, and as much nerve oyle : then fry them all together in a panne, and then let it stand till it be cold, and put it in a pot, and put to it a little Cow-dung : and then playster-wise apply this unto the sore, renewing it once a day, and it will not only heale this sore, but also any pricke by a naile whatsoever.

#### CHAP. XCIX.

*Of the shackle gall, or gall in the pastorne, either by shackle or locke.*

**I**F a horse be galled in the pastorne, on the heele, or upon the cronet, either with shackle or locke, as it many times happens in the Champion Countries, where the Farriers use much to teach their Horses : then for such a sore you shall take honey and verdigrease, and boyle them together till the one halfe be consumed, and that it looke red : then after it is a little cooled, you shall anoynt the sore place therewith twice a day, and then strew upon it a little chopt floxe to keepe on the salve. This is excellent for any gall whatsoever, and chiefly for the Scratches.

#### CHAP. C.

*Of hurts in the legges which cometh by casting in the halter.*

**T**He hurts which a horse getteth by being cast in the halter, are many, and proceede from divers acci-



accidents, as when the reines of the Coller are so long, and will not run too and fro, that the horse gets one or both his fore-legs or hind-legs over them, and then with struggling, woundeth and galleth them much; or else when a horse having desire to scratch his eare with his hinder foote, rubbing it too and fro, in the end fastneth his foote either in the Coller or the reines; and then the more he striveth to loosen it, the more he galleth & woundeth it; even somtimes to the very bone. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old *Farriers*, it is thus: Take of oyle olive one ounce, of Turpentine two or three ounces; melt them together over the fire, and then put thereunto a little waxe, and working them all well together lay it plaister-wise upon the sore, renewing it once a day untill it be whole. Now there bee other *Farriers* which onely anoynt the sore with the whites of egges and sallet oyle mixt together; and then when the sore commeth to a scabbe, annoynt it with butter beeing molten untill it looke browne.

Now for mine owne part, the cure which I principally use for this sorrhance, is to take of waxe, of Turpentine, and of Hogges grease, of each one ounce, and having mingled and moulten them well together, put them into a pot, then take an ounce of verdigrease beaten to powder, and an ounce of hogges grease, and mixe them very well together, and put that into another pot: then when you dresse the sore, take of the first salve two parts, and of the latter a third part, and mixing them well together in the palme of your hand, annoynt all the sore place therewith, doing thus once a day till it be whole.

## CHAP. CII.

*Of the Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-tayles.*

**T**He Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-tayles, being all but one forrance, are long, scabby, and dry chappes or rifts, growing right up and downe, and overthwart on the hinder legges, just from the *Fetlocke* unto the end of the *Curbe*; and as the Paines are under the *Fetlocke*, so the Scratches are above the *Fetlocke*: and doe proceede either from dry melancholly humours ingendred by outward filth, or else by the fuming of the horses dung, lying either neere or under him. The signes are both the apparant sight, and the easie feeling of the same, besides the staring, dividing, and curling of the haire, as also that the forrance will stinke much. The cure is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, to take any of these former medicines whatsoever, which are already recited, either for the Paines or Mules, yet for your more particular understanding, you shall know, these medicines are most proper for this forrance. First you shall shave away the haire, and make the fore raw: then take of Turpentine halfe a pound, of honey halfe a pint, of Hogges grease halfe a quart, and three yolkes of egges, and of Bolearmony a quarter beaten into powder, of Beane-flowre halfe a pint; mixe all these well together and make a salve thereof, and then with your finger anoynt all the fore places therewith, and let the horse come in no wet during the cure.

Other Farriers use (and sure it is the better practice) &

First;



first after they have shaved away the haire, and laid the fore raw, to wash it well with old urine very warme; then take blacke sope, Mustard and Vineger, of each a like quantity, and mixe therewith some of an Oxe gall; then stirre them well together, and chafe and rubbe the place therewith, and binde thereto a cloth, so use it once a day till it be whole: then after anoynt it with Neates-foote oyle, to supple the sinews againe. Others use to take the finest hay, & burne it to ashes upon a faire board, then mixe it with Neates-foote oyle, and make a salve thereof; then all to rub the sores untill they bleede, and then anoint them with the said salve, and rope his legges, and keepe them from wet. Others use after they have washt the fore with old stale, then to take a quantity of strong Mustard, vineger, gray sope, Barrowes grease, and some *Quicksilver*; mixe them together, and therewith annoynt the fore.

✱ Other *Farriers* take a quantity a of unsleck Lime, hafe so much blacke sope, and so much strong Vineger as shall suffice to make it like an oyntment: then the haire being cut away, and the fore washt with urine, lay to his oyntment, renewing it the space of two dayes, and it will kill the forrance: then wash the place once or twice with warme wine; then after heale it with Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together, & in no wise let the horse come in any wet. Others use after they have washt the fore place with urine, and clip away the haire, and make the wound raw, to take butter and tarre, of each a like, and boiling them together, anoynt all the fore place therewith every day till it be whole.

✱ Others

Others take of Hony and Verdigrease of each a like, and boyle them together untill halfe bee consumed, and then annointe the sore therewith once a day untill it be whole. Others of our latter Farriers use eyther to share off the haire, or scald it off with Orpiment, and unsleckt Lime boild in strong Lee; then wash it with warme Vinegar, or white Wine, then when it is dry, annoynt it with this oyntment. Take of Orpiment one ounce, of Uerdigrease three ounces, of Soote five ounces, a little unsleckt Lime, and of Hony one pound, mingle them all well together upon a soft fire, and being made like an oyntment, use it as a foresaid, once a day to the sore; or else take Hony, Sope, Uerdigrease, unsleckt Lime and vinegar and boile them with Allome, Galls, and Mayle, till it come to a plaister, and then apply it unto the sore; or else boyle sallet oyle with a little Suet and Sope, then skim it, and take it from the fire; then adde an ounce of Quick-silver resolved, two ounces of Uerdigrease, three ounces of unsleckt Lime, and one ounce of white Wax: when all these are well mixt together, and made into a salve, then apply it once a day unto the sore, untill it be whole.

Some other Farriers use, after they have shaved the place, to boile Vinegar and the skin of Lard or Bacon together, and to apply that unto the sore three dayes together; then take Lard molten, Lytargy, Masticke, Uerdigrease, and Soot mingled together, with Goats milke, and lay it to, renewing it once a day untill the sore be healed. The scraping of a pans botome mixt with the inner pils of Elder, are also good for the Scratches, or new mans dung applyed for



five daies, and after anoynt the sore with oyle and sope mixt together. Others take of *unslect* Lime, the powder of Glasse, and of Verdigrease, of each one ounce; of Orpiment an ounce, of oyle and of fresh grease, of each foure ounces; mixe all these well together, and apply it to the sore untill it bee whole: If you take blacke snailles and burre rootes, and beate them together, it will also helpe this sor-  
 rance. Other Farriers take an ounce of Sope, two ounces of *unslect* Lime, and as much Lye, or strong Vineger as will temper it, and so dresse the sore untill it be whole. Others take *Fenugreeke* and beate it, three Oranges cut in peeces, halfe a pound of sheeps fuer, new sheeps dung; boyle all these in the grounds of good Ale, and then bathe the horse therewith as hot as may be: then rope him with hay ropes, and so let him stand three dayes, then bathe him so a-  
 gaine.

Other take Hogges-grease, Sope, Brimstone, foot, and honey; boyle them and lay them to coole, you may also adde Verdigrease; but before you lay on this oyntment, scrape the scabs off and make them bleed, and rub them with sope, mustard, and vineger, mixt together.

### CHAP. CII.

*A most certaine and approved cure for the  
 Scratches.*

**A**FTER you have cut away the haire, rubd off the scabs, & washt the sores with old urine, Allome, and Salt boyled together, and applyed as hot as the  
 horse

horse can suffer it: Then take the toppes and tender buds of Elder, and the greene bryer berries, and boyle them in a pottle of new wort, and put thereto good store of Allome, and with this hot, wash the horses legge once, twice, or thrice a day, and it is a certaine cure.

## CHAP. CIII.

*Of the Ring-bone.*

**T**He Ring-bone is a sorrhance, which appeareth above upon the cronet of the hoofe, being a certaine hard gristle going sometimes round about the same: It proceedeth, as some Farriers hold opinion, either from some blow of another horse, or by striking the horses foote against some stub, or stone, or such like accident. But surely I hold that it also proceedeth from some imperfection in nature, for as much as I have seene many foales foaled with Ring-bones on their feete. These Ring-bones do breed a viscous and slimy humour, which resorting to the bones that are of their owne nature cold and dry, waxeth hard, and cleaveth to some bone, and so in processe of time becommeth a bone. The signes of the sorrhance are, the apparant sight of the sorrhance, being higher then any part of the cronet, the staring of the haire, and the halting of the horse.

The cure according to the ancient Farriers, is first to scarifie the skinne above the ring-bone with a lancet; then take a great onion, and picke out the chore; then put into it Verdigrease and unsleckt lime, then cover the hole, and roste the onion soft, then bruise it in a mortar,



morter, and so very hot lay it to the Ring-bone: do thus foure dayes together, and it will cure it. Others of the old Farriers use first to wash the sorrhance with warme water, and shave away the haire: then skarifie it lightly with the poynt of a Razor, so as the blood may issue forth: then dresse it with *Cantharides* and *Euforbium*, in such sort as hath beene taught for the Splent; using him, and curing him after the same manner; but when the hayre beginneth to grow agayne, then draw the fore place with a hot drawing Iron in straight lines, from the pastorne downe to the coffin of the hooft, in this manner: and let the edge of the drawing Iron bee as thicke as the backe of a meate Knife, and burne him no deeper then that the skin may looke yellow: that done, cover the burning with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and clap thereon floxe of the horses owne colour, and about three dayes after, lay againe some of the last mentioned playster, and also new floxe upon the old, and there let them remayne till they fall away of themselves. Others use to shave off the hayre, and to skarifie the fore with a Lancet till it bleede: then strew upon it the powder of *Tartar* and *Salt*, of each a like mixt together, and bind it straight: then after annoynt it with fresh Grease, or else soften the Ring-bone with the skinne of old Bacon, the fat beeing seraped off, that you may see through the skinne, and layd to after it is shaven and made bleed, after launce it, and let out the Ring-bone. Others use to launce the skinne with a Razor; then opening the skinne with a corner, pricke the Ring-bone. Lastly, strew upon it the powder of *Uitrioll*, and bind it on  
so

so as it may not stirre for nine dayes; then thrust out the matter which is dissolved. Lastly, wash it with salt, with urine and vineger mixt together. Other *Farriers* do use, after they have shaved it, to lay unto it a plaister made of bran, and hony, with the yong leaves of worme-wood, pellitory, and *Branke urfine* mingled with swines grease, and beaten together, and boyled, and used as hot as the horse can suffer it. This medicine will not onely cure the ring-bone, but any other hard swelling whatsoever. Also a plaister of the leaves of *Smallage* being beaten to peeces, is not onely good for this sorrance, but for any windgall also. To wash a ring-bone continually with strong vineger, will abate it: or else to shave away the haire, and take halfe a Lemmon, and sprinkle *Arf-nicke* thereupon, and lay it to the ring-bone, and it will eate it away, if twice or thrice a day you binde a hard egge burning hot unto the ring-bone, it will take it away. Lastly, if you take *Enforbium*, and mingle it with the oyle of Juniper, salt, and pepper, and so apply it to the ring-bone, it will in a very short space consume the ring-bone quite away; alwayes provided that you keepe the horse from any wet during his cure.

## CHAP. CIII.

Of hurts on the Cronet by crossing one foote on another.

IF your horse by crossing one foote upon another, chance to wound or hurt the cronet of his hoofe, you shall then, according to the opinion of the old *Farriers*, first wash it well with white wine, or with

Ec 3

warne



warne urine, and then lay unto it the white of an egge mixt with chimney-foote and salt; and that, if it be renewed once a day, will in two or three daies dry up the sore. Other *Farrriers* use first to pare or cut away the hoofe that it touch not the hurt, and keepe it cleane from filth by washing it with Urine: then seeth two egges hard, and take off the shelles, then presse them with your hand long, and first roast one hot, and tye it to hard; when that is cold, use the other: after make a playster of soote, salt and oyle boyled together, and lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day untill it be whole.

## CHAP. CV.

*A most certaine and approved cure for any hurt upon the Cronet whatsoever.*

**T**Ake of Sope and salt of each a like quantity, and mixe them together like a paste, then having cut out the over-reach or hurt and lay it plaine; first wash it with urine and salt, or beere and salt, and with a cloth dry it, then bind on the mixt-sope and salt, not renewing it in 24 houres, and thus doe (if the wound be great) for 3 or 4 dayes together: Then having drawne out all the venome (as this salve will quickly doe) then take a spoonefull or two of Train-oyle, & as much *Ceruse*, which we call white lead, and mixe it together to a thicke salve: then spread that upon the sore morning and evening till it be whole, which will be effected suddenly; for nothing doth dry up sooner, nor is more kindly and naturall for the breeding of a new hoofe.

CHAP.

## CHAP. CVI.

## Of the Crowne Scabbe.


**T**He Crowne Scabbe is a filthy and stinking scab, breeding round about the Cronets of the hoofe, and is a cankerous and painefull Sorrhance, it commeth oft-times, by meanes that the horse hath beene bred in a fenny marish ground, where the cold striking corrupt humours up to his foete, ingendreth this sorrhance, which is ever more painefull in the winter then in the summer. The signes are, the haire of the cronet will be very thinne; and staring like bristles, and the cronets will be alwaies mattering and run on water. Now the cure, according to the opinion of many Farriers, is to take the skin of Bacon, and lay thereon soote and salt beaten together, mingled with grease or suet, waxe, and pitch molten together, and if the flesh chance to grow proud, eate it away either with verdigrease beaten to powder, or with the scrapings of a Harts horne, or an Oxe horne, made into fine powder.

Other *Farriers* use to take of sope, & of hogs grease, of each halfe a pound, of Bolearmony a little, of Turpentine a quarterne, and mixe them wel together, and make a playster, and bind it fast on, renewing it every day once untill it leave running; and then wash it with strong vineger being luke-warme, every day once untill the sore bee cleane dried up, and let the horse come in no wet untill the sorrhance be whole. Others use only to bathe it continually with old stale sod with salt, and that will dry up the humour and heale it.



## CHAP. CVII.

*Of the Quitter-bone.*

**T**He Quitter bone is a hard round swelling upon the Cronet of the hoofe, betwixt the heele and the quarter, and groweth most commonly on the inside of the foote: It breedeth most commonly by meanes of Gravell gathered underneath the shoe, which fretteth inward, and forceth an Ulcer to break upward: or else it cometh by the cloying or pricking of some nayle driven by an ignorant smith, the anguish whereof looseth the Gristle, and so breedeth evill humours, whereof the Quitter-bone springeth: the signes are, the horse will halt much, and the swelling is apparant to the eye, which in foure or five dayes cometh to a head, and will breake out with matter at a little deepe hole like a Fistula, and surely then this Quitter-bone there is no outward Sorraunce whatsoever more dangerous to a Horse. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of some of the ancient Farriers, is, first to cut the hoofe to the quicke: then seeth a Snake or an Adder, till the flesh part from the bone, and be molten as an unguent; then anoynt the sore place therewith very warme even to the bottome, and during the cure keepe the horse cleane from any filth; for this both dryeth and killeth the Quitter-bone. Other of the old Farriers first burne about the Quitter-bone with a hot Iron, in manner of a halfe Circle, and then with the same Iron draw another quite through the midst thereof in this sort:  then take of Arsnicke the quantity of a Beane beaten into fine powder, and put it into the hole, thrusting

sting it downe to the bottome with a quill, and stop the mouth of the hole with a little tow, and binde it so fast with a cloth and a rowler, that the horse may not come at it with his mouth, and so let it rest for that day; and the next day if you see that the sore looketh blacke within, then it is a signe that the Arsnicke did worke well; then to allay the burning of it, taint the hole with flaxe dipt in hogges grease, and Turpentine molten together, and cover the taint with a playster of Pitch, Rozen, Waxe, and Turpentine molten together, but there must be as much turpentine as of all the rest: and thus you must continue to doe untill you have gotten out the chore, which the Arsnicke did eate; then shall you see whether the loose gristle in the bottome be uncovered or not: and if it be not uncovered, then feele with your finger, or with a quill, whether you be nigh it or not; and if you be, then raise the gristle with a little crooked instrument, and pull it cleane out with a paire of small nippers or mullets made for the purpose: that done, thrust it againe with a stall taint, dipt in the foresaid oynment, to assuage the anguish of the last dressing, and stop it hard, to the intent that the hole may not close together or close up: and the next day take out that taint, and taint it a new with honey and verdigrease boyled together, till they look red, renewing it every day once untill it be whole, keeping alwayes the mouth of the sore as open as you may, to the intent that it heale not up too fast, and let not the horse come in any wet, nor travaile untill hee bee perfectly whole. Other Farriers use to cut the hoofe open to the quicke; then take *Galba-*

*num*



*num*, *Sagapenum*, pitch of Greece, *Olibanum*, *Masticke*, Oyle and white waxe, of each an ounce, with halfe a pound of sheepes suet : melt them upon a soft fire, and incorporate them well together, and therewith dresse the sore place untill it be whole. Others use, after the sore is opened, to put in salt of *Tartar*, and when it hath eaten away the *Quitter-bone*, to heale it up with honey and *Verdigrease* boild as a fore-said. Others take of *Goates dung* two ounces, of sheepe tallow three ounces, and as much strong vineger as will suffice to boyle them well in, and then therewith to dresse the *Quitter-bone*, untill it be cleane whole.

#### CHAP. CVIII.

##### *Of gravelling a Horse.*

**G**ravelling is a certaine fretting of gravell, sand, or dirt under the foote, betwixt the sole and the shooe, sometimes on the inside, and sometime on the outside of the foote, and sometimes of both sides of the heele. It commeth, as I sayd, by meanes of little gravell stones getting betwixt the hoofe, or calking or sponge of the shooe, which by continuall labour and travell of the horse, doth eate through the hoofe into the quicke of the foote ; and the rather, if the horses heeles be soft and weake, or that the shooe do lye flat to his foote, so as the gravell being gotten in, it cannot get out againe.

The signes whereof are these, the horse will halce much, and covet to go most on his toe, to favour his heele, and the softer the way is, the more is the horse

ses ease. Now for the cure, according to the old *Farriers*, it is thus; first pare the hoofe till you may see the sore, then take an ounce of Virgine waxe, and a quarter of an ounce of Rozen, and a quarter of Deeres suet, and halfe an ounce of Boaresgrease, and beate them all well together in a mortar, and then melt them together on the fire; that done, dip good store of flaxe therein, and so stoppe up the sore close and hard, and then you may travaile the horse whither you please; and doe thus once a day untill the foote be found. Other of the old *Farriers* use, first to pare the hoofe, and to get out the gravell with a drawing knife, leaving none behind; then stop the sore place with Turpentine and Hoggesgrease molten together, and laid on with a little tow or flaxe, and then clappe on the shooe, to keepe in the stopping, renewing it every day once untill it bee whole, and suffer the horse to come in no wet, until it be healed. Now you must understand, that if a gravelling be not well stopt to keepe down the flesh, it wil rise higher then the hoofe, and so put the *Farrier* to much more paine, both in bolstring it, and abating that ill growne substance.

Others use onely to pare the foote, and picke out all the gravell cleane, then wash it well with Beere and salt, then melt into it tallow, Rozen, and pitch, then covering it hard and close with flaxe, set on the shooe againe, and doe thus once a day. Others use, after they have cleansed the sore, to lay hurds into it, being dipt in the white of Egges, then after heale it with salt beaten small, and mixt with strong vinegar, or else with the powder of Galles, Salt, and Tartar, mixt



mixt together, which also is good for any cloying of pricking.

### CHAP. CIX.

#### Of Surbating.

**S**urbating is a continuall beating of the hoofs against the ground, and it cometh sometimes by meanes of evill shooing, lying too flat to his foote, or by going long bare-foote, and sometimes by the hardnesse of the ground, and the high lifting of the horses feete, either in his trot, or in his amble; and the horses which are most subject to this forrance, are those which have either great round feete, or such as are flat-footed, the Coffins whereof are weake and tender, and also those which have weake heeles. The signes of the griete are, the horse will halt much, and goe creeping and stiffe, as if he were halfe foundred.

The cure, according to the opinion of the old *Farriers*, is to roast a couple of eggs exceeding hard, and then in the very violence of their heate, to burst them in the horses feete, and then powre hot boyling Sallet oyle also amongst them, and so stop the shooe up close with a peece of leather, and two crosse splents of wood, and do thus thrice in one fortnight, and it will helpe him.

Others of the ancient *Farriers*, take off the horses shooes, and pare him as little as may be; and if the shooes be not easie, that is to say, long, large, and hollow enough, then make them so, and tack them on againe with foure or five nailes: that done,

stop

stoppe his feete with Hogges-grease and bran boy-  
led together as hot as may be, and also cover all the  
coffine round about with the same, binding all in to-  
gether with a cloth, and a list fastned about the joynt,  
renewing it every day once untill it be sound; and  
give the horse during the cure warme water to drink,  
and let him stand dry; and not have much travaile.

Now if your horse surbare in your travaile, if eve-  
ry night you stop his feete well with Cowes-dung, or  
with Cowes dung and Vineger, it will make him  
endure out his journey, or Cowes-dung and new  
layd egges beaten together.

#### CHAP. CX.

*Of the Pricke in the sole of the Foote, either  
by treading on a naile, or any other  
sharpe thing.*

**I**F a horse in his travaile chance to tread on stubbe,  
naile, thorne, or any other sharp thing whatsoever,  
by meanes whereof hee is prickt in the sole of the  
foote, the rider shall perceive the same by suddaine  
faulcring of the horse, who wil instantly stand stil and  
lift up his foote, as desiring helpe: And if it chance  
at any other time, then the halting of the horse, and  
the diligent searching of a carefull Farrier must find  
out the mischiese.

Now the cure, according to the opinion of the  
ancient Farriers, is first to pull off the shooe, and  
pare the foote, and with a drawing knife unco-  
ver the hole, making the mouth so broad as a two-  
pence:



pence : then tacke on the shooe againe ; that done, stoppe it by powring into the hole Turpentine and Hogges-grease molten together, and lay some flaxe or tow upon it ; and then stop all the horses foote with Cowes-dung, and so couering it with a peece of leather, splent it with two crosse stickes, so as the stopping may abide in, renewing it every day once untill it be whole, and let the horse tread in no wet.

Now you must be very carefull in the curing of this forrance : For if it be not healed from the bottome, besides that it is dangerous to the life of the horse : It is also a great hazard, that the sore will breake out at the toppe of the hoofe, and so loosen the hoofe round about, and perhaps make it fall cleane away ; but if you see that it beginne to breake out aboue, then make a greater issue beneath, by opening the hole wider, and taking more of the sole away, that the flesh may have the more liberty : then take of Bolcarmony halfe a quarterne, and of beane flowre as much, and two egges ; beate them, and mingle them well together, and make a plaister thereof upon tow, and lay it round about the cornet, bind it fast on, and so let it remaine the space of two dayes, and then renew it againe, not failing so to doe euery two dayes untill you see it wax hard and firme aboue : for this plaister being restrictive, will force the humours to resort alwayes downward ; which humours must bee drawne out with Turpentine and hogges grease, as before, untill it leaue mattering ; and then dry it up with burnt Allome beaten into powder, and strewed upon the sore, with a little flaxe laid againe upon that, continuing

tinning so to doe every day once untill it be hardened; and let not the horse come in any wet untill it bee whole.

Other Farriers use to taint the sore with Tallow, Tarre, and Turpentine being molten together, and anoynt all the coffin and cornit of the hoofe with Bolearmony and Vineger beaten together till the sore bee whole, especially if the thing which did pricke the horse was venomous or rusty.

### CHAP. CX.

*To draw out either Stub, Thorne, or Iron, either out of the foote, or any other part of the body.*

**I**F either the Stub, the Thorne, the Iron, or any thing whatsoever, wherewith your horse is wounded, be gotten so deepe into the flesh that you cannot get hold upon it to pull it out; then, according to the opinion of the old Farriers (if you finde that albeit it be too deepe, yet it is not much too deep) you shall take a good quantity of blacke sope, and lay it to the sore for a whole night, and it will make it to appeare, so as you may pull it out with a paire of nippers: but if it be very deepe, then you may open the place with a launcet, and thrusting in your mullets or nippers, pull it out by strength, and afterwards heale up the wound, as was before taught in the last Chapter.

Other Farriers say, that the roots of reedes being stampd and mixt with hony, it will draw out any stub or nayle: so will also blacke snalles being stampd and wrought with fresh butter. Now if the place bee  
much



much swolne, then it is good to mollifie it with a plaster made of Wormewood, Parietory, Beares-foote, Hogges-grease, and honey well boyled and mixt together, which will assuage any new swelling that commeth by stripe, or otherwise. Now when you have gotten out that which you sought for, then you shall powre into the wound scalding oyle of Olive; when that is cold, powre into it as hot Turpentine; when that is cold, strew on the powder of Sulphur, and then bolster his foote or the sore with hurds, and keepe it from all wet and filthinesse.

## CHAP. CXI.

*Of the Figge.*

**I**F a horse having received any hurt, as is before said, either by stub, great naile, thorne, bone, splent or stone, either in the sole, or any other part of the foote, and be not well dressed, and perfectly cured, there will grow in that place a certaine superfluous peece of flesh, like unto a figge, full of little white graines, as you see are in a figge. The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, first with a hot Iron to cut the fig cleane away, and keepe the flesh downe with Turpentine, Hogges-grease, and a little waxe molten together, and layd on with a little tow, stopping the hole hard that the flesh rise not; renewing it once a day untill the sore bee whole.

Now other of our latter *Farriers* use after they have (as before is said) cut away the figge, then to take the croppes of young Nettles, and chopping them

them very small, lay them upon a cloth, just as bigge as a figge: then take the powder of Verdigrease, and strew it thinne upon the chopt nettles, and so binde it to the sore, renewing it once a day untill the hoofe have covered the sore, and this is a most certaine cure.

## CHAP. CXII.

*Of a Retraite.*

**A** Retrait is when a horse by the ill government of the Smith, is prickt in the foot with some ill driven naile, yet in such sort that it is immediately espied, and the naile drawne backe againe; and although it proceedeth oftent from the negligence of the Smith, yet it may also come by reason of the weaknesse of the naile; and the hollownesse of the shanke: for when the nayle is a little too weake, the poynt bendeth many times awry into the quicke, when it should goe right forth; and when it is hollow, it shivereth in the driving into two parts, whereof one part razeth the quicke in pulling out, or else perhaps breaketh asunder, and so remaineth still behind: and this kind of pricking is the worst of all other, because it will rankle worst, in as much as the flaw cankereth and remaineth still in the foot. The signes hereof are, first the apparant shrinking and strugling of the horse so soone as the quicke is touched; and next his much hasting: lastly you shall search his foote with a hammer, by knocking upon the clinch of every naile: for when you knocke upon the nayle where the grieve is, the horse will shrinke up his

Ff

foote,



foote, and if that will not serve, then grope the hoofe with a paire of pinsons round about, untill you have found the place grieved. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is first to pull off the shooe, and then open the place grieved, either with a butteris, or with a drawing knife, so that you may perceive either by feeling or seeing, whether there be any peece of naile, or not; if there be, then pull it cleane out: after take of nettles halfe a handfull, and bruise them in a mortar, and put thereto a spoonetfull of red vinegar, and a spoonetfull of blacke sope, and two ounces of brockes grease, or the fat of salt Bacon, and bray all these well together, and stoppe well the hole of the sore with this, and then tacke on the shooe againe; and you may safely adventure to travaile him. Other Farriers use, after they have opened the sore, to stop the hole with Turpentine, Waxe, and sheepes suet molten together; and so powred hot into the hole; and then lay a little tow upon it, and clappe on the shooe againe, renewing it thus once every day untill it bee whole; during which time, the horse must not come in any wet, and it must bee stopped in this sort, though it be but prickt, without any peece of naile remaining: and if for lacke of looking to in time, this Retrait causeth the horse to breake out, then you shall cure it either with a restrictive playster of Bolearmony, beane flowre, and egges mentioned in the 78 Chapter: or else with chopt nettles and verdigrease spoken of in the last Chapter.

Now there bee other Farriers, which not only

ly for this Retrait, but for any pricke in the horses foot, use after they have layd open the wound, to take of turpentine one ounce, of tarre one ounce, of pitch one ounce, of Beefe suet one ounce, and one head of Garlick; boyle them all together, and lay them to it so hot as may be suffered: and if it chance to breake out above the hoofe, then apply also the same medicine unto it, and it will cure it.

CHAP. CXIII.  
*Of Cloying.*

**A** Horse is said to be cloyed with a nayle, or prickt with a naile, when the whole naile is stricken into the quicke of the foote, and so remaineth stil in the same, and is clinshed as other nayles be, by meanes wherof the horse halteth extremely. Now this griefe is knowne by searching the grieved place with a hammer or pinsons, as is before said. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus; if the horse halt immediatly, then pull off his shooe, and open the hole untill it begin to bleede, and then stop up the hole with Turpentine, Waxe, and sheepes suet molten together, and powred in very hot, renewing it once a day untill it be whole; and let the horse tread in no wet, and let his shooe bee tackt on againe as soone as he is drest. Others use, onely to powre into the hole hot scalding butter, and that will heale it, or else to burne the hole with another nayle, and that will heale it. Other Farriers use after they have opened well the sore, to take halfe a pound of *Frankinsence*, a pound of Rozen, a pound of



of Pitch of Greece, halfe a pound of blacke Pitch, a pound of new waxe, a pound of goats grease, halfe a pound of Vernish, halfe a pound of Turpentine, two ounces of oyle Olive; and melt them altogether, and lay this to the hooft playster-wise, and it will not onely heale any pricke whatsoever, but also any cracks, chinkes, or clifts in the hooft, howsoever they breed; provided that you let the horse tread in no wet during the cure: but if the sore chance to breake out on the top of the hooft, then you shall take two or three yelkes of egges, whites and all beaten together, and adde thereunto an ounce of Bolearmony, and as much beane or wheate flower as will thicken the same: then make a playster thereof two fingers broad, and as long as will goe round about on the top of the horses hooft, binde it on fast with a rowler, and renew it once a day untill it be whole.

Other *Farriers* use, after they have searched and layd open the wound, to put into it hurds dipt in the white of an egge: then stoppe the hole with salt beaten very small, mingled with Vervine and strong vineger, and cover it with flaxe dipt in strong vineger: or else holding up the horses foote, powre into the wound hot scalding oyle Olive: and when that is cold, powre in hot Turpentine, and that beeing cold, strew upon it the powder of Sulphur: then lay on the bolster of floxe: then shooc him, and keepe him from treading in any wet.

Others use to take Tallow, the powder of Sulphure, Mallowes, and very strong vineger: boyle them together untill they bee thicke like an oymment: then lay the same to the sore as hot as the horse

horse can endure, renewing it once in twelve houres till it be whole.

Others use to take of honey and vineger, of each a like quantity, a little oyle, and suet of a hee Goate, boyle them with a soft fire, and stirre it: when it waxeth red, adde Verdigrease and Vitriolle, of each a like, made into powder, still stirring it till it be thick and red; then stoppe the sore every day therewith untill it be whole, after you have washed it well with salt and vineger. Others take Pepper, Garlicke, and Cabbage leaves beaten with swines grease, and lay that to the sore: or else take Tallow and horse-dung, and mixing them well together, stop the sore therewith, and in short space it will cure it.

Other Farriers use to take off the shooe, and having opened the sore, to wash it with Wine: then lay upon it the inner rinde of Elder, and throug<sup>r</sup> that melt in grease with a hot Iron: then tack on the shooe againe, and doe thus divers dayes together, and it is a certaine cure.

#### CHAP. CXIIII.

##### *Generall Observations for the feete and hoofe of a horse.*

**F**Orasmuch as the Feete and Hoofes of a horse are the onely Instruments of labour, and that a small griefe in that part deprives a man of the benefit and use of the rest; I thinke it not amisse before I speake of the particular diseases of the hoofes, to shew you some generall notes and observations which you shall observe for the benefit of the feete.



feete. Know then, that first it is meete that you let your shooes before, bee rather short then too long, with strong Spunges, but no cawkins, and your nailles to have speciall good heads.

Let your shooes behind have no cawkin on the out-side; but if he enter-feare, let the cawkin be on the inside to make him cast outward, and let the inside of that side inward have a welt an inch deepe, or be twice as thicke as the outside: but if all this helpe not his enter-fearing, then bring him unto an Amble; but if he will not Amble, burne him with a hot Iron betweene the Legges, that the sorenesse thereof may make him goe wide behinde, which is an ordinary practice amongst the *Italians* and *Frenchmen*.

Let your shooes bee made of Iron that will not breake, of which our English is the best, the Spanish next, and the Denske worst. Let them also be light, yet so as they may be able to beare the burthen of the horse, being broader at the toes, then at the cawkins, or spunges.

Let your cawkins be short, and blunt at the poynts, and your spunges long and thicke.

Let your shooe be full as straight as the horne of the Hoofe so farre as the nayles goe, and from the two heele nayles backward, let the shooe be broader then the hoofe, that the shooe may be without the horne.

Give unto every shooe nine nayles, on each side foure, and one in the middest; and let the shankes of the nayles be very flat and thinne, that if the hoofe be naught, they may yet keepe the shooe firme with  
little

little hold, and the neerer that your nailes are driven back-ward towards the heele (so it bee without danger) the faster the shooe will fit, and the harder to be puld away.

Let your cawkins fit a strawes bredth behinde the corner of the Coffin, and let your nayle heads enter into the shooe, especially on the outside, and by all meanes hollow your shooe so little as possible you can.

Pare very little or nothing at all from the heele of a horse: yet open his heeles as sufficiently as may be, because ever the heele must be thicke, and the toe thinne.

In faire wayes pare the sole thinne, but in frost or stony wayes pare as little as may be.

To conclude, when the hoofe is higher on the outside then on the inside, it will make a horse enter-feare; and when it is higher on the inside, it will make a horse straddle, so that a faire smooth table is of all most convenient. After travaile ever stoppe the inside of the hoofe with Cowes dung, and rubbe the outside and the Cronet with the sward of fat Bacon: for that will keepe a tough, smooth, and a sound hoofe. As your nayles have strong Heads, so let them have thinne shankes, for that will best prevent hurting, and keepe the shooe close unto the hoofe.



## CHAP. CXV.

*Of loosening the Hoofe, and how to make  
Hoofes grow.*

A Hoofe is said to bee loosened, when there is dissolution or parting of the horne or Coffin of the hoofe from the flesh, at the setting on of the Cronet. Now if this dissolution or parting bee round about the cronet, then it proceedeth by meanes of some foundring; but if it bee but in part, then it proceedeth from the anguish caused either by pricking of some chanell nayle, or other nayle piercing the sole, or quarters of the foote, or by some quitter-bone, retrait, gravelling, or cloying, or such like accident. The signes of the disease be these: When it is loosened by foundring, then it will breake first, and the dissolution will appeare on the fore part of the cronet, right against the toe, because the humour doth covet alwayes to descend towards the toe; but if it proceede from pricking, gravelling, or such like, then the hoofe will loosen round about equally, even at the first, but when it proceedes from some quitter-bone, or hurt upon the cronet, then the hoofe will breake right above the place that is offended, and most commonly will goe no further.

Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, is, of what cause soever the loosening proceede, first to bee sure to open the hoofe in the sole of the foote, so as the humour may have free passage downeward; and then to binde about the top  
of

of it the Restrictive plaister spoken of in the seventy eight Chapter, and in the 117. Chapter, and in such sort as there is written, and then heale it up with Turpentine and Hoggs grease molten together. Others of the ancient *Farrriers* take three spoonefull of Tarre, and a quarter of a pound of Rozen, and halfe a handfull of Tansie, and halfe a handfull of Rew, and halfe a handfull of red Mints, and halfe an handfull of Southerne-wood, and bray all these together in a mortar: then adde halfe a pound of butter, and a penyworth of Virgine-waxe; then melt them all together over the fire, untill it come to a thicke playster or salve: then spread some of it upon a cloath, and lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day, for seven dayes, and it will heale it.

Others use to take the braines of a Swine, or a Pig, and to stop his hoofe very wel therewith three dayes together, renewing it twice or thrice a day, and it wil grow fast, and endure as wel, or rather better then ever it did. Other *Farrriers* use to cut out the sole below, letting it bleed wel; after stop it with hurds dipt in the whites of eggs: tie this to for twenty foure houres, then wash it with strong Vineger warmed, after fil it with Tartar and Salt, of each alike quantity, let that remaine in two daies; then annoint it with the oyntment made of *Olibanum*, Mastick, pitch of Greece, of each alike; and a little *Sanguis Draconis*, and of new waxe and sheepes suet as much as of the first, and melt and boyle them all very well together, and let this oyntment be applyed once a day till the sore be whole. But if you perceiue that any new hoofe come, then cut away the old, lest the  
hard-



hardnesse of the one hinder the tendernesse of the other ; and then annoint the new hoofe with suet, oyle, and waxe, of each alike boyled together, to make it grow; or else with pitch of Greece, Masticke, *Olibanum*, *Sanguis Draconis* and *Galbanum*, of each alike, being molten with suet : for this will make the new hoofe to grow also.

So will also new waxe, honey, oyle, swines grease, and sheepes suet being boyled together, and when it is cold, adde Masticke, *Sanguis Draconis*, and Frankinsence, and incorporate them all together; for nothing sooner then this will make either new or old hoofe grow. Others use to take shell-snailles, and stampe them; and lay them twice a day to the sore, and it will either fasten the old hoofe, or quickly bring forth a new. Now there be other Farriers which first fill the sore with Turpentine, and after it hath laine twenty foure houres, then wash the sore with urine and Copperas water; then fill it either with verdigrease, or with sheepes tallow, pitch, and rozen boyled together, in which having dipt hurds, lay it to the sore very hot twice a day til it be whole.

#### CHAP. CXVI.

##### *Of casting the Hoofe.*

**T**He casting of the hoofe is when the whole coffin thereof falleth cleane away from the foote; which commeth of all the former causes rehearsed in the last Chapter, and is so apparant to the eye, that it needeth none other signes: Now for the cure, it is thus, take of Turpentine one pound, of tarre halfe a pint,

pint, of unwrought waxe halfe a pound, of sheepes suet halfe a pound, and of sallet oyle halfe a pint; boyle all these things together, and stir them continually, until they bee thoroughly mixt together; then make a boote of leather, with a strong sole fit for the horses foote, to be laced fast about the pastorne; then dresse his foote with the salve aforesaid, laid upon flaxe or tow, and bolster, or stop his foote with soft flaxe, so as the boote may grieve him no manner of wayes, renewing it every day once until the new Hoofe come: then as the hoofe beginneth to harden, if it grow either thicke, crumpled, or out of order; with a fine Rape-file keepe it smooth and plaine until the hoofe be perfect, and then put him to Grasse, that there it may take a kindly hardning and toughnesse.

## CHAP. CXVII.

*Of the Hoofe-bound.*

**T**He Hoofe-bound is nothing else but a shrinking in of the whole Hoofe in the upper part thereof, and at the heeles, making the skin to stare above the hoofe, and to grow over the same. It proceedeth from keeping the horses hooves too dry in the stable, or from strait shooing, or from some unnatural heate after foundring, and the signes of the disease are, that the horse will halt much, and his hooves will be hot; and if you knocke upon them with an hammer, they wil sound hollow like an empty bottle; and if both his feete be not hoofe-bound, then the fore foote will ever be the lesser: and you shall also understand,



stand, that this disease of some Farriers is called a dry foundring. Now for the cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: take a pound of the sword of Bacon, and a quarterne of a pound of white sope, and a handful of balme, and a handful of Bay leaves, and foure or five branches of Rew, and stampe them wel together; and then fry them, and lay them about the cronet of the hooft very hot, suffering it so to abide the space of five or sixe dayes, and then renew it, but in no case let him tread in any wet place, and this wil helpe him.

Other of the ancient Farriers use, first to pull off his shooes, and to shooe him with halfe moone shooes, called *Lunets*, or *Lunet*, the shape whereof you shal see in another place; then raze both the quarters of the hooft with a drawing knife, from the cronet unto the sole of the foote, so deepe, that you may see the dew come forth: and if you make two razes on each side, it shal be so much the better, and enlarge the hooft the more; that done, annoynt all the hooft above, next unto the cronet, round about, with the oyntment described before in the last Chapter of casting the hooft, continuing so to doe every day once untill he begin to amend; and let him be ridden upon some soft ground an houre or two, every day once for the space of a moneth; and if hee goe not well at the moneths end, then take off the halfe shooes, and pare all the soles, frushes and all so thinne, that you may see the dew come forth, and tacke on a whole shooe, and stop all the foote within with Hogsgrease and bran molten together, and layd very hot to the foote,

foote, renewing it every day once the space of nine dayes, to the intent the sole may rise; but if this wil doe no good, then take away the sole cleane, and clap on a whole shooe, and stop the foote with Nettles and Salt braid together; yet stop it not too hard, to the intent the sole may have liberty to rise; and let this be renewed every day once til the sole bee growne againe, and let him be shod with *Lunets*, and so sent to grasse. Other *Farriers* use onely to raze the hooft from the Cronet to the verge of the hooft in foure or five places, and rub it twice or thrice a day with Salt, and that wil open the Hooft. Others use onely to open the Hooft exceeding much at the heeles once a Weeke, and to shooe him with very wide open shooes, and then for a moneth or two to draw him in some Cart, that being forced to set his foot hard to the ground, hee may thereby stretch forth and widen his hooft. Now to prevent this Sorrance, it is good to annoint his hooftes with Neates foot oyle, or with Turpentine, and to stop them underneath with Cowes dung.

## CHAP. CXVIII.

*Of the running or rotten Frush.*

THE Frush, which of some is called the Frogge of the Foote, is the tenderest part of the hooft towards the heele, and is fashioned like a forked Arrow head, being onely that part of the foote which *Farriers* cut forth, when they say they cut forth the sole of the horses foot. Now in this Frush breedeth many times a rottenesse or corruption proceeding of



of humours which commeth out of the legges, by which the legge is kept cleane from Wind-gals, and all other tumors or swellings, by meanes that the humors have passage that wayes, notwithstanding the mischiete of this Sorrance is greater then the benefit, because it maketh the Horses foote so weake and tender, that hee is notable to tread upon any hard ground. The signes of the Sorrance are, the Horse will halt much, when he travaileth either upon loose stony ground, or upon stiffe dirty wayes, and goeth ever best upon greene swarth: but above all, he halteth most, when the passage of the humour is stopped with any gravel gathered into the Frush, and not being stayed or stopt, it wil continually run, and stinke so extreameley, that a man can hardly endure the sent of it; besides, in some places it wil look raw.

Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is thus: First take off the shooe, and pare away all the corrupt places, and make them raw, so as you may see the water issue out of the raw places: then tacke on the shooe againe, being first made wide and large enough: that done, take off foot one handful, of salt as much; bruise them well together in a dish, and put thereto the whites of three Egges, and temper them all together; and with a little tow dipt therein, stoppe all the foote, and especially the Frush, and splent it in so, as it may not fall out, renewing it once a day the space of seven dayes, and certainly it will cure him. Now during the cure, the Horse must rest, and come in no wet; and at the seven dayes end leave stopping him, and ride him a-broad,

broad, and alwayes when hee commeth in, let his fore foote be cleane washed : for there is no greater enemy unto the Sorrance than gravel and durt. Other of our later Farriers onely take off the shooe, and pare him wel, and keepe the fore cleane, both from durt and his owne dung, by washing it three or foure times a day with urine, and that alone will cure him as well as any medicine.

## CHAP. CXIX.

*An approved and certaine Cure for the  
running and rotten Frush.*

**A**fter the foote is cleansed, take a quart of old Urine, and boyle it with a quarter of a pound of Allome beaten to powder, and keepe it in a close vessel by it selfe ; then take a good handfull or two of greene Nettles strong and keene, and spread them on some plate, or other vessell, and dry them either before the fire, or in an Oven, after household bread is drawne, then crush and bruise them into a very fine powder ; then looke what quantity of powder there is, and take the like quantity of Pepper beaten to as fine a powder, and mixe both very well together : then keepe this powder in a close Gally-pot, or bladder.

Now when you have occasion to use it, first wash the sore place with the Urine and Allome made very warme, and the soares thoroughly scoured, after dry them well by drawing through them a fine Ragge of Lawne, Cambricke, or fine old linnen, and strow or pounce of the powder upon them



them so much as may cover all the fores; and thus do ever after travaile, or once a day in the time of rest.

#### CHAP. CXX.

##### *Of evill Hoofes.*

**H**Orses partly through a naturall inclination, partly through the stoninesse of the Soyle wherein they are bred, and partly through mischance or ill government, wil have ill favoured and naughty hoofes, as either wrinkled or crumpled, or else moulded awry, or such like: all which needs no signes, because of the apparant sight thereof: Then to amend them, the best cure is, with a fine Rape-file to smoothe the wrinkles away, and to annoint the cronet of the hoofe with the fat sward of Bacon rubbed in soote: then let the horse stand for at least a fortnight uppon his owne dung, whereon you shal cast good store of water, onely remove away the dung every night, and then presently after the change of the Moone, shoe the horse with strong shooes, keeping the sole of the foot by paring, so hollow as you can possible, and it wil shapc his hoofe to your pleasure.

#### CHAP. CXXI.

##### *Of brittle Hoofes.*

**I**F a horse either through the heate of his owne nature, or in that he hath beene either heated on his feet by labour, or foundred, and evil cured, shal happen to have his hoofes so brittle and short, that they wil hardly beare a shoe. The signes whereof are,

are, the hoose will be white and crumbling: then the best cure; according to the opinion of the best Farriers, is to take Oxe-dung and Vineger, and mixing them very well together, warme them on the fire, and so binde it both under and above round about the horses hoose; and then lace on his boote of strong Leather, as is afore-said, in the chapter of casting of the hoose. Other *Farriers* use to let the horse stand upon his owne dung, and anoynt all the upper part of his hoose with the fat of Bacon, sodde and mixt with Turpentine: And this you must doe every day once untill you see his hoofs come to some toughnesse.

Others use to take Turpentine, Hogges-grease, and honey, of each a like; melt them well together, and being warme, anoynt all the hoose therewith: and dip two therein, and fold it all about the horse foot both under and above, and then put on his boot: dresse him once a day, and once in two dayes let him stand foure houres without his boote, that his hoose may grow as well hard as rough.

#### CHAP. CXXII.

##### *How to preserve hooses.*

**I**F you meane to preserve your horses hooses either from any of the former Sorranes, or any other grieve whatsoever, you shall, according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, take three heads of *Garlicke*, a little bundle of *Rew*, fixe ounces of *Allome* beaten into powder, two pound of old grease, and the dung of an *Ass*; boyle them all very well together,

Gg

ther,



ther, and stop your horses hoofe therewith once a day. Other Farriers take of vineger a quarterne, of tar halfe a pint, of hogges grease halfe a pound, of oyle a pint, and a good handful of wormewood, and foure or five heads of *Garlicke*, boyle all these together to a thicke oyntment, and therewith anoynt all the horses hooves. Others use to boyle beanes till they burst, and then temper them with honey, and therewith anoynt all the hooves: or else wash all the hooves with warme vineger, and then anoynt them with hore-hound, wormewood, and grease molten together.

Other Farriers take of *Olibanum* and new waxe, of each an ounce, of *Dialtbea* and Turpentine, of each three ounces, of butter foure ounces, of old oyle sixe ounces, and of sheepes suet and Plantaine, of each a pound; boyle them all well together, and therewith anoynt the hooves twice a day. Other *Farriers* use to anoynt his hooves with Turpentine, hogges grease, and hony warmed and molten together, of each a like quantity; then pare the foot well, and shooe him in the new of the Moone two or three dayes after the change.

Others use to take *Chalke* and white lead mingled together; or else *Bark-dust* and hony mixt together, and being heated in a posnet, and laid hot on the bare flesh, is most excellent to make any hoove grow: to conclude, if a Horse stand upon his owne dung (being very well watered) so hee doe not lye in it, it is most soveraigne for the preserving of the hooves.

## CHAP. CXXIII.

*For any hurt upon the hooves.*

**I**F your horse shall receive any hurt upon his hooves either outwardly or inwardly, as either by any false treading or crossing one foote upon another, or by any bruise either upon cogle-stone, flint, or such like, then for the cure thereof you shall first stop the hoofe with honey and vineger mixt together, for the space of three dayes at the least; and then afterward with the leaves of *Tamariske* well bruised and beaten together, untill the hoofe be sound againe.

Other Farriers use onely to stop the hoofe with sheeps grease and horse dung well mixt together, renewing it onely once a day untill it be well.

## CHAP. CXXIIII.

*How to soften hoofes.*

**T**He Hoofes of horses will by long and dry standing upon dry plaunchers, grow so hard that they will not be pared, nor cut by any Butteris: Besides, they will so take from the horse the sence and feeling of his feet, that the horse will goe very stiffe and unnimbly: wherefore when you shall perceiue any such defect, which is best knowne by offering to pare the hoofe, then presently you shall take an ounce of Sope, two ounces of unsleckt Lime, with as much strong lye as will make it soft like a Lenwicke salve, then with that stoppe the horses feet dayly till they come to a convenient softnesse. Hot glowing embers put upon the Hoofe wil soften it.



## CHAP. CXXV.

*How to harden the hooves.*

**A**S dry standing, and dry keeping doth harden the hooves too much, so wet and moist keeping, as continuall going in marriſh grounds, or continuall ſtanding either upon dirt or the horſes owne dung, or too hot ſtoppings will make a horſes hooves too ſoft; in ſo much that the horſe through the tenderneſſe thereof, will neither be able to goe, nor beare any ſhooe; which you ſhall perceiue by the ſoft and eaſie cutting of the hoofe. The manner then to harden and cure them is, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, firſt to burne an old ſhooe ſole, then ſeeth it well in vineger, and therewith bathe the horſes hooves, at the leaſt twice a day, and it will harden them.

Other ſkilfull Farriers uſe to take of the powder of Galls, of Branne, and of Salt, of each a handful; boile theſe wel in a pottle of ſtrong vineger, and therewith bathe the hooves, and in a ſhort ſpace it will harden them.

## CHAP. CXXVI.

*Of the Malt-long on the hoofe.*

**T**He Malt-long, or as ſome Farriers call it, the Malt-worme, is a cankerous ſorrance above the Hoofe, juſt upon the coronet; which will breake out into knobbes and branches, and out of the ſame will run a watriſh ſharpe lye or humour, which will venom the whole foote; as for the ſignes, they are the

appa-

apparant sight of the sorrhance, and the continuall running out of the thin water. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, if it be in the Summer time, to take blacke Snayles, and Bur rootes, and beating them well together, lay them unto the sore, and renew them once in twenty foure houres. But if it bee in the winter, then take the scraping of a pans bottome, or of a Cauldron, and put thereto an handfull of the inner Greene barke or pills of the Elder tree; and having beaten them well together in a mortar, lay it unto the sore, and renew it once a day, and it will heale it. Others use to take Garlick, Pepper, and hony, of each a like quantity, stamp them very well together, and anoynt his tongue with a little thereof, and then lay some to his pastornes, and that will cure the Sorrhance.

#### CHAP. CXXVII.

*How to skinne any sore foote.*

**T**HERE is nothing better to skinne any sore foote of what accident or sorrhance soever it proceed, then to take Turpentine simply of it selfe, and therewith every day to anoynt the sore foote, and it will not onely gather skinne, but hoofe also, if it be in a place where any such need requireth. Also white lead and Traine-oyle beaten together will doe the like.

#### CHAP. CXXVIII.

*Of goured or swolne legges.*

**T**HE gorge or goured legs, is an ill sorrhance, being a grievous swelling in the nether part of the legges,



legges, proceeding either from the melting of the greafe by immoderate labour, and then wanting wherewith to avoyde that greafe out in excrements, it falleth downe into the limbes, and there it breedeth this swelling; or else when a horse is exceedingly heated, and then without care set up, and taketh cold, in so much that the blood falleth downe into his legs, and there congealeth, and maketh his legs to swell. To conclude, they doe sometimes proceede from hard beating in hard wayes in the Summer time, which first raiseth up windgals, and then those Windgals offending the sinewes, maketh them to swell, and this is the worst gourding, because ever for the most part lamenesse doth follow it.

The signes are, the horses legs will ever bee most swolne when he standeth still in the house, and least when he is in travell, especially if he travell in much water; and the swelling most commonly is accompanied with some small scabs, and in the end it will breake out into the scratches. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, is, to draw him with a hot Iron a handfull above the knee, and then rope his legges with a soft rope of hay wet in cold water, and let it so remaine a day and a night, and it will take away all the swelling. Other *Farriers* take two pound of nerve-oyle, two pound of blacke sope, a pound of Boares greafe, and melt and boyle all these well together: then straine it and so let it coole: then when you have any neede, anoynt and chafe your horses legs therewith; and make it sinke in the better, anoynt him first with Nerve-oyle, and hold a hot Iron against his legs to make it melt, then use

use the other oyntment in the same manner, which done, keepe his legge cleane from dust, by lapping a linnen rowler about them.

Others of our later *Ferriers* use to take up the veines beneath the knee, and let him bleed well, then knit the veine both above and below, and then annoynt his legs with this oyntment: Take of Frankinsence, Rozen, and fresh grease, of each a like quantity, and having boiled them wel together, then straine it, and use it once a day as you shal have occasion, and it wil heale any Gorge whatsoever; onely for the taking up of the veines, you may if you wil, forbear it, fith if it be not done with great cunning, it wil make the horse stiffe ever after. See further in the new Additions for any straine in generall, noted thus ♀.

### CHAP. CXXIX.

*A most certaine and approved cure for any Surded or sweld Legges, by what accident soever.*

**F**irst with a Fleame pricke the sweld parts, then take a pint of Wine-lees, an ounce of Comin-seedes, and an handfull or more of Wheate flowre, and boyle them till they be thicke, then apply this pultus very hot to the sweld part, and renew it but once in 24 houres, and if this in two or three dayes draw it to an head, then launce it, and heale it either with a playster of Shooc-makers Waxe, or else with the yolke of an Egge, Wheate-flowre, and Horney beatent together to a salve.

But if it doe not draw to any head, and yet the



Swelling continue, then take of Pitch a quarter of a pound, and as much Virgine Waxe, of Rozen halfe a pound, of the juyce of Hyssop halfe an ounce, of *Galbanum* halfe an ounce, of *Myrre* secondary halfe a pound, of *Bdelium Arabicum* halfe an ounce, of Deeres suet halfe a pound, of *Populeon* halfe an ounce, of the droppes of Storax halfe an ounce, boyle all these together in an earthen pot, and after it is cooled, take of *Bitumen* halfe a pound, of *Armeniacke*, an ounce and an halfe, and of *Costus* as much, beate these into fine powder, and then incorporate them with the other, and boyle them all over againe: which done, powre the whole mixture into cold Water, and then role it into severall roles, playsterwise; after spread this playster upon sheeps Leather, and fold it about the sweld member, and this will both assuage it, and give much strength to the sinewes. You shall by no meanes remove this playster so long as it will sticke on.

This playster is wonderfull soveraigne, and of singular use; for the horse that is continually kept therewith, I meane, that hath it applyed to his lumbe; ver when he cometh from travaile, hee shall never be troubled with sweld legges, nor yet ever put out Windgall.

Now if you will neither goe to this cost, nor endure this trouble, yet would have your horse cured of this infirmity, then know there is not any thing better, or more approoved, then continually both before and after travaile, and in the house many times in the day, to lave and wash your horses legges, or other sweld parts, with the coldest and clearest

clearest fountaine water that you can get, and sometimes let the Horse stand in some cold running stream the space of a quarter of an houre or more, up to the knees and Cambrels, but in any case no further.

This medicine how poore soever it looke, is of much vertue, and though I Write of cold water, yet is the operation hot and fiery. Onely this you must take to your remembrance, that this application appertaines not to impostumations, but unto straines and swellings, and bruises, which are without much anguish.

#### CHAP. CXXX.

##### *Of the Farcy or Fashions.*

**T**HE Farcy (of our ignorant Smiths called the Fashions) is of all outward Sorriances the vilest, the most poysonous, infectious, and the most dangerous (being any whit neglected) otherwise the most easiest, and with the least cost or trouble to be helped. It is a kind of creeping ulcer, growing in knots, ever following alongst some one Veine or other, and sometimes alongst divers or sundry Veines, according to the strength of the infection. It proceedeth sometimes from corrupt blood ingendred in the body, sometimes from outward wounds or hurts received by cankerous or poysonous instruments, as rusty spurs, rusty forkes, biting of dogges or Horses, biting of Tickes, hogs lice, or such like; sometimes by the rubbing of Swine against the legges of the horse,



horse, or by lying in the litter where swine have lain, or by enterfearing, or hewing one leg upon another: but generally it proceedeth from an evill habite of the body, being surteited by disorderly and unruly travell, whereby the blood being heated, the grease melted, and sudden cold taken, there groweth such obstructions in the blood, and such putrifaction in the body, that it can no way evacuate or avoyde, but by these small knots, pustules, or ulcers, which are so infectious, that as many horses as doe gnaw or gnappe upon the horse infected, will within one moneth have the same disease: or if the horse infected doe bite any other, he will infect him also, and this infection without present cure, is mortall, and will kill any horse; therefore whensoever you have any horse troubled with this sorrhance, see that you separate him from other horses to prevent the danger.

Now for the signes, they are the apparance and palpable feeling of the knots, which knots are never but accompanied with great swellings and rancklings, running alongst as the veines runne, and dividing themselves as the branches of the veines divide, the number of the knots multiplying and encreasing untill the body be universally covered over, or else that the member (if it be in a member) bee utterly deformed and mishapen.

Now the cure (according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*) is, first let him blood on his necke-veine, and on both his spur-veines, then give the horse this drinke: Take a gallon of water, and put into it a good handfull of Rewe, and a pound of Hempe-

Hempe-seed, both being well bruised in a mortar; then boyle them in water till the one halfe be consumed, and give the horse this to drinke in the morning fasting, being cold, for divers mornings together, and it will cure him.

Others of the ancient *Farriers* use first to let the horse blood in that veine where the sorrhance first riseth, as nigh the sore place as may be, and let him bleed well: then fire or cauterize every knot one by one, taking the knot in your left hand; and pulling it so hard as you can from his body, to the intent you may the better pierce the knot with a round blunt hot iron, of the bignesse of a mans fore-finger, without doing the body any hurt, and let the matter out, leaving none unburned, being little or much: that done, annoynt every knot so burned with hogs grease warmed, every day once untill the cores bee ready to fall; and in the meane time prepare a good quantity of old urine, and when you see the cores ready to fall, then boyle the urine, and put therein a little Copporas and salt, and a few strong nettles, and with that water being warme, wash out all the cores and all the corruption: that done, fill every hole immediately with the powder of unfleckt lime, continuing thus to doe every day once, untill the holes be closed up; and if any bee more ranker then others, fill those with Verdigrease, and during this cure, let the horse be thinly dycted, that is to say, with straw and water onely, unlesse it be now and then to give him a loafe of bread, or a little other provender: for the lower he is kept in flesh, the sooner hee will heale; and in any wise let his necke either be yoked in



in an old bottomelesse paile, or else splented with staves in such sort, that hee may not come to licke any of his sores, and the lesse rest he hath, the better will be his amendment. Now there bee other later Farriers which for this forrance take a good quantity of Mistelthoe, honey and blacke sope, and boyle them very well in old urine, and being very warme, wash your horse all over therewith, every day once for the space of five or sixe daies, and it will helpe it. Others use to cut the horse two inches long, downe the forehead, and open it in the midst thereof on both sides two inches, and put thereto a tampin made of the inner rinde of Elder barke which is Greene, and looke that it lye crosse the cut; for so it will destroy all the venemous humour in his body, and it will heale him very perfectly, having beene very oft approved. Others use to take a very sharpe bodkin, and to thrust it crosse-wise through the nether part of the horses nose, even through the small gristle, so that he may bleed well, or else to let him blood in the necke veine, then feele the knots, and as many as are soft, lance them, and let them run, then take strong lye, lime, and allome, and mixing them well together, bathe all the sore therewith, and it will cure him.

Others take a sharpe lance knife, and in the top of the horses fore-head somewhat above his eyes, make a long slit even unto the skul; then with a blunt instrument for the purpose, loose the flesh from the scalp a good compasse, then take carret roots cut into little thin round peeces, and put them betweene the skin and the skull, or for want of carret rootes, you may take

take red docke Roots, and see that they bee a little beaten or bruised before you put them in, and once a day see that you thrust out the matter, but by no means thrust out the roots: but if the rootes will not stay in, the with a needle & silke stich the wound together, that it may hold in the medicine; then once a day annoint the wound with fresh butter: this is held a very certaine cure for the Farcy, for looke how this wound thus made, shall rot, waste, and grow sound, so shal the forrance break, dry up, and be healed; onely the fault of this cure is, that it will be somewhat long in healing, and is a foule eye sore until it be whole.

Now there be other Farriers, which after the putting in of roots, as is afore said, use to burne all the fore place round about with a hot Iron; and then with another blunt hot Iron as big as a mans finger, to burne the sores in the midst, till the white matter come forth, then with a paire of pinsons plucke out the knots; this done, annoint all the fore places with sope, and then dresse him no more the space of foure or five dayes, in which time you must prepare a good quantity of strong pisse, with the which you must wash him every day, the pisse being first made scalding hot, and rub the sores well until they beginne to bleed; then having dryed all the fore places, throw on the powder of unfleckt lime, or of burnt allome, which will heale better then lime. Now if you see that in any of the sores through negligent dressing, there riseth proud flesh so high, that you cannot correct it sufficiently with the afore-said powder, then you may burne any such place so fore or forer, as you did at the first, and dresse it  
as



in an old bottomelesse paile, or else splented with staves in such sort, that hee may not come to licke any of his sores, and the lesse rest he hath, the better will be his amendment. Now there bee other later Farriers which for this forrance take a good quantity of Mistelthoe, honey and blacke sope, and boyle them very well in old urine, and being very warme, wash your horse all over therewith, every day once for the space of five or sixe daies, and it will helpe it. Others use to cut the horse two inches long, downe the forehead, and open it in the midst thereof on both sides two inches, and put thereto a tampin made of the inner rinde of Elder barke which is Greene, and looke that it lye crosse the cut; for so it will destroy all the venemous humour in his body, and it will heale him very perfectly, having beene very oft approved. Others use to take a very sharpe bodkin, and to thrust it crosse-wise through the nether part of the horses nose, even through the small gristle, so that he may bleed well, or else to let him blood in the necke veine, then feele the knots, and as many as are soft, lance them, and let them run, then take strong lye, lime, and allome, and mixing them well together, bathe all the sore therewith, and it will cure him.

Others take a sharpe lance knife, and in the top of the horses fore-head somewhat above his eyes, make a long slit even unto the skul; then with a blunt instrument for the purpose, loose the flesh from the scalp a good compasse, then take carret roots cut into little thin round peeces, and put them betweene the skin and the skull, or for want of carret rootes, you may  
take

take red docke Roots, and see that they bee a little beaten or bruised before you put them in, and once a day see that you thrust out the matter, but by no means thrust out the roots: but if the rootes will not stay in, the with a needle & silke stich the wound together, that it may hold in the medicine; then once a day annoint the wound with fresh butter: this is held a very certaine cure for the Farcy, for looke how this wound thus made, shall rot, waste, and grow found, so shall the forrance break, dry up, and be healed; onely the fault of this cure is, that it will be somewhat long in healing, and is a foule eye sore until it be whole.

Now there be other Farriers, which after the putting in of roots, as is afore said, use to burne all the fore place round about with a hot Iron; and then with another blunt hot Iron as big as a mans finger, to burne the sores in the midst, till the white matter come forth, then with a paire of pinsons plucke out the knots; this done, annoint all the fore places with sope, and then dresse him no more the space of foure or five dayes, in which time you must prepare a good quantity of strong pisse, with the which you must wash him every day, the pisse being first made scalding hot, and rub the sores well until they beginne to bleed; then having dryed all the fore places, throw on the powder of unfleckt lime, or of burnt allome, which will heale better then lime. Now if you see that in any of the sores through negligent dressing, there riseth proud flesh so high, that you cannot correct it sufficiently with the afore-said powder, then you may burne any such place so sore or forer, as you did at the first, and dresse it  
as



as before. Now there be other *Farriers*, which when they see the Farcy to have beene old and long gone, and that it is so far entered into one member or other, that the member is disfigured, they will then first purge the horse with some strong purgation, of which you may find choice in a Chapter before written, and then under his belly put in one rowle either of haire or leather; or on the pitch of his shoulder of his grieved legge, (if it be before) or else on the stifling place, if his grieve be behind, put in another Rowle, and so keepe those two places together with the issue in his fore-head open, until the cure be finished; then with another hot Iron burne all his leg downe with long strikes, even from the body to the hoofe, not above an inch one strike from another, the edge of the Iron being not above a strawes breadth, and draw your stroake ever downward with the haire, and burne him no deeper than that the skin may looke browne. Now when by this practice you have cured the disease, if then the member bee unfashionable, or by swellings out of all forme, then you shal lay unto the member a plaister made of Wine lees, and wheate flower, and rowle it with a Wollen rowler, renewing it once in twenty foure houres, till the member be asswaged, and this practice will heale any great sweld Legge, if it be applyed and continued with patience; but if by former dressings, burnings, manglings, or cuttings of some ignorant *Farriers*, there bee any extraordinary hard or horny substance growne about the member which the playster afore-sayd will not resolve; then you shal take of Virgine waxe halfe a pound, of Myrre one pound,

pound, of Raisins a pound, of *Galbanum* halfe a pound, of *Costus* sixe ounces, of *Armoniack* sixe ounces, of swines grease two pounds; put your swines grease first into an earthen pot, and having placed it in a broad cauldron full of water, then make a soft fire under it, to the end that your water may boyle; and when you doe perceive your swines grease is almost melted, then shal you put in all the other simples, except the *Costus*, and when they are all molten, which wil aske five or sixe houres boyling at the least, then your *Costus*, which is a white roote, being beaten into fine powder, you shal adde to the afore-said things after it is taken from the fire, and incorporate them all very well together, then make a plaister thereof upon a peece of sheepes leather, somewhat bigger then the sore, and this plaister without renewing wil serve for at least thirty dayes with a very little refreshing, onely you must once a day take it off, and rub his legges very wel, for feare it itch, which may cause the horse to beat and stampe with his foot, and so rather increase, than decrease the swelling; and you must regard, that you doe not rowle him too strait, for that is most hurtfull. It shall not be amisse now and then to ride him into the water, and walke him an houre after, then bringing him into the Stable, rub his legges well, then warme his playster over a Chafing dish and coales, and so lay it on againe; and this practice in two or three moneths will take away any deformity of swelling, be the member never so uncomely.

Now there be other *Farriers* which for this *Farcy* if it be but young, and especially if it bee about the head:



head or face of a horse, will take only of *Aqua vitae* two spoonfuls, of the juyce of *Garlick* two spoonfuls, and of the juyce of *Rew*, or hearbe of *Grace*, two spoonfuls, mixe them well together, then take plegants or round bals of flaxe, and steepe them therein, and then stop them hard into the Horses eares, then take a needle and thrid, and stitch the tips of his two eares together, by meanes whereof he cannot shake out the medicine, and use the horse thus three severall mornings together, and it will kil the *Farcy*, as it hath beene oft prooved.

Other Farriers use to take *Drag-woorts* or ground-sell, and beate it well in a mortar with white Salt, and then stop it hard to the horses eares, and so eyther stitch them together, or with a broad inkle binde them up; renewing it once in foureteene houres for three or foure dressings, and it will heale any reasonable *Farcy*.

Others use to annoint al the sores either with *Tansy* & *Verdjuyce* boild together, or else with *Boares grease* very hot, and that wil kil it. Others use first to wash the sores with old urine, then take the powder of *Glasse*, *Brimstone*, and *Hogs grease* wel stamped and beaten together; then opening or slicing the knots, annoynt them all therewith, and it wil cure them immediately. Other Farriers use to let the horse blood, if it be at the beinning of the disease, or else not; and then to burne all the knots as is aforesayd, and then to heale the burnings with tarre, oyle and honey mixt together, and give him with a pint of *Malmsey*, two or three spoonfuls of the powder *Diapente*: or else give him foure ounces of the powder

der of Wal-wort, or Dan-wort, and with a pint and a halfe of Malmsey, three dayes together : after that take an ounce of *Aloes*, one ounce of *Centuary*, one ounce of *Opoponax*, beate them all into fine powder, and give them him to drinke in a pint and an halfe of Malmsey warmed, wherein the roots of the afore-said herbe called Wal-wort, or Dan-wort have beene sodden : use to ride him oft until he sweat, and when the disease is killed, turne him to grasse : for running in the open ayre is very wholesome.

There be other which take blacke sope, *Arsenicke*, unfleekt Lyme, Verdigrease, and red Lead, worke all these well together, and opening the knots, dresse them therewith, til you see they begin to dry up & die. Others open the knots with a hot Iron, and then take blacke sope, and great bay salt beaten together, and halfe so much as of them, of Verdigrease, and boyle the verdigrease with fresh grease, and then take a saucer-ful of Mustard, and put them all together, and dresse the sores therewith.

There be others that take three ounces of *Quicke-silver*, and put it into a bladder, with two spoonefuls of the juyce of Oranges or Lemons, and shake them together to coole the *Quick-silver*: then take halfe a pound of fresh hogges-grease, and of Verdjuice an ounce ; put all these in a trend dish, and worke them well together : Then annoynt the knots with this oyntment, till they rot : Then let them out with a sharpe knife, and annoynt them still, and put into his eares the juyce of Rag-weed, and the sores will dry up. This medicine is very wel approved. Other take blacke sope, mustard made of Wine vinegar, and red

Hh

lead,



lead; mixe all these together, and anoynt the veine all along, holding a hot Iron close to the fore, to make the oyntment strike in, and do thus once a day until the sores dry up. Other *Farrier* take of the juice of *hemlock* a good quantity, and dipping tow therein, stop his eares therewith, then open all the knots, and thrust in salt. Lastly, give him to drinke sweet wort mixt with Fennel and Treacle. Other *Farriers* take the butter burre; and being dryed and beaten to powder, strew it up upon the Knots after they have beene opened; and then give him two or three sponesfuls of the same powder with a pint of Malmsey to drinke; and it will cure the Farcy, and it is also exceeding good for all manner of ulcers; the roote is strong in smell, and bitter in taste.

Others take Sulphure, Orpiment, unslect lime, and mixing them together, put it into the Knots, and it will kill the Farcy: which done, anoynt him with Bolearmony made into powder, and incorporated with strong vinegar, the iuyce of *Houslicke*, and of White leeks, and *Solatro*. Other *Farriers* after they have let the horse blood will boyle in vinegar, beane flowre, and swines grease, then adde a pretty quantity of oyle, and then straine it, then adde one part of Aloes, and two of Brimstone, and boyle it a little; then being warme anoynt all the sore places therewith, or else anoynt them twice a day with the iuyce of Smallage, and the yelkes of egges Beaten together.

There be other *Farriers* which take two ounces of oyle de bay, one of *Euforbium*, and two ounces of Arsnicke, and mixing them together, anoynt the

the sores therewith, and it will kill the Farcy. Now after all these many Receipts, of which not any but hath beene approved to be very good, yet these two which I will now rehearse, I have ever found to be the most excellent for any manner of Farcy whatsoever, whether it be as our simple smiths tearme it, a dry Farcy, a wet or water Farcy, or a running Farcy, all being indeed but one Farcy, and proceeding from one cause; onely some horses not having such fluxe of humors in them as some have, the knots will be unwilling to breake, and then they say it is a dry Farcy: others of the contrary part will breake as fast as the knots arise, and runne filthy matter, and then they call it a water Farcy: others will spread in many parts of the body, yet not breake, but as it were move betwixt the skinned and the flesh, and that they call a running Farcy.

Now all these are but one Farcy, and have but one certaine cure, which is this. First, with diligent heed marke upon what principall veine of the horses body the Knots doe arise, and note how they spread & run, then if the Farcy be divided into sundry branches, according as the veine doth divide, you shall take the last knot of every branch, which for the most part, will be hard, and not come to rottenesse; and then slit them, and fill them with your Knives point full of white Mercury: then those which you finde to be rotten, let the matter forth, and anoynt them with blacke sope and Mercury mixt together; then within a day or two you shall see those which you drest with Mercury simply, to have their cores fall out; and the rest which you drest with blacke sope,



will dry up: then anoynt them all with fresh butter molten till they be whole. Now if you perceive any new knots to arise, then you shall dresse them likewise with *Mercury* simply, as was said before, and not leave any uncured. Now if the Farcy be not very contagious, but as it were, newly begun, then if you only take blacke Sope and Mercury, as before said, and anoynting your finger and your thumb therewith, doe but dip and bruiſe every knot, and within two or three dayes after they will dry up and heale. But if the Farcy be foule and desperate, that is to say, either universally spread over the body, or so gotten into any limbe or member, that the limb is deformed, and hath lost his proportion, so that a man can neyther judge which way the veines run, nor in what part the knots are most venemous; because that healing one, two new ones wil arise.

✶ In this same case you shall first give your horse a strong scouring or purgation, according to the strength of his body, of all which a pint of Muscadine, or a quart of strong Ale, with halfe a pint of the oyle of Oates, is the most soveraigne: then shall you take a penny-worth of Tar, and two good handfuls of Pidgeons dung, and twelve penyworth of white Mercury; mixe al these very wel together, and make them into a salve: then with a slice daube it all over the sore place, leaving no part of the member uncovered: then heating the bar of Iron red hot, hold it so neere that it may dry the salve upon the sore: then lay more fresh salve on, and dry it in like manner, and let it so rest until it fal off, and it wil kil any Farcy whatsoever at the first or second dressing. There bee others

others which will stop the Knots with the powder of Verdigrease and of Arsaicke mixt together, or else wash the sore with *Aqua fortis*; but they are neither so good as the other before rehearsed.

## CHAP. CXXXI.

*Of the Canker in any part of the body.*

**A** Canker is a poysonous creeping ulcer, fretting and gnawing the flesh in great bredth, whose beginning is Knotty, not much unlike to the Farcy, and spreadeth it selfe into divers places; and being exulcerated, gathereth together at the length into one wound or filthy sore, from whence there runneth a thin sharpe lye, which galleth off the skin wheresoever it goes, and so both increaseth the ulcer, and maketh it more incurable. It proceedeth from Melancholy and filthy blood, ingendred either by ranknesse of keeping, or else by too extreame poverty; and if this naughty blood be mixt with sharpe and salt humours, then it causeth more paineful and grievous exulceration. It may also proceed from some loathsome wound which is neither cleane kept, nor well drest, but in such sort, that the corrupt matter thereof poysoneth the other cleane parts of the body; for signe of the sorrhance there needeth no more but the description already mentioned. And for the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is first to let the horse blood in those veines which are next the sore, and make him bleed well; then take of allom halfe a pound, of greene Copporas as much, of white Copporas one quarterne, and a good handful of Salt,

Hh 3

boyle



boyle all these things together in faire running water from a pottle to a quart: and this water being warme, wash the sore therewith with a clout, and then sprinkle thereon the powder of unflecked lime, continuing so to doe every day once the space of fiftene dayes; and if you see that the Lime doe not mortifie the ranke flesh, and keepe it from spreading any further, then take of sope halfe a pound, of *Quick-silver* halfe an ounce, & beat them together in a pot until the *quick-silver* be so wel mingled with the sope, as you can perceiue no *quick-silver* in it, and with an iron slice or splatter, after that you have washed the sore with the strong water afore said, cover the wound with this oyntment, continuing thus to doe every day once untill the canker leave spreading abroad. And if it leave spreading, and that you see the ranke flesh is well mortified, and that the edges begin to gather a skin, then after the washing dresse it with Lime, as before, continuing so to do until it be whole, and in the dressing suffer no filth that comes out of the sore to remaine upon any whole place about, but wipe it cleane away, or else wash it away with warme water: and let the horse during this cure, be as thinly dyeted as may be, and thoroughly exercised. Now if this cankerous ulcer happen to be in the taile of a horse, as it is often scene, and which you shal perceiue as wel by the falling away of the haire, as also by the wound, then you shall make a bolster of soft cloth or sponge, and wet it with vineger both within and without, and so bind it fast to the sore; and alwaies when it waxes dry, you must wet it againe; do thus twice or thrice a day, if it be done oftner it is better: so shal you continue

nue for three or foure daies, & then heale it up as you heale any ordinary wound, that is, with hogs grease and Turpentine molten together, or such like. There be other *Farriers* which for the Canker of the body doe take one ounce of the juyce of the roote *Affedely*, three ounces of unsleckt Lime, two ounces of *Orpiment* or *Arsnicke*, put these in an earthen vessell close stoppt, and either boile or bake it in an Oven til it come to a powder; then first wash the sore with strong Vineger, and after strew this powder thereon. Others use to take *Garlicke*, and beate it in a mortar with Swines grease till it come to a salve, and then having washt the sore either with vineger, Allome water, Copporas water, or old urine, annoynt it once or twice a day with it till it bee whole. Other *Farriers* take the hearbe *Mullen*, and bruise it, and mixe it with Salt and Verdigrease, and dresse the sore therewith morning and evening, for the space of three or foure dayes; then use the same salve againe as long without Verdigrease: then lastly use the hearbe alone; but if at any time you see it do begin to waxe raw, then begin againe, as is aforesaid, and ever before you annoynt it, wash it first with vineger and grease mixt together. Other take Savin, Bay-salt, and Rew stampt with Barrowes grease, and anoynt the sore therewith, and when the ill humours are kild, (which you shall know by the whitenesse) then heale it with Tar, Oyle and Honey mixt together.

Lastly (and which I hold the best) take vineger; Ginger, and Allome, and mixe them together til they come to a salve, and with it annoynt the sore, and it wil both kill the poyson, and heale the ulcer.



## CHAP. CXXXII.

## Of the Fistula.

**A** Fistula is a deepe, hollow, crooked, mattering ulcer, and for the most part, commonly a great deale straiter at the mouth then at the bottome, being ingendred in some wound, bruise, sore, or Canker not thoroughly healed. The signes to know it are, the hollownesse of the sore descending downward from the Orifice, and the thinnesse of the matter which issueth from the same; besides the crookednes which you shall find in the ulcer when you search it.

Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, it is thus: First search the bottome thereof with a Goose or Swans quill, or with a smal rod wel covered with a fine linnen cloth; and having found the bottome thereof, cut it so large with a Razor, that the matter may have free passage downwards; but take heed in lancing it, that you cut not any master-finew, or maine tendant: then having stanchd the blood either with Swines dung, or such like, take of good Honey a pint, of Verdigrease one ounce, and boyle them well together upon a soft fire three quarters of an houre; then having cleansed the sore by tying a taint of flax or fine linnen cloth to the poynt of your quill, with a thrid draw it softly into the wound: then cut of your quill or feather so long that you may take good hold in the nether end of the taint, which then shall come out at the bottome of your sore: then dip another taint in the aforesaid salve, and then with a needle and a thrid, make fast your taint to your first clout at the upper end there-

of;

of; then draw out your first taint downward; so shall you draw your taint with the medicine easily into the Wound, and your first taint wil have cleansed the fore very cleane, and if the matter doe abound much, then it shal be good to dresse him twice a day : but you must not dresse him with this medicine no more but one day, and afterward you shall dresse him with this medicine following : Take of Turpentine, of Swines grease, of hony, and sheeps suet, of each alike quantity, and melt them together, and make a salve thereof, wherewith you shal dresse your fore foure dayes for one day that you dresse him with the former medicine, made of honey and verdigrease; and take heed that you make your taint of very soft linnen cloath, and fine flaxe: and let not your taint bee big after the first and second time dressing, but presently after the first dressing you must cover the fore place, and round about the same with this *Pultus* here following.

First, take two gallons of faire water, and having boild and scum'd it so long, til you have perfectly cleansed it of all corruption: then take two or three handfals of Mallowes, and as much of Violet leaves, and two or three of oat-meale, and having boyled all these three things well in your former prepared water, you shal adde thereto of hogs mort, and fresh butter of each a pound: then shal you let it boyle so long till it become thicke like paste or pap, and then apply it hot to the fore, and take heed that in opening this fore you let not any ayre strike into it: And on the other side, that you keepe it not too hot. And if this Fistula be in the horses Withers, you must



must take heed that you tye his head to the racke, so as he may neither lye downe, nor put his head lower then his manger : for if you suffer him to feede on the ground when he hath any grievous sore in his withers, it shal hardly bee possible ever to cure him ; but if you perceive the wound to heale a pace, and that it matter but a little, then shal it be enough to dresse him once a day : and also it shal bee good to take great heede that you make not your rent too bigge, and see that you use your *Pultus* til it be perfectly cured. Now there bee others of the ancient *Farriers* which use for this cure, first to search the depth of the *Fistula* either with a quill, or with some other instrument of Lead, which may be bowd every way : for unlesse you finde the bottome of it, it wil be very hard to cure : and having found the bottom, if it be in such a place as you may boldly cut, and make the way open with a Lancet or Razor, then make a slit right against the bottome, so wide, that you may thrust in your finger, to feele whether there be any bone or else gristle perished, or spungy, or loose flesh, which must bee gotten out ; and then taint it with a taint of flaxe dipped in this Oyntment : Take of *Myrre*, of *Aloes*, and of *Sarcocolla*, of each one ounce, of good honey fixe ounces, and of verdigrease two ounces, and melt al these on a gentle fire, and make them into a salve ; then being lukewarme, dresse the taint therewith, and bolster the taint with a bolster of flaxe, and if it be in such a place as the taint cannot conveniently be kept in with a band, then fasten on each side the hole, two ends of a shoos-makers thrid right over the bolster, to keepe  
in

in the taint, which ends may hang there as two laces, to tye and untie at your pleasure, renewing the taint every day once untill the sore leave mattering, and then make the taint every day lesser and lesser until it be whole: for you shal understand that this salve doth purge this Fistula of putrifaction, incarnateth and breedeth flesh, conglutinateth and eateth away all naughty flesh. Now when you have done as afore-said, then you shal close it up by sprinkling thereon a little unsleckt Lime; but if the Fistula be in such a place, as you can neither cut against the bottome, nor tie the same, then there is no remedy, but every time you dresse it, to powre into it either through some quill, or by some small squirt or serring, some strong white copporas water, or some alome water, so that it may goe downe to the bottome, and dry up the filthy matter: and this you must doe twice a day at least until it be whole. Now there be of our later Farriers which use this cure, after they have searcht the Fistula to the bottome, to take a pottle of white wine vinegar, of Camphaire halfe an ounce, of *Mercury precipitate* halfe an ounce, of Greene treacle three ounces, of red sage an handful, of yarrow and ribbe-wort of each an handful, of hony halfe a pint, of boares grease halfe a pint, boile all these together till a quart be consumed, and with this you shal wash and cleanse the wound: then to heale up the same you shal take oyle of roses, virgin waxe, and rosen, of each alike quantity, of turpentine five ounces, of the gumme of Ivy and Deeres suet as much, boyle these together unto a salve, and then dresse the sore therewith until it be whole,



whole, observing ever, both in this cure, and all the rest; that as soone as you have put in your tent, to clap a plaister over it of pitch, rozen, masticke, turpentine and hogsgrease molten together, which will both comfort the wound by taking away evil humors, and also keep in the tent from falling out. Now if the Fistula bee in or about the head of the horse, then you shal take the juyce of houslicke, and dippe therein a locke of wooll, and put it into the horses eares, and it wil stay the inflammation; but if it be exulcerated and broken, then you shal cut away all the rotten and false flesh, and then bathe it wel with the grounds of ale made warme, and then wipe the blood cleane away; then take butter, rosen, and frankinsence a little, and boyle them all together, and boyling hot powre it into the wound, & then clap on the plaister, do thus once a day til the horse be whole. Now if there be any inflammation behinde the horses eares, or that it grow to any impostumation in that place, then you shal boyle the roots of mallows in water til it waxe tender, then bruise them, and straine out the water cleane, and being warme, apply it to the sore, and it wil heale it.

There be other ancient & skilful Farriers, which for this general Fistula use as a prevention thereof, to take hony and sheeps suet, and making it scalding hot, to scald the sore extreamely therewith upon the first swelling, and it wil keepe the Fistula that it shal not breed; but if it breed, then you shal launce it in the nethermost part, and put into it as much *Mercury sublimatum* as a pease, being first abated with faller oyle, and laid on with a feather; after that take of verdigrease

digrease foure peny worth, of vitrioll a halfe peny-worth, of red lead three peny worth, beat these together, and every day wash the wound with copporas water, made with copporas and Elder leaves in Summer, and with the inner Greene barke in Winter; after the washing, take the powder, and put it on the fore, and after it drop on a little oyle.

Other Farrier take the outermost Greene shells of wal-nuts, and put them into a tub, strowing three or foure handfuls of bay salt upon them, some in the bottom, some in the midst, and some on the top, and so keepe them all the yeere; and when you will use them, take a pint of them and a little bay salt, and halfe a quarter of a pound of blacke sope, with halfe a spooneful of May butter, (and for want therof other butter) and mixe and incorporate them together; and then spread it on the fore, or taint the fore therewith; but two houres before you lay it on, annoynt the fore with Venice turpentine, and do thus til the Fistula be whole:

Other Farrier take *Vnguentum Agyptiacum*, which is made of honey a pint, vinegar halfe a pint, allome a quarterne of a pound, and verdigrease one ounce and an halfe, and seeth them all together til they be thicke, and of a tawny colour; this is called *Egyptiacum*, and to make it the strongest way, is to put in of *Mercury sublimatum* one ounce made into powder, and of Arsnicke two scruples, and boyle it together: with either of these, especially the strongest, dresse any Fistula, canker, or foule old ulcer whatsoever, and it will kil it; and the weaker of these, which wanteth the *Mercury* and the Arsnicke, may be applied  
to



to the fistula in the mouth of a horse. Other Farriers take of *Sublimatum* made into powder one ounce, the midst of wel leavened bread slacke baked, three ounces, of *Neninten* drams; mingle them together with a little Rose-water, and make taints thereof, and dry them upon a tile, and at your pleasure taint your fistula therewith, and it wil assuredly kill it. Others take strong lye, honey, Roch-allome, and *Mercury*, and seeth them together, and squirt it into a fistula, and it wil kil it at the bottome, and when you meane to dry up a Fistula, take of red Wine, Goates dung, and beane flowre, and seeth them together, and apply it to the Fistula, and it will dry it up.

Now if you intend to sinke downe the swelling of a Fistula, first of all seare it with a drawing iron in this proportion ✕, and then take Rozen, sheeps suet, and Brimstone, and boyle them together, and lay it upon a Fistula very hot with a cloath, and it will sinke downe the swelling. It is also most excellent to take away a Wind-gal, if it be layd on after the Wind-gal is prickd, but not too hot, but very reasonable, and it wil keepe it also very cleane.

There be other *Farriers* which for a Fistula take Verdigrease, Butter and Salt melted together, and powre it scalding hot into the fore; and use this til all the flesh looke red; then taint it with Verdigrease, burnt Allome, Wheat-flowre, and the yolkes of eggs wel beaten and mingled together: Last of all, skinit with Barne and Soot mixt together.

## CHAP. CXXXII.

*A rare and true approved medicine to cure any Fistula, or hollow impostumation whatsoever.*

**T**AKE a pint of the strongest vinegar, and being hot upon the fire, mixe therewith the lome of a clay wal, which hath not any lime in it, but by no meanes do not picke out the chopt strawes or hay that is in the lome, but boyle them all together till it come to a salve: then being reasonable hot, spread it over all the sweld place, and over every part which you shal feele hard: and you shall do thus twice a day, and it wil not only ripen and breake the hollow ulcer, but also searce it to the bottome, and heale it. This medicine cureth any sore backe whatsoever, how grievously soever, either gald or bruised.

## CHAP. CXXXIII.

*Of the Anbury.*

**A**N Anbury is a great spungy Wart full of blood, which may grow upon any part of the Horses body, chiefly about the eye-brows, nostrils, or privy parts, and it hath a root like unto a Cocks stone. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is first to tie it about with a thrid or haire so hard as you can pull it, and the thrid wil eate in by little and little in such sort, as within seven or eight dayes it wil fall away of it selfe; and if it be so flat that you can bind nothing about it, then take it away with a sharpe hot iron, cutting it round about, and so deepe

as



as you leave none of the roote behind, and then dry it up with the powder of Verdigrease; but if it grow in such a sinewy place as it cannot bee conveniently cut away with a hot iron, then it is good to eat out the core with the powder of *Resalgar* or *Mercury*, and then to stop the hole with flaxe dipt in the white of an egge for a day or two: And lastly to dry it up with the powder of unfleckt Lime and hony, as is before taught. Other *Farriers* instead of tying the Wart with a thrid, doctye it with some horses haire: and that is a great deale the better, and wil rot it off sooner and safer.

## CHAP. CXXXV.

## Of the Cords.

**T**He Cords is a certaine string, which commeth from the shackle veine to the Gristle in the nose, and betweene the lip, the length of an Almond, or they be two strings like thrids, which lye above the knee, betwixt the knee and the body, and goeth like a smal cord through the body to the nostrils, making a horse to stumble much, and sometimes to fall also; and it is a disease very much incident to many young horses. The signes are, an apparant stiffe going, and much stumbling, without any outward or visible forrance; and the cure is, according to the opinion of our ancient *Farriers*, to take the end of a crooked Harts horn that is sharpe; put it under the cordes, and twind it ten or twelve times about, til the horse be constraigned to lift up his foot; then cut the corde asunder, and put a little salt into the issue, or cut it first at the knee, then at the end of his nose, and so draw

draw it upwards a spanne length, and cut that off. Other *Farriers* let the horse blood in the veine that descendeth in the inside of the leg by the breast, and take away at least a pottle of blood, and after seven dayes wash him with Beefe-broth, and it wil heale him.

Other *Farriers* take Mustard, Aqua-vitæ, and sallet oyle, and boyle them on the coales, and make a plaister and bind it to the place that is grieved, and it wil helpe.

Others take the grounds of Ale, and being made warme, bathe his legs therewith, and then rope them up with wet hay-ropes, and it wil make the horse perfectly sound.

## CHAP. CXXXVI.

### Of the String-halt.

**T**He String-halt, of some cald the Mary-hinchcho, is a suddaine twitching up of the horses hinder legges, as if he did tread upon needles, and were not able to endure his feete upon the ground; the signes whereof be, an apparant ill favoured manner of halting, most viffible to the eye. And the cure is, to take up the middle veine above the thigh, and underneath the same, then under the said veine there lyes a string, which string must be cut away: and then anoynt him with butter and salt, and he will both doe wel, and go plainly.

## CHAP. CXXXVII.



## CHAP. CXXXVII.

*Of a horse that is Spur-gald.*

**I**F a horse by the indiscretion of an evill rider, bee spur-gald, which is a disease most plaine both to be felt or seene: then the cure is, either to bathe it with urine and salt mixt together, or with Water and salt, or with warme vinegar, or else binde unto the place the crops or leaves of nettles stamped: and any of these will cure him.

## CHAP. CXXXVIII.

*Of wounds in generall.*

**W**Ounds, according to the opinion of all Farriers, is a solution, division or parting of the whole: for if there be no such solution, or division, then it is rather called a bruise then a wound; and therefore Wounds are most commonly made with sharpe or piercing weapons, and bruises with blunt weapons: notwithstanding if by such blunt weapons any part of the whole bee evidently broken: then it is to bee called a wound as well as the other; and these wounds doe proceed from some stroake, prick, or violent accident. Now of wounds some be hollow, and some be deepe and hollow: Againe, some wounds chance in fleshy parts, and some in bony and sinewy places: and those which chance in the fleshy parts, though they be very deepe, yet they be not so dangerous as the others, and therefore I will speak first of the most dangerous. If then a horse have a wound

wound newly made, either in his head, or in any other place that is full of finewes, bones, or gristles, then according to the opinion of the most ancient *Farriers*, you shall first wash the wound well with white wine warmed, and keepe it ever whilst you are in dressing it, covered with cloathes wet in warme white wine: that done, you shall search the bottome of the wound with a probe, or small instrument of Steele made for the purpose, suffering the wound to take as little winde or ayre as you can possible: then having found the depth, stoppe the hole close with a clout, untill your salve bee ready: then take of Turpentine, Mel-rosatum, oyle of Roses, of each a quarterne, and a little unwrought waxe, and melt them together, stirring them continually, that they may bee well mingled together; and if the wound bee a cut, make a handsome rowle, or round plegant of soft tow, so long and so bigge as may fill the bottome of the wound, which, for the most part, is not so wide as the mouth of the wound: then make an other rowle or plegant somewhat bigger to fill up the rest of the wound, even to the hard mouth, and let both these rowles be anoynted with the oyntment aforesaid made lukewarme; onely this you must ever observe, that if the wound be long and large, that then it is best, if you can conveniently, to stitch the wound together with a fine needle and a Crimson filke: for that will make it heale the sooner, and make the skarre lesse. But if the hurt be like a hole made with some pricke, then make a stiffe tent either of tow or lint, such a one as may reach the bottome, anoynted

Ij 2

with



with the afore said oyntment, and bolster the same with a little tow: and over both this and the other, or any wound whatsoever, as soone as your rowles, plegants, or tents are put in, you shall clap a sticking plaister made of pitch, rozen, masticke, and Turpentine melted together, as hath beene before taught, both to keepe in your salve, and to comfort the sore. Now if the mouth of the wound bee not wide enough, so as the matter may easily runne forth, if it be in such a place as you may do it without hurting any sinewe, then give it a pretty slit from the mouth downeward, that the matter may have the freer passage, and in any wise have an especiall regard that the tent may be continually kept in by one meanes or other, and also that it may not bee drowned within the wound, but by tying some thred about the upper end thereof, so kept that it may be taken out at pleasure. Now if the hole bee deepe, and in such a place as you may not cure it, then make your tent full as bigge as the hole, of a dry sponge that was never wet, so long that it may reach the bottome; and the tent being made somewhat full, with continuall turning and wrying of it, you shall easily get it downe, and then dresse the wound with this twice a day, cleansing the wound every time with a little white wine lul e warme: for this sponge anoynted with the oyntment afore said, will both draw and sucke up all the filthy matter, and make it so faire within as is possible; and as it beginneth to heale, so make your tent every day lesser and lesser, untill it be ready to close up, and never leave tainting it so long as it will receive a taint, be it never

so

so short : for hasty healing of wounds breedeth Fistulaes, which properly be old sores, and therefore must be healed like Fistulaes. Now if the wound proceede from any ancient impostumation, then you shall take two or three great Onions, and taking out the cores, put therein a little Bay-salt, and a little whole Saffron, and so roast them in the hot embers : then playster-wise lay them all hot on the wound, renewing it once a day till the wound be healed. Now if the upper skinne of the wound be putrified, and you would have it away, then make a playster of Cowes dung sod in milke, and clap it to for foure and twenty houres, and it will leave nothing that is vile about the wound. Others use generally for any cure whatsoever, to take a quarter of a pound of butter, of Tarre and blacke sope, of each halfe so much, and a little Turpentine : boye all but the sope together, then when you take it off the fire, put in the sope, and with this oyntment dresse any cut, and it will heale it.

Other Farriers use only to take hogges grease and Venice Turpentine, and to melt them together, and it will heale any wound. Other Farriers take eight drammes of Turpentine, foure drammes of new Virgine-waxe ; melt them in a pewter vessel, and stirre them well together, and when they are well melted and mixed, take them from the fire, and by and by whilst they be hot, powre into them halfe a pint of white wine, then after they be cold, throw away the Wine, and anoynt your hands with oyle of Roses, and worke the Wax and Turpentine well together ; after that put them into the pewter vessell againe, then put to them halfe an ounce of the gum



of Fir-tree, and three drammes of the juyce of Bettony; then seeth them well together untill the juyce of Bettony be wasted, then put to it three drammes of womans milke, or the milke of a red Cow, and seeth them once againe untill the milke bee wasted, and then put it in a close pot or glasse, and with this dresse any wound whatsoever, and it will heale it. Others use to take rosemary, & dry it in the shaddow, and beate it to powder, then wash the wound with vineger, or the urine of a child, and strew thereon the aforesaid powder, and it will heale any indifferent wound.

Other Farriers take worme-wood, *Marjoram*, *Pimpernel*, *Calamint*, *Olibanum*; beate them all into fine powder, then take waxe and Barrowes grease, and boyle them on a soft fire, untill they be as thicke as an oyntment or salve, with this dresse any wound, and it will heale it. Others use to take the toppes of nettles, butter, and salt, and beating them well in a mortar till it come to a salve, and it will draw and heale a wound. Now the powder of honey, and lime, or Turpentine simply of it selfe will dry up and skinne any wound. Take Turpentine, Honey, hogges grease, waxe, and Sheepes suet, of each a like, melt them well together to a salve, and they will heale any wound. Now if a horse be goared upon a stake, then you shall cast him, and powre into the wound butter scalding hot, and so let him lye till it be gone downe into the bottome, and doe thus once a day, till the wound be whole. If you desire to keepe a wound open, put into it the powder of greene Copporas, and it will doe it, but if you intend to heale it speedily,

speedily, then Wheat flowre and honey well beaten together to a salve will doe it; dressing the wound once a day therewith.

## CHAP. CXXXIX.

*Of a hurt with an Arrow.*

**I**F a horse be shot or hurt with an Arrow, taint the hole onely with Hogs-grease and Turpentine molten together, and renew it once a day until the wound be whole.

## CHAP. CXL.

*Of the healing of any old sore or ulcer.*

**O**Ld ulcers or sores are of three kinds, the first deepe, hollow, and crooked, and they be called Fistulaes: The second broad, shallow, but much spreading and encreasing, and they be called Cankers; and the last broad, deepe, blacke about the sides and bottome, yet not much increasing, although not at all healing, and they bee called old sores or ulcers: They proccede either from some great bruise, Wound or impostume, which is either venomd or abused by healing by contrary salves; or through the fluxe and aboundance of humours flowing downe to those parts through the negligence of a most unskillfull Farrier. The signes are, the long continuance of the sore, the thinnesse of the matter, which issueth away, and the blacknesse of the sore which is full of inflammation.

Now for the cure, according to the opinion of



the most ancient *Farriers* it is thus: First cleanse the fore well with white wine: then take Copporas and the leaves of Lillies, beate them wel in a mortar with Swines grease till it come to a perfect salve, and lay it upon the fore with flaxe, and then cover it with a plaister as in case of wounds, and renew it once a day, and it will heale it.

Other *Farriers* take Lime, and tough horse-dung, and mixe it very well together with Pepper, and the white of an egge, and lay it to the fore, renewing it once a day till the ulcer be cured.

Other *Farriers* strow on the fore the powder of Galls, and that will dry it up.

Others scald it once a day with hot oyle Olive, and that wil heale it.

#### CHAP. CXLII

*A most certaine and approved cure for the healing of any old Vlcer whatsoeuer.*

**T**Ake Masticke, Frankinsence, Cloves, green Copporas, and Brimstone, of each a like quantity, of Myrre double so much as of any one of the others: beate all to powder, then burne it on a Chaffing-dish and coales, but let it not flame: then as the smoake ariseth, take a good handfull of Lint or fine hurds, and hold it over the smoake, so that it may receiue all the perfume thereof into it, then when it is thoroughly well perfumed, put the lint or hurds into a very close boxe, and so keep it.

Now when you have occasion to use it: first wash the fore with urine or vinegar made warme, then dry it, and lastly lay on some of this lint or hurds, and

and thus doe twice a day, and it is a speedy and most infallible cure.

### CHAP. CXLII.

#### Of bruising or swellings.

**A**L L bruising and swellings come unto a horse either by accident, as by some blow, rush, pinch; or outward venoming, or else naturally, as through the fluxe of blood; or through the abundance of Winde. The signes are, the sightly appa-  
rance in what place or member soever they be: And the first which are those which come by accident, are properly called bruising or swellings; and the other if they do rot or corrode, and so turne to matter, are called impostumes.

Now for the generall cure of any bruise or swelling, according to the opinion of the auncient Farriers, it is thus; take of dry pitch, of gumme, of each an ounce: of *Galbanum*, or Lime, of each foure ounces, of *Bitumen* two ounces, of Waxe three ounces, melt and boyle them very wel together, then annoynt the sore place therewith once a day, and it will heale it. But if the swelling proceede onely from some bruise or rush, then you shall take two pints of Verjuyce, one pint of Barrie, and putting a little fine Hay thereto, boyle them very well together, then binde the Hay to the swelling very hot, and after powre on the liquor; doe thus three or foure dayes together, and it will take away the swelling.

Other Farriers take the toppes of Worme-wood, Pellitory of the Wal, *Brancke ursine*, beate them wel together.



together with Swines greafe, then seeth them; then adde a pretty quantity of honey, Linseed oyle, and Wheate meale; then stir it over the fire til all againe be sodden together, then lay it to the swelling, and renew it once a day til the swelling be gone.

Other *Farriers* use first to pricke the swelling with a fleame, then take of Wine lees a pint, as much Wheat-flowre as wil thicken it, and an ounce of Comen; boyle them together, and lay this somewhat warme unto it, renewing it every day once, until the swelling either depart, or else come to a head, which if it do not, then launce it, and heale it according to a wound.

Other *Farriers* take of Rozen, of Turpentine, and of Honey, of each halfe a pound, dissolve them at the fire, then straine them, and adde of Myrr, Sarcocoll, and the flowre of Fenugreeke, and of Linseed, of each an ounce; incorporate them altogether, and then make it thicke like a salve with the meale of Lupins, and lay it to the swelling, and it wil assuage it.

Other *Farrier* take of *Galbanum* and of *Ceruse*, of each an ounce, of oyle two ounces, and of Waxe three ounces, mixe them together over a soft fire, and when they are brought to a salve, then lay it unto the swelling, and it will assuage.

If you take onely rotten litter, or Hay boyld in strong urine, and apply it dayly unto any swelling, it wil take it away. Now if the swelling be upon the legges, and come by any straine: Then you shal take of Nerve-oyle one pound, of blacke sope one pound, of Boares greafe halfe a pound; melt and boyle them

all wel together, then straine it, and let it coole; then when occasion serveth, annoynt and chafe your horses legs therewith, holding a hot iron neere thereunto, to make the oyntment enter in the better; then rope up his legges, and keepe them cleane from dust or dirt: but if the swelling bee upon any part of the backe or body, then take of Honey and Tallow of each alike, and boyle them together, then spread it on a cloath, and lay it on the swolne place, and let it there sticke till it fall away of it selfe. Now if the swelling proceed from any windy cause, and so appeare onely in the horses belly, then you shaltake a sharpe pointed knife or bodkin, and arme it so with some stay, that it goe not too deepe for piercing his guts: then strike him therewith through the skin into his body, before the hollow place of his Haunch bone, halfe a foote beneath the backe bone, and the Winde will come out thereat; then if you put a hollow quill therein, or some feather to keepe it open a while, the Winde will avoide the better, then heale it up againe.

It is also very good to rake the Horse, and to ride him up and downe a little: but if the swelling be under the Horses jawes, or about any part of his head, then you shall take his owne dung hot, as soone as he makes it, and with a cloath binde it fast thereto, renewing it twice a day til the swelling be gone. See further in the new Additions for the Fistula, marked thus.



## CHAP. CXLIII.

Of Impostumes, and first how to ripen them.

**I**mpostumes are a gathering or knitting together of many and most corrupt humours in any part or member of the body, making that part to swell extreemly, and growing into such violent inflammation, that in the end they rot and breake out into foule matter, and running sores; they commonly proceed either from corruption of foode, or corruption of blood; they are at the first appearance, very hard and very sore; which hardnesse is the principal signe that they will rot. And of these impostumes, some bee hot impostumes, and some bee cold; yet for as much as every impostume must first be ripened, and brought to matter before it can be healed, we wil first speake of the ripening of them. If therefore you will ripen any impostume (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers:) You shall take of *Sanguis draconis*, of gum Arabicke, of new Waxe, of Masticke, of Pitch of Greece, of incense, and of Turpentine, of each a like quantity, and melting them together, and straining them, make a plaister thereof, and lay it to the impostume without remooving: and it wil both ripen, breake, and heale any impostume.

Other Farriers take *Sarcocolla*, red Waxe, and the flowre of *Euforbium*, and mixing them on the fire wel together, lay it to the impostume, and it will doe the like.

Other Farriers take of honey and of wheat meale,

of

of each a like quantity, and either boyle it in the Decoction of *Mallows*, or else mixe it with the yolke of an egge, and it wil ripen, breake, and heale ; yet it must be renewed once a day.

Other Farriers take Barly-meale, and boyle it with Wine and pidgeons dung, and so lay it to the impostume plaister-wise, and it wil ripen exceedingly.

Other Farriers take a handful or two of *Sorrell*, and lapping it in a *Docke-leave*, roast it in the hot Embers as you would a Warden, and then lay it to the impostume as hot as may be wel endured, renewing it once a day, and it will ripen, breake, and heale. A playster of shooc-makers waxe wil do the like also.

Other ancient Farriers take *Mallow* roots, and *Lilly* rootes, and then bruisse them, and put thereto hogges grease, and Lin-seed meale, and plaisterwise lay it to the impostume, and it wil ripen it, break it, & heale it perfectly. See further in the new additions for the Fistula, noted thus ♀.

#### CHAP. CXLIH.

##### Of cold impostumes.

**I**F the impostume doe proceed from any cold causes, as those which rise after cold taking, or when a horse is at grasse in the Winter season, then you shal take the hearbe cald Balme, and stampe it and hogges grease wel together, and so plaister-wise apply it to the sore, and it will heale it: or else when the impostume is ripe, open it in the lowest part with a hot iron, then wash it with warme urine; after that  
annoint



annoynt it with Tar and Oyle wel mixed together; and if you make your incision in the manner of a halfe Moone, it is the better.

Other *Farriers* take white Mints, and seeth them in Wine, Oyle, Ale, and butter, and so lay it to hot, and it wil heale it.

Other *Farriers* take Cuckoo spit, and stamp it with old grease, and so apply it, and it wil heale it.

Other *Farriers* take a handfull of *Rew*, and stampe it wel with the yolke of an egge and honey, and then apply it plaister-wise, and it wil heale any cold impostume.

#### CHAP. CXLV.

##### Of hot impostumes.

**I**F the impostume proceed from any hot causes, as from the extremity of travaile, the parching of the Sunne, or the inflammation of the blood, then according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, you shal take Liverwoort, and stampe it, and mixe it with the grounds of Ale, Hogges grease, and bruised Mallowes, and then apply it to the sore, and it will ripen, breake, and heale it: But if you would not have the swelling to breake, then take the grounds of Ale, or Beere, and having boyled Mallows therein, bathe the sore place therewith, and it wil drive the swelling away. Other *Farriers* take either *Lettice seede*, or *Poppy seed*, and mixe it with the oyle of red Roses, and lay it to the sore plaister-wise, especially at the beginning of the swelling, and it wil take it cleane away.

## CHAP. CXLVI.

*Of the Tetter.*

**A** Tetter is a filthy kind of Ulcer like unto a Cancer, onely it is somewhat more knotty, and doth not spread, but remaineth most in one place, and many times it will remaine betweene the skinne and the flesh like a knotted Farcy, and will not breake.

The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient and understanding *Farriers*, is to make a strong lye with old urine, Ashe-ashes, and Greene Copporas, and to bathe the knots therewith, and it will kil and heale them. Some other *Farriers* take a Snake, and cut off the head and the tay'e, and cast them away, the rest cut into small peeces, and roast them on a spit, then take the grease that droppeth from them, and being hot, annoynt the Sorrhance therewith, and it will heale it in a short time: But looke that you touch no part of the Horse therewith, save onely the Sorrhance, for it will poyson and venom.

## CHAP. CXLVII.

*Of the sinewes that are cut, prickt, or bruised.*

**I**F a horse by the mischance of some wound, shall have any of his sinews either cut, prickt, or sore bruised, then if there bee no convulsion of the sinews, you shall, according to the opinion of the most auncientest *Farriers*, take Tarre, and Beane-flowre,



annoynt it with Tar and Oyle wel mixed together; and if you make your incision in the manner of a halfe Moone, it is the better.

Other *Farriers* take white Mints, and seeth them in Wine, Oyle, Ale, and butter, and so lay it to hot, and it wil heale it.

Other *Farriers* take Cuckoo spit, and stamp it with old grease, and so apply it, and it wil heale it.

Other *Farriers* take a handfull of *Rew*, and stampe it wel with the yolke of an egge and honey, and then apply it plaister-wise, and it wil heale any cold impostume.

#### CHAP. CXLV.

##### Of hot impostumes.

**I**F the impostume proceed from any hot causes, as from the extremity of travaile, the parching of the Sunne, or the inflammation of the blood, then according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, you shal take Liverwoort, and stampe it, and mixe it with the grounds of Ale, Hogges grease, and bruised Mallowes, and then apply it to the sore, and it will ripen, breake, and heale it: But if you would not have the swelling to breake, then take the grounds of Ale, or Beere, and having boyled Mallows therein, bathe the sore place therewith, and it wil drive the swelling away. Other *Farriers* take either *Lettice seede*, or *Poppy seed*, and mixe it with the oyle of red Roses, and lay it to the sore plaister-wise, especially at the beginning of the swelling, and it wil take it cleane away.

## CHAP. CXLVI.

*Of the Tetter.*

**A** Tetter is a filthy kind of Ulcer like unto a Cancer, onely it is somewhat more knotty, and doth not spread, but remaineth most in one place, and many times it will remaine betweene the skinne and the flesh like a knotted Farcy, and will not breake.

The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient and understanding *Farriers*, is to make a strong lye with old urine, Aslie-ashes, and greene Copporas, and to bathe the knots therewith, and it will kil and heale them. Some other *Farriers* take a Snake, and cut off the head and the tay'e, and cast them away, the rest cut into small peeces, and roast them on a spit, then take the grease that droppeth from them, and being hot, annoynt the Sorrhance therewith, and it will heale it in a short time: But looke that you touch no part of the Horse therewith, save onely the Sorrhance, for it will poyson and venom.

## CHAP. CXLVII.

*Of the sinewes that are cut, prickt, or bruised.*

**I**F a horse by the mischance of some wound, shall have any of his sinewes either cut, prickt, or sore bruised, then if there bee no convulsion of the sinewes, you shall, according to the opinion of the most antientest *Farriers*, take Tarre, and Beane-flowre,



flowre, and a little Oyle of Roses, and mixing them together, lay it hot unto the places, and if it doe not present good, take Wormes and sallet oyle fryed together, or else the oyntment of Wormes, which you may buy of every Apothecary, and applying either of them, they wil knit the sinewes againe, if they be not cleane asunder. But if there be a convolution, then with a paire of sheeres you must cut the sinew in peeces, and then take Rosen, and Turpentine Pitch, and *Sanguis draconis*; then melting them together, clap it somewhat hot unto the sore; then take flaxe and put upon it, for that wil cleanse and defend it, and then this medicine there is none better for any swolne joynt whatsoever.

Now if the joynt be not much sweld, but onely that the sinewes are exceeding stiffe through the great bruifings, then you shal take of blacke sope a pound, and seeth it in a quart of strong Ale, til it wax thicke like Tar; then reserve it, and when you shal see cause, use to annoynt the sinews and joynts therewith, and it wil supple them, and stretch them forth, although they be never so much shrunke, as hath bin approved.

#### CHAP. CXLVIII.

*Of fretting the belly with the fore-girths.*

**I**F when you saddle and girde your horse, the girths be either knotty or crumpled, and therewithal drawne too straight, they will not onely gall and wound the Horse under the belly very much, but they wil also stoppe the blood which is  
in

in the principall veines, called the plat-veines, in such sort, that they will occasion most extreame and hard swellings.

The cure whereof is, according to the generall opinion, to take of Oyle de bay, and oyle of Balme two ounces, of Pitch two ounces, of Tar two ounces, and one ounce of Rozen: mingle them wel together, and then anoynt the horses fore-bowels therewith; then take either floxe, or chopt flaxe, and clap upon it, and so let it abide till it fall away of it selfe, and it will surely cure him.

Other Farriers use to take vineger and sope, and heate them well together; and stir it with a sticke or cloath, and then all to rubbe and wash the galled place therewith, and doe thus at least twice a day, and it will dry it up in two or three dayes at the most, but if the galling bee about any part of the horses necke, then you shall take the leaves of *Briony* (called the Hedge-vine) and stampe them, and mixe them with Wine, and then playster-wise lay it to the sore, and it will heale it.

#### CHAP. CXLIX.

##### Of Blisters.

**B**listers are certaine watrish hollow blebs, which do arise betwixt the skinn and the flesh, proceeding either from some slight burnings, scaldings, or chafings, and they be very full of thinne matter. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the most generall Farriers is, first in the Sunne to fret them till they bleede, then take of the rootes of Ivy;



and stamping them in a mortar, mixe them with as much Tar, Brimstone, and Allome, til they come to a salve; and then dresse the blister therewith, and it will heale it.

### CHAP. CL.

*To take away all manner of Bones, Knobs, or any superfluous flesh.*

**W**Hen a horse hath any bone growing upon any part of his body, more then naturall, or when he hath any Lumpes, or Bunches of superfluous flesh, otherwisc then of right doth belong to his true proportion: then such bones, knots, or bunches, are called Excreffions, proceeding from tough and stegmaticke substances, stirred up either by most fore bruises, imperfect healed wounds, or other naughty putrification of the blood, being most apparant to the eye, and most palpable to the hand.

Now for the cure (according to the generall opinion of the most *Farriers*) you shal first use Corrolive medicines, after drawing medicines, and lastly drying medicines: or more particularly thus you shall cure them: first with an incision Knife scarifie the excreffion, then apply *Sulphure* and *Bitumen*, or *Coloquintida* burnt and sifted, and when it hath eaten the excreffion away, then heale it up with drying salves, as the powder of Honey and lime, or Bolearmony, or such like. Other *Farriers* use after they have made the excreffion to bleede well, then to take two ounces of the ashes of *Vitis*, and as much un-

steele

ſleckt Lime, mixt with fixe ounces of ſtrong lye firſt ſtrained, then ſod till halfe bee conſumed, and ſo brought to a firme ſubſtance; then keepe it in a glaſſe in a dry place, and apply it to the Excreſſion till it have eaten it away, and then heale it up as is before ſaid. Other *Farriers* uſe to take a pound of ſtrong lye and ſope, and a quarter of a pound of *Vitrioll Romane*, one ounce of *Sal-armoniacke*, and as much *Roch allome*, and boyle them together until they be very thicke, and then with that oyntment eat away the excreſſion. Others uſe to take of *Egyptiacum* the ſtrongest kinde, and lay it on the Excreſſion with a Cotten, three or foure times, and it will take it cleane away: this medicine is moſt excellent for any ſplent, and of no ſmall importance, if it be uſed againſt a *Fiſtula*, for it wil ſinke it, although it were in the crowne.

## CHAP. CLI.

*How to eat away any ſuperfluous or dead fleſh.*

**I**F when your horſe hath any wound, Ulcer, or other ſore, you ſhall perceiue that there groweth therein any dead fleſh, which dead fleſh you ſhall know, partly by the inſenſibility thereof, and partly in that it is a ſpongy, hollow, naughty fleſh, not ſubſtantiall as the true fleſh is; and eyther of a blackiſh, or an high red colour; then it ſhall bee meete that you ſeeke all meanes poſſible, how to conſume and eat away that ſuperfluous and naughty fleſh, becauſe the ſore that is peſtred therewith, neither can nor wil ever heale, till it be cleaſed of the ſame;



therefore according to the opinion of the most ancient *Farriers*. The best meanes to eate away, is, to boyle fresh grease and Verdigrease, of each a like quantity together, and either to taint or playster the sore therewith, untill the dead flesh bee consumed. Other *Farriers* take either the scrapings of Harts horne, or Oxe horne, and mixing them with old sope, dresse the sore therewith, and it will eate away dead flesh.

Other *Farriers* take *Spongia Marina*, or Sea sponge, and therewith dresse the sore, and it will doe the like. Other *Farriers* use the powder of *Risagallo* or *Risagre*, but it is a great deale too strong a tretter. Others use *Lytergie*, or Lime in lye, but they are like very violent and strong eaters.

Others use to take either white or blacke Eleborus, Inke, quicke Sulphure, Orpiment, Lixergy, Vitriol, unsleckt Lime, Roch Allome, Galls, Soote, or the ashes of *Avelen*, of each halfe an ounce, and they will consume dead flesh: likewise Quick-silver extinct, and verdigrease of each an ounce made into powder, wil do the like: the juyce of *Barrage*, of *Scabions*, of *Fumitory*, and of a *Docke*, of each halfe an ounce; a little oyle and vineger boyld with a soft fire; put to it Tar, and it will likewise eate away any dead flesh.

There bee other *Farriers* which take *Cantharides*, Oxe-dung, and vineger, and mixe them altogether, and lay it to the sore, and it will fetch away the dead flesh. Others use first to pounce the sore with a Razor, then annoynt it with grease, and strew upon it a pretty quantity of Orpiment. Other *Farriers* use in  
stead

stead of *Risagallo*, to take the powder of Verdigrase and Orpiment, of each an ounce, of unsleckt Lime, and *Tartar*, of each two ounces; mixe them together, and therewith dresse the sore, after you have washt it well with strong vinegar; and if you please, you may adde therunto Vitrioll and Alome, for they are both great consumers of dead flesh. Other old Farriers take the powder of *Tartar* and mans dung burnt with salt, and then beaten into powder, and strewed on the sore: or else take salt, unsleckt Lime, and Oyster-shells, and beate them in a mortar with strong lye or old urine, till it be like a paste: then bake it in an Oven, and after beate it to powder, and strew it on the sore, and it wil eate away the dead flesh.

Other Farriers use first to wash the sore with Ale, wherein Nettle seeds have bin sodden, and then strew upon it the powder of Verdigrase.

Now to conclude, you must ever observe, that before you use any of these medicines, you doe shave away the haire, that it be no impediment to the salve; also that you have drest it once, and see that there is an asker raised, then you shal dresse it with some mollifying, or healing salve, till the asker come away, and then dresse it with your eating salve againe: and thus do untill you behold all the dead flesh be consumed, and that there is nothing but perfect and sound flesh; and then heale it up as in case of wounds. *Allo. Precipitate* simply of it selfe, wil eate away any dead flesh.



## CHAP. CLII.

For Knots in Ioynts, Hardnesse, Crampes,  
or any inflammations.

**T**Here do grow in joynts three sorts of swellings: namely, a hot swelling, a hard swelling, and a soft swelling: All which you may distinguish by your feeling, and they doe proceede either from a boundance of grosse humours, ingendred by foule keeping; or else by accident, as from some wound, rush, or straine. The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, is to beate the powder called *Diapente*, together with oyle, til it be like an oyntment, and then apply it once a day to the grieve, and it will take it away, especially if it bee a Crampe, or an Inflammation.

Other Farriers use to incorporate with oyle halfe an ounce of liquid *Storaxe*, two ounces of turpentine, five of waxe, and ten of bird-lime, and apply that to the grieve, and it will ease it. Other Farriers take wine, old oyle, and tarre, mingled and boyled together, and therewith dresse the sore place, and it will helpe it.

Other of our old and latter Farriers take halfe a pound of grease, three scruples of mustard, and the like of bay-salt; mixe these with vineger, and apply it to the grieve. Others use to take a playster of figs, and the rootes of fearne and rocket, or mingle them with grease and vineger, and apply it to the grieve. Other Farriers use to take the *Vnguentum Basilicon*, which is made of honey, *Storax*, *Galbanum*, *Bdelium*, blacke pepper,

pepper, bay-berries, the marrow of a stagge, of each a like quantity; twice as much of Armoniacke, and of the powder of Frankinsence as much as of any of the other, and incorporate them with sheepes suet, and apply it to the grieve, and it will helpe it.

Other *Farriers* take dry pitch, pitch of Greece, of each one part, of *Galbanum*, and of lime, of each foure parts, of *Bitumen* two parts, of waxe three parts, melt them all together, and anoynt the place therewith very hot, and it will take away the grieve, and peradventure also the eye-sore.

### CHAP. CLIII.

*How to cure any wound made with the shot  
of Gun-powder.*

**A**Ccording to the opinion of the most ancient *Farriers*, you shall first with a probe, or long instrument, search whether the bullet remaine within the flesh or no; and if you finde that it doth, then with another instrument for the purpose, you shall take it forth if it be possible; if otherwise, let it remaine: for in the end nature it selfe will weare it out of its owne accord, without any grieve or impediment; because lead wil not corrode or canker: Then to kill the fire, you shall take a little varnish, and thrust it into the wound with a feather, anoynting it well within even unto the bottome: Then stop the mouth of the wound with a little soft flaxe dipped in varnish also: Then charge all the twolae place with this charge: Take of Bole-armony a quarterne, of linseed beaten into powder, halfe a pound,



pound, of Beane flowre as much, and three or foure Egges, shels and all, and of Turpentine a quarterne, and a quart of vineger, and mingle them well together over the fire, and being somewhat warme, charge all the sore place with part thereof, and immediately clappe a cloath or piece of Leather upon it, to keepe the wound from the cold ayre, continuing both to anoynt the hole within with Varnish, and also to charge the swelling without, the space of foure or five dayes: Then at the five dayes end, leave anoynting of it, and taint it with a taint reaching to the bottome of the wound, and dipped in Turpentine and hogges grease molten together, renewing it every day once or twice untill the fire be thoroughly killed, which you shall perceiue by the mattering of the wound, and by falling of the swelling: For as long as the fire hath the upper hand, no thicke matter will issue forth, but onely a thinne yellowish water, neither will the swelling assuage, and then take of Turpentine washed in nine severall waters, halfe a pound, and put thereto three yolkes of Egges, and a little Saffron, and taint it with this oyntment, renewing it every day once untill the wound be whole. But if the shot have gone quite through the wound, then you shall take a few weavers linnen thrummes, made very knotty, and dipping them first in Varnish, draw them cleane through the wound, turning them up and downe in the wound at least twice or thrice a day, and charging the wound on either side upon the swolne places, with the charge aforesayd, untill you perceiue that the fire is kild; then clap onely a comfortable playster.

ster uppon one of the holes, and taint the other with a taint in the salve, made of washt Turpentine, Egges and Saffron, as is before said. Other *Farriers* use only to kil the fire with the oyle of Creame, and after to heale the wound up with Turpentine, Waxe, and hogs grease molten together.

Other *Farriers* kill the fire with Snow-water, and charge the sweld place with Creame & Barne beaten together, and then heale up the wound, by dipping the taint in the yoke of an egge, hony, and Saffron wel beaten and mixt together.

## CHAP. CLIIII.

*Of burning with Lime, or any other fiery thing.*

**A**Ccording to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, you shal first wash the fore round about, and in every part very cleane with warme urine; then kil the fire, by annointing the place with Oyle and Water beaten together, dressing him so every day untill the fore be all raw; and then annoint it with hogges grease, and strew thereupon the powder of unflecked lime, dressing him thus every day once untill he be whole.

Other *Farriers* use first to wash and cleanse the fore with Sallet oyle onely warmed, then to kil the fire with Creame and oyle beaten together, and whe it is raw, then to spread upon it Creame and Soote mixt together: and lastly, to strew upon it the powder of honey and lime, untill it be perfectly skinned.



## CHAP. CLV.

## Of the biting with a mad Dogge.

**I**F your horse at any time bee bitten with a madde Dogge, the venome of whose teeth wil not onely drive him into an extream torment, but it will also infect and inflame in his blood in such sort, that the horse will be endangered to dye mad. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take of Goates dung, of flesh that hath laine long in salt; and of the hearbe *Ebulus*, called generally *Dan-woort*, of each halfe a pound, and forty VValnuts; stampe all these together, and lay part thereof to the sore, and it will sucke out the venome, and heale up the wound; but upon the first dressing, you shall give the horse wine and treacle mixt together to drinke.

There be other *Farriers*, which first give the horse Sacke and Sallet oyle to drinke, then with a hot Iron cauterize and burne the sore: and lastly, heale up the wound with the salve first recited.

Other *Farriers* first give the horse two or three spoonefuls of the powder of *Diapente* to drinke in a pint of Muscadine; then take a live pidgeon, and cleaving her in the midst, lay it hot unto the wound, and it will draw out the venome; then heale the sore with Turpentine and Hogges grease well molten together. The leaves of *Aristoloch* bruised will take away the poyson.

## CHAP. CLVI.

*Of hurts by the tuskes of a Boare.*

**I**F a Horse bee stricken with the tuskes of a Boare, you shall then take Copporas or Vitrioll, and the powder of a Dogges head being burned, after the tongue hath beene pulled out, and cast away; and mixing them together, apply it once a day to the sore, and it will cure it: Yet before you dresse it, first wash the sore very well, either with vineger or with white-wine, or urine.

## CHAP. CLVII.

*To heale the biting or stinging of Serpents, or any venemous beast whatsoever.*

**I**F your horse bee either bitten or stung either with a serpent, or any other venemous beast, which you shall easily know by the suddain swelling either of the body or member; then you shall first chafe him up and downe until he sweate, and then let him blood in the roofof the mouth; and lastly, take a young Cocke or a Pidgeon, and cleaving it in the midst, clap it hot to the wound, and then give the horse white wine and salt to drinke. Other Farriers take a good quantity of the Hearbe called *Sanicula*; stampe it, and temper it together with the milke of a Cow, til it be all of one colour, and give it the horse to drinke, and it will heale him. Other Farriers clap to the sore hogges dung, or Oxe dung, or Henbane bruised, or else the ashes of Reeds; then give him  
to



to drinke Mugwoort, or great Tansie, and Wine and Camomil stamp together : Or else give him Wine and *oleum Rosatum* mixt together.

Other *Farriers* make a plaister of Onions, Honey, and Salt, stamp and mingled together, and lay that to the fore place, and give the Horse wine and treacle to drinke, or else white Pepper, Rue, and Time mixt with Wine. Other *Farriers* take *Aphodillae*, *Hastula regia*, stamp with old Wine, and laid to the fore : for it is most soveraigne good.

#### CHAP. CLVIII.

*Of Lice or Vermine, and how to kill them.*

**T**He Lice or Vermine which breed upon a horse, be like unto Geese lice, but somewhat bigger, and doe breed most commonly about the Eares, Necke, Maine, Taile, and generally over the whole body : they doe proceed from poverty, or feeding in Woods, where trees are continually dropping upon them : the signes are, the horse will be alwayes rubbing and scratching, and albe hee eat much meate, yet he will not prosper : And with his continuall rubbing he wil fret and weare away all his Maine and tayle, and you shall also perceiue the Lice when the Sunne doth shine, running on the tops of the haire. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, is, to take of Sope one pound, and of Quick-silver halfe an ounce, mixe and beat them together wel, untill the Quick-silver be kild, and then annoint the horse all over therewith, and it will consume the Lice presently.

Other

Other *Farriers* take stavesaker and sope, and mixing them together, annoint the horse all over therewith. Others take unripe *Mulberries*, and their roots or stalkes, and seeth them in strong urine, and then wash the Horse therewith, after that annoint all his body over with *Sanguis draconis*, the juyce of leekes, salt, pitch, oyle, and swines grease, very wel mixt together.

Others use to chafe all his body over with Quick-silver, and soft grease mixt together, till the Quick-silver be kild, and in two or three dressings the Lice wil be consumed.

### CHAP. CLIX.

*How to save Horses from the stinging of flies in summer.*

**I**F you will save your Horse in the Summer-time from the stinging or biting of Flies, which is very troublesome unto them, then you shall annoint all the horses body over either with oyle and *Bay-berries* mingled together, or else binde unto the head-stall of his collar, a sponge dipped in strong Vineger: Some use to sprinkle the stable with Water wherein hearbe of Grace hath beene layd to steepe: or else to perfume the stable with the smoake of Ivy or Calamint, or with Githe burned in a pan of coales.

But the surest way of all, both in the stable and abroad, is to make two good wispes of Rue, and therewithal to rub the horses body all over, and no flie will light upon him, or touch him, as hath beene often approved.

CHAP.



## CHAP. CLX.

*Of bones being broken, or out of ioynt.*

Our common English *Farriers* are very far to seeke in this cure, because they neyther do perfectly acquaint themselves with the members of a horse, nor have so much invention in this extremity, to make a horse, being an unreasonable creature, to suffer like a reasonable person; and also in that the old traditions in Horse-leach-craft affirme, that all fractures above the knee are incurable; and so despairing they cease to make practice: but they are much deceived, for neither the fracture above the knee, nor the fracture below the knee, is more incurable in a horse, then in a man: if the *Farrier* can tell how to keepe the horse from struggling or tormenting the member grieved.

If therefore your horse have any bone broken, which is most easie to be discerned by the deprivation of the use of that member, and as easie to be felt by the separation of the bones, the one part being higher than the other, besides the roughness and inequality of the place grieved: you shall then for the cure thereof: First take a strong double canvas, which shall be as broad as from the horses fore shoulder to the flanke; and shall have another double canvas, which shall come from betweene the horses fore-booths up to the top of the withers, where meeting with the rest of the canvas, and having exceeding strong loopes, to which strong Ropes must be fastned, you shall by maine force sling up the Horse from

from the ground, so as his teete may no more but touch the ground : and if it be a fore-legge that is broken, then you shall raise him a little higher before than behind : If a hinder legge, then a little higher behind than before, so that the Horfe may rest most upon the members most sound. When your horfe is thus flung, then you shall put the bones into the right place : which done, wrappe it close about with unwashed wooll newly pulled from the sheepes backe, binding it fast to the Legge with a smooth linnen roler soaked before in oyle and vinegar mingled together, and looke that your roler lye as smooth and plaine as may be ; and upon that againe lay more Wooll dipt in oyle and vinegar, and then splent it with three broad, smooth, and strong sp'ents, binding them fast at both ends with a thong ; and in any case let the Horses legge be kept out very straight the space of forty dayes, and let not the bonds bee loosened above thrice in twenty dayes, unlesse it shrink, and so require to bee new dressed and bound againe ; but faile not every day once to powre on the fore p'ace through the splents, oyle and vinegar mingled together : And at the forty dayes end, if you perceive that the broken place be sowed together againe with some hard knob or Gristle, then loosen the bonds, and ease the canvase, so as the horfe may tread more firmly upon his fore foot ; which when he doth, you shall loosen him altogether, and let him goe up and downe faire and gently, using from hencefoorth to annoint the fore place either with soft grease, or else with one of these plaisters or oynments: Take of *Spuma ars*  
*genti,*



*genti*, of Vineger, of each one pound, of Sallet oyle halfe a pound, of Armoniacke, and of Turpentine, of each three ounces, of Wax and of Rosen, of each two ounces, of *Bitumen*, of Pitch, and of Verdigrease, of each halfe a pound, boyle the vinegar, oyle, and *Spuma argenti* together, untill it waxe thicke: then put thereunto the pitch, which being molten, take the pot from the fire, and put in the *Bitumen*, without stirring at all, and that being also molten, put in then all the rest, set the pot againe to the fire, and let them boyle all together, untill they be all united in one: that done, straine it, and make it in playster forme, and use it as occasion shal serve.

Other ancient and wel experienced *Farrriers* take of liquid pitch one pound, of waxe two ounces, of the purest and finest part of Frankinsence one ounce, of *Amoniacum* foure ounces, of dry Rosen and of *Galbanum* of each one ounce, of Vineger two pines, boyle first the vinegar and pitch together, then put in the *Amoniacum* dissolved first in vinegar, and after that the afore-said drugges: and after they have boyled altogether, and be united in one, straine it, and make it into a playster, and use it according to occasion.

Other *Farrriers* take of old Sallet oyle a quart, and put thereunto of Hogges grease, of *Spuma Nitri* of each one pound, and let them boyle together untill it begin to blub above: then take it from the fire, and when you use any of the oyntment, let it be very hot, and wel chafed in: and then one of the two former playsters folded above it, and it is most soveraigne and comfortable for any bone that is broken.

## CHAP. CLXI.

*Of bones out of joynt.*

**I**F a horse have any of his bones out of joynt, as either his knee, his shoulder, his pastorne, or such like, which you shal perceive both by the uncomlineffe of the joynt, and also feele by the hollownesse of the member that is displaced. Then your readiest cure is to cast the horse on his backe, and putting foure strong pastorns on his fette, draw him up so as his back may no more but touch the ground, then draw the grievéd legge higher then the rest, till the poise and weight of his body have made the joynt to shoote into his right place againe; which you shal know when it doth, by a suddaine and great crack which the joynt will give when it falleth into the true place, then with all gentlenesse loose the horse, and let him rise. And then anoynt all the grievéd place over, either with the last oyntment rehearsed in the last chapter, or else with the oyle of Mandrake, or the oyle of Swallowes, both which are of most soveraigne vertue.

## CHAP. CLXII.

*To dry up humours, or to bind, being astrictive,  
or binding charges.*

**T**Ake of *Unguentum Tripharmacum* made of *Lytargy*, Vineger, and old oyle, boyled till they be thicke, only take as much oyle as of both the others, and it will stop and stay the fluxe of any humours.



If you take strong lye, it is a great dryer and a binder of humours.

Dissolve in Vineger *Rosen*, *Assalto*, and *Myrbe*, of each an ounce, of red waxe halfe an ounce; and of *Armoniacke* halfe an ounce; mingle them well together in the boiling: for this salve dryeth wonderfully, bindeth all loose members, and comforteth all parts that are weakened.

Take of Lard two pounds, and when it is sodden, straine it with three ounces of *Ceruse*, and as much Allome molten, and it both dryeth and bindeth exceedingly.

Dry Figges beaten with Allome, Mustard, and vinegar, doth dry abundantly.

Oyle, or soft grease beaten to a salve with Vitrioll, Galls and Allome, and the powder of Pomgranats, Salt and Vineger both drye and binde sufficiently.

Sope and unsleckt Lime mixt together dryeth perfectly after any incision.

*Verdigrease*, *Orpiment*, *Sal-armoniacke*, and the powder of *Celoquinida*, of each a like made into a playster with Milke or Waxe, dryeth and bindeth.

The grease of Snakes roasted, the head and taile being cut away is a great dryer,

To conclude, the barke of a Willow tree burnt to ashes, is as great a dryer, and binder, as any simple whatsoever.

CHAP. CLXIII.  
A playster to dry up superfluous moisture, and to  
binde parts loosened.

**T**Ake of *Bitumen* one pound, of the purest part of  
*Frankincense* three ounces, of *Bdelium Arabicum*  
one ounce, of *Deeres suet* one pound, of *Populeum*  
one ounce, of *Galbanum* one ounce, of the drops of  
*Storax*, one ounce, of common *Waxe* one pound, of  
*Resin Cabial* halfe a pound, of *Vissens Italianus* one  
ounce and a halfe, of *Apocims* one ounce, of the  
juyce of *Hyssop* one ounce, of the drops of *Armo-  
niacke* one ounce, of *Pitch* halfe a pound: let all these  
be well and perfectly melting dissolved, and incorpo-  
rated together according to Art, and then make a  
plaister thereof.

CHAP. CLXIII.

Another playster to dry up any swelling, wind-gall,  
splent, or bladders, in or about the joynts.

**T**Ake of *Virgin waxe* halfe a pound, of *Rozen* one  
pound and a quarter, of *Galbanum* one ounce  
and an halfe, of *Bitumen* halfe a pound, of *Myrhe*  
secondary one pound, of *Armoniacke* three ounces.  
of *Costus* three ounces: boyle all these things toge-  
ther in an earthen pot, having the *Armoniacke* and  
*Costus*, which being first ground like fine flower,  
must be added unto the other things, after that they  
have been boyled, and cooled, and then boyled alto-  
gether againe, and well stirred, so as they may be in-  
corporated.



corporated together, and made all one substance, and then applyed as occasion shall be administred.

### CHAP. CLXV.

*Receipts to dissolve humours.*

**T**Ake of Worme-wood, Sage, Rosemary, and the barke of an Elme, or of a Pine, of each a good quantity, and boyle them in oyle with a good quantity of Linseed, and making a bath thereof, bathe the grieved part, and it wil dissolve any humors that are gathered or bound together.

A pound of figges stampd with Salt till they come to a perfect salve, dissolveth al manner of humors, by opening the pores, and giving a large passage.

### CHAP. CLXVI.

*How to mollifie any hardnesse.*

**T**Ake of Linseed pund, and of Fennegreke, of each foure ounces, of Pitch and Rozen, of each three ounces, of the flowers of Roses two ounces, pitch of Greece fixe ounces: boyle them together, then adde three ounces of Turpentine, fixe ounces of honey, and a littly oyle: and then applying this salve, it will mollifie and soften any hard substance.

*Maluavisco* well sod, and stampd with *Oleum Rosatum*, being laid hot to any hardnesse, wil make it soft.

Boile *Brank ursin*, and Mallows together, and beat them with oyle and Lard, and they wil soften much.

*Maluavisco*, *Coleworts*, *Brank ursin*, hearbe of the Wal, & old grease punded, doth mollifie very much.

The

The oyle of *Cypresse*, both mollifieth and healeth.

Wheate meale, hony, Pellitory, *Branekursin*, and the leaves of Wormewood, being beaten with Swines grease, and layd hot unto any hard tumour, doth suddainly mollifie it, and is passing good for any stripe also.

Grease, Mustard-seed, and *Comen* boyled together doth mollifie very much.

Take of Sope halfe an ounce, of unsleckt Lime an ounce, and mixe them well with strong lye, and it will mollifie even the hardest hoofes.

The juyce of the leaves and rootes of Elder, or a playster made thereof, doth dry up and mollifie humours exceedingly.

So doth the juyce and toppes of *Cypresse*, and dry figges macerated in Vineger and strayned, of each three ounces: And if you adde to it of *Sal-niter* one ounce, of *Armoniacke* halfe an ounce, of Aloes and Opoponaxe a little, and make it into an oyntment, it will mollifie any hardnesse very sufficiently.

Mallowes, Nettles, *Mercorelle*, and the rootes of *Cowcumbers*, and old Turpentine, being beaten together with old grease, will mollifie any hardnesse speedily.

#### CHAP. CLXVII.

To harden any softnesse.

THE sole of an old shoe burnt, and sodden in Vineger, wil harden hoofes, and so wil also the



powder of Galls boyled with bran and salt in strong Vineger.

The powder of Hony and Lime, or the powder of Oyster-shells, or the powder of a burnt felt, or thicke cream and foote mixt together, will harden any fore whatsoever.

### CHAP. CLXIV.

To Conglutinate.

**T**his *Illirica* beaten and sifted, mingled with Peppery Hony, Currants, and given the horse to drink with wine, and oyle, helpeth and conglutinateth any inward Rupture or burstnefle whatsoever.

Dragant, Saffron, the fruite of the Pine, with the yolkes of egges, given likewise to drinke with Wine and oyle, doth also conglutinate any inward member or veine broken.

Incense, Masticke, and cut, doth the like also. *Unguentum* sod in Wine, and given to drinke, is good also.

The rootes and feedes of *Asparagus* sod in water, and given to the horse; then after for three dayes give him butter and *Opoponaxe* with honey and Myrrh, and it will conglutinate any inward ulcer or Rupture whatsoever.

### CHAP. CLXIX.

To mandisic or cleanse any fore.

**T**Ake oyle of Olives, Swines grease clarified, the grease of a yong Fox, Turpentine, Allome, and white waxe, seeth them altogether, till they be most thoroughly

thoroughly incorporated together; and with this ointment dresse any foule whatsoever, and it will mundifie, and cleanse it most sufficiently.

## CHAP. CLXX.

*Of Repercussive medicines, or such as drive*

*backe humours*

**R**epercussive medicines, are such as drive evil humors backe, are commonly called amongst Farriers, Plaisters or Salves defensive, and are to be used about every great wound and ulcer, lest the fluxe of humors flowing to the weak part, both confound the medicines, and breed more dangerous Exulcerations. Now of these Repercussive medicines these are the best, either vinegar, salt, and Bole-armoniacke beaten together, and spread round about the sore, or else white Lead and Sallet oile beaten also together, or red Lead and Sallet oyle, or else *Vnguentum Album*, *Camphiratum*, and such like.

## CHAP. CLXXI.

*Of burning Compositions*

**B**urning Compositions are for the most part, Corrosives, of which wee shall have occasion to speake more at large in a chapter following, yett soe as much as some are of better temper then others, you shall here understand that of all burning compositions, the gentlest is *Vnguentum Lepetolatum*: next to it is *Verdigrease* and *Hogges grease* beaten



together: Next to it is *Precipitate*, and Turpentine mixt together: Next to it is *Arsnicke* allayd with any oyle, or healing salve: Next to it is *Mercury sublimare*, likewise allayd with some cooling salve: And the worst is Lime and Sope, or Lime and strong lye beaten together: for they will corrode and mortifie the soundest part of member whatsoever.

### CHAP. CLXXII.

*For all manner of hurts about a horse  
whatsoever.*

**T**Ake an ounce of Oyle, two ounces of Turpentine, and a little waxe; mingle them at the fire, this will heale any wound or Gal, and keepe it clean from filth, water, and dirt.

Take vinegar and honey, and boyle it together, when it is cold adde the powder of Verdigrease, Copporas, and Brasse burnt, mingle them well together: this will take away all ill and dead flesh, and cleanse and heale any old ulcer.

Take Waxe, pitch, Swines grease, and Turpentine, and mixe them well together: this will heale any bone, spell, or any other stubbe.

Take house Snayles, and seeth them in butter, and they will draw out any thorne or nayle; being oft renewed. So will also the rootes of reedes being bruised and applyed.

The roots of an Elder beaten to powder, and boyled with hony, is good for any old sore whatsoever.

Take Salt, Butter, and hony, or white waxe, Turpentine, and oyle *Rosatum*, of each like quantity, with

twice

twice as much Beane flowre as of any of the other: mixe it very well together, and make it into a salve, and it will heale any sore, either old or new, whatsoever.

Take Waxe, Turpentine, and Deeres suet, or the Marrow of a Stagge, and mixe them wel together, and it wil heale any wound or any impostume whatsoever: so wil also Waxe, Oyle, Masticke, Frankinsence and sheepes suet, wel molten together: or the powder of Masticke, Frankinsence, and Aloes mixt and molten well together.

The whites of egges beaten with *Oleum Rosatum*, and salt, and so layd upon flaxe hurds, healeth any wound that is not in any principall part where the Muscles are.

If you wil purifie, cleanse, and heale any old sore, take three pints of wel clarified honey, and boyle it with one pint of Vineger, and one of Verdigrease, and so apply it: or else take of Masticke and Verdigrease, of each halfe an ounce, of Frankinsence one ounce, of new Waxe foure ounces, of Turpentine fixe ounces, and of hogges grease two pound: boile and incorporate all these together, and then apply it to the sore place, and it will both cleanse, purifie, and heale.

Chicke-weed, Grounsel, Graise, and stale Vrine very wel boyled together, will heale any galling or hurts by halter, or other accident, or any straine, or stripe, or swelling, which commeth by any such like mischance.

Take of new milke three quarts, a good handful of *Plantaine*; let it boyle till a pint bee consumed: then



then adde three ounces of Allome made into powder, and one ounce and an halfe of white Sugar-candy made likewise into powder: then let it boyle a little, till it have a hard Curd: then straine it; with this warme, bathe any old ulcer, then dry it, and lay on some *Vnguentum basilicon*; this cleanseth, dryeth, strengtheneth, and killeth the itch, and healeth the foulest Vlcer either in man or beast, that may be. Also, if you take of Milke a quart, of Allome in powder two ounces, of vinegar a spoonfull, when the Milke doth seeth, put in the allome and vinegar, then take off the Curd, and use the rest, and it will likewise dry up and heale any foule old sore whatsoever.

### CHAP. CLXXIII.

*How to make the powder of Honey  
and Lime.*

**T**AKE such a quantity of unfleckt Lime as you shall thinke fit, beate it into very fine powder: then take so much honey as shal suffice to mingle it together, and make it into a very stiffe paste, in the forme of a thicke Cake or Loafe: then put the same Cake or Loafe into a hot Oven, or a burning fire, till it be baked, or burnt glowing red: then take it forth, and when it is cold, beate it into very fine powder, and then use it as any occasion shall serue. It dryeth, healeth, and skinneth any sore whatsoever very marvellously.

## CAP. CLXXIII.

*The order of taking up of veines, and wherefore it is good.*

**F**irst, before wee speake of the order of taking up of Veines, you shall understand that al veines except the necke-veines, the eye-veines, the breast-veine, Palate-veines, and the spurre-veines, are to be taken up, and not stricken with the fleame: partly because they be so little and thin, that if you strike them, you shall eyther endanger the striking thorow them; or partly because they are so neere adjoyning to Arteries and Sinews, that if in striking you should hit and pricke either Artery or sinew, it were a present laming of the horse, as I have oftentimes scene and noted in the practice of many ignorant Smiths. Now touching the order of taking up of a Veine, it is thus.

First, you shall cast your horse either upon some soft ground, grasse, some dunghil that is not very moist, or in some lightsome House, uppon good store of Sweet Straw; then when the Horse is thus cast, you shall look for the veine which you intend to take up, and if it be either so smal, or lie so deepe, that you can hardly perceiue it: Then you shall with warme water, rub, chafe, and bathe all that part where the veine lyeth, then take a narrow silke garter, and a handful or two above the veine (if it be of any of the horses legs) garter the member very strait, but if it be a veine to be taken up on the body or brest, then with a good fursingle either close behind the hinder point



point of the shoulder, or within a handfull of the place, where you meane to take up the veine, gird him very streight, and presently you shall see the veine to arise; then marke that part of the skinne which covereth the veine, and with your finger and your thumbe pull it somewhat aside from the veine, and then with a very fine incision-knife slit the skin cleane through, without touching the veine, and in any wile cut no deeper than through the skinne, and that long-wile too, in such sort, as the veine goeth, yet not above an inch at the most in length; that done, remove your finger and your thumbe, and the skinne will returne againe into his place, right over the veine as it was before, insomuch that but opening the orifice, or slit, you shall see the veine lyce blew, and bare before your eyes; then take a fine smooth Cornet, made either of the Browantler of a Stagge, or of an old Bucke, and thrust it underneath the veine, and lift it up a pretty distance (that is to say, halfe the thicknesse of the Cornet) above the skinne; that done, you shall then loose either the garter of the Surfingle, for they are but onely helps for you to finde out the veine; and when the veine doth appeare, have a speciall care that you touch not the sinews.

Now when you have thus taken your veine upon your Cornet, you shall then either put a red silke thrid, dipt in Oyle of Butter, or else a small shoemakers thrid, underneath the veine also, somewhat higher than the Cornet, which silke or thrid must serve to knit the veine whentime requires; then the Cornet standing still as before, with your knife  
slit

Slit the top of the Veine long-wise, the length of a barley corne, that it may bleed: Then stopping the neather part of your Veine with the silke or the thrid, suffer it to bleed from above; then with your silke or thrid remooved above, knit it fast with a sure knot above the slit, suffering it onely to bleed from beneath, and having bled there also sufficiently, then knit up the veine beneath the slit with a sure knot, then fill the hole of the veine with salt, and heale up the wound of the skinne with Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together, or else with a little fresh butter, laid on with a little flaxe or soft towe, is sufficient.

Now the vertue which redounds from this taking up of veines: first it is very necessary, and doth ease all griefes, straines, and stiffenesse of the limbes: for the taking up of the plat-veines easeth all paines in the brest, and griefes in the chest: the taking up of the fore-thigh veines easeth Farcies, and swellings of the legs: the taking up of the shackle-veines before, helpeth gowding, quinter-bones, and the swelling of the joynts, scabs and scratches: the taking up of the hinder hoofe-veines, helpeth spayens of both kinds, more especially any Farcy in those parts, and generally all swellings or impostumes: the taking up of the pastorne-veines behind, helpeth swellings about the cronet, or neather joynts, paines, Mules, and all manner of kided heeles, besides sundry other such like Diseases.

Can.



## CHAP. CLXXV.

## Of cauterizing or giving the fire, the

## kinds and uses.

**T**He giving of fire which amongst the best Farriers is called Cauterizing, and amongst the simpler, burning, searing, or blistering, is (according to the generall opinion of all the most ancientest Farriers) the chiefeft remedy, and as it were the last refuge of all Diseases incident to any Horses body, whether they be Naturall or Accidentall: for the violence of fire separating and digesting all manner of humours into a thinne ayre, and loose body, cleanseth and avoideth those grossnesses, which are the material causes of all putrefaction and Ulceration. Now of cauterization there be two kinds, the one of them actuall, which is that which is done by the hand, and with the instrument: that is to say, of the hot Iron of what fashion soever: The other Potentiall, which is done by the applying of medicine, whose nature is either Corrosive, Putrifactive, or Causticke.

Now the first of these, which is the cauterization actuall, is principally to be used, when there is any Apostumation in any sinewy part or member, or amongst any of the most principall veines: Also when you shall dismember or cut away any joynt, or make any incision where there is feare of any fluxe of blood, or where you shall finde either the skin or muscles, shrunke or straitned: and in many such like cases.

The cauterizing potentiall is to bee used in old cankered

cankered Vleers, Wennes, or any spongy excreſſion  
either of fleſh or bone whatſoever, of whole natures  
and properties you ſhall read more hereafter in a  
following Chapter.

CHAP. CLXXVI.

Of the Cauterize actually, and the ſame of  
Inſtruments.

**A**ctual Cautery, according to the opinion of  
the moſt ancient Farriers, being moderately  
uſed, is a notable remedy to ſtoppe all corruption in  
members, to keepe perfect the complexion of the  
ſame, and alſo ſtanch the blood: onely you muſt  
have a carefull regard that in the handling of your  
Iron, you touch neither Sinews, Tendons, Cords  
nor Ligaments, leſt you do utterly diſable the mem-  
ber, or breed Cramps or Convulſions; except it be  
when you diſmember or cut away any joynt. As  
when you do make curals, geld horſes, or ſuch like:  
and then your cautery is to be uſed only to ſcare the  
veines, ſinewes, and ligaments, til ſuch time that  
you are perfectly aſſured that all fluxe of blood is  
ſtopped whatſoever.

Now againe the actual cautery bindeth together  
parts looſened, it doth attenuate parts blowne  
and puffed up, it dryeth up ſuperfluous moiſture,  
it both looſeneth, diſperſeth, and divideth evil mat-  
ter gathered together into knots, it aſſwageth old  
griefes, it rectifieth thoſe parts of the body that  
are corrupted by any manner of way, reducing them  
to their firſt perfect ſtate, and ſuffereth no abun-  
dance.



dance of evill humours to grow or increase: For the skinn being leparated and opened with the hot Iron, all putrefaction wha soever through the vertue of the fire, is first digested and ripened, and then dissolved, that the matter doth issue out abundantly at the holes, whereby the grieved or sickned member is now healed, and eased of all paine and griefe: yea, and so much that the holes being once closed, and cleane shut up, the place is stronger and better knit together, and covered with a tougher and harder skin then ever it was before: onely the greatest blemish that can any way be found in cautery is, that it commonly leaveth a great skar, which is many times an eye-fore more than is tollerable: and therefore the use of cauterizing is onely to bee preferred but in desperate cases of great extremity: for albeit it worke foule, yet I am perswaded it is most certaine, and it workes most sure.

Now as touching the instruments wherewith you must cauterize, their substance and proportion you shall understand, that the most curious *Farrriers* doe preferre either Gold or Silver to be the best metall to make them of, in that few or no evil accidents do follow where they burne: But the wisest, best, and most skilfullest *Farrriers* take Copper to be sufficient enough, and a metall without any lawfull exception: yet where Copper instruments cannot be had, there you may with commendations enough, use such instruments as are made of Iron, and find your worke nothing at all hindred.

Now for the fashion or proportion of your instruments, or irons, they are to be onely referred to

the sore, or place grieved, wherewith you are to meddle, according to the diversity whereof your instruments are to be made of divers fashions; as some are to be made knife-wise, either with thine edges or broad edges; and they be called drawing knives, or searing knives, because they are principally employed in the drawing of straight lines shallow, or deepe, and sometimes in circular or divers squares: some are made like straight, and some like crooked bodkins, and they are employed either in fleshy excressions, to cause exulceration; or else in impostumes to open small passages for the matter, some are made like hookes or sickles, and they are to be used where the wound is crooked, for the burning out of dead flesh, or such like hidden evils, which cannot be reacht by any strait instruments: Others are made either with great buttons, or like buttons at the end; and they are used to open Impostumes, or else to burne into the sound flesh where you intend to make any new sore or issue for the drawing or keeping backe of other evill humours. And in making of these, Irons, the Farriers owne judgement is to be of great valew, because he must either increase and diminish them according to the manner of the place grieved; and be sure that hee ever make them fit for his right purpose.

Now for the use of these instruments, there are two principall things to be regarded: First, the heating of the Iron, and next the true temper, or beating of the Farriers hand.

Totching the heating of the Iron, you shal understand,



derstand, that the backe of the Iron must never be so hot as the edge; that is to say, you must never make the backe of the Iron red hot, for feare that thereby it yeeld too much heate, and so consequently breed inflammation: therefore whensoever you see the backe of the Iron so hot as the edge, you shall a little coole it with water.

Now for the temper or bearing of your hand, you shall understand that the more evenly, and light it is done, so much the better it is done; and herein is to be considered, the finenesse or thicknesse of the horses skinne, which you shal know most commonly by his haire: for if it be short and fine, then the skinne is thin: if it be long and rough, then is his skinne thicke and boysterous.

Now the skinne that is fine, must bee cauterized or seared with a very light hand, in as much as the skinne is so soone pierced through, and the thicke skinne with a heavy hand; and both of them with such a tempred hand, that the skinne must no more but looke yellow: wherein you shall ever find that the fine skinne wil sooner looke yellow then the thicke skinne, the maine reason being, because the thicknesse and roughnesse of the haire of the thicke skinne doth coole and choake the heate of the Iron, in so much, that if it be not layd to with a more heavy hand, and the instrument so much the more and the oftner heated, it cannot worke that effect which in Art should doe.

Now you shall also observe, that in drawing of any line, or other cauterize whatsoever, that you ever draw with the haire, and never against the haire,

haire, whether the lines bee short, long deepe, shallow, straight, crooked, or over-thwart, according as the grieve doth require.

Now to conclude, you are to observe in cauterizings these few precepts: First, that you do not give fire to any finewy place, except there be some apparant swelling, or else impostumation: Secondly, that you give not fire to any bone that is broken, or out of joynt, for feare of breeding a generall weaknesse in the whole member. Thirdly, never to give the fire so deepe, or suffer your hand to bee so heavy, that you may misshape, or deforme the Horse, either by unnecessary figures, or uncomely skarres. Fourthly, not to be too rash or hasty in giving fire, as if every cure were to be wrought by that practice onely, (as I know some very well reputed Farriers hold of opinion) but onely to attempt all other good meanes before, and when all hope else is desperate, then to make your fire the last refuge, as an extremity that must prevaile when al other practices doe perish.

Lastly, I would not have you like those foolish Farriers which know nothing, utterly to contemne and neglect it, as if it were uselesse, but with all moderation and judicious discretion to apply it in fit time and place, so the poore horse may gaine ease, your selfe good reputation, and the owner profit: which is most certaine, as long as you are governed by wisedome.



## CHAP. CLXXVII.

*Of Cauterize by medicine, which is cauterize Potentiall.*

**T**He Potentiall Cauterize, or searing of the flesh by medicine is (as I said before) when the medicines are either Corrosive, Putrifactive, or Causticke: corrosive, as when they doe corrode, rot, gnaw, and fret the flesh: Putrifactive, when they do corrupt the complexion of the member, and doe induce a maine skarre like dead flesh, causing infinite paine, in such sort that they are often accompanied with Fevers and mortality, and therefore are not to be administred but to strong bodies, and in very strong diseases: and causticke, which is as much to say burnings, when the operation is so strong, that it inclineth, and commeth neereſt to the nature of fire, and so burneth and consumeth whatſoever it toucheth.

Now theſe Potentiall cauterizes doe exceed and excell one another, by certaine degrees as thus, the corrosives are weaker then the Putrifactives, and the putrifactives are weaker then the caustickes, the corrosives worke upon the upper part in the soft flesh; the putrifactives in the depth of the hard flesh; and the caustickes have power to breake skinne sound or unsound, both in hard and soft flesh, and that very deeply also.

Now of corrosives some be simple and some be compound: the simple corrosives are Roch-allome, burnt or unburnt, the Spung of the Sea somewhat burnt

burnt, Lime, red *Curral*, and the powder of Mercury, the shavings of an Oxe or Harts horne, *Precipitate*, *Verdigrease*, and such like. The compound Corrosives are, blacke sope and Lime, *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, and *Vnguentum Egyptiacum*, and *Vnguentum Caracuum*, and many such like : and these are to bee applyed unto sores, Ulcers, Excressions, after they are corroded.

The Putrifactives are *Arsnicke*, either white or yellow, *Resalgar*, or any medicine compounded with any of them ; besides *Sandaracha* *Chrysocolle*, and *Aconitum*.

Now if you would have your putrifactive medicines to bee caustive, that is breeding a great skarre, and hot in the fourth degree : then they are unsleckt Lime, and the burned dregges of Wine, and these are to be used to *Carbuncles*, *Cankers*, and *Anburies*

The causticke medicines are those which are made of strong lye, called *Capitellum*, or *Magistra*, of *Vitriole Romane*, *Sal-niter*, *Aqua fortis*, *Apium*, *Cantharides*, *Ciclamine*, Onions, strong Garlicke, *Melancardinum*, the stones or graines of *Briony*, and many such like.

Now in the conclusion, I would wish every diligent Farrier seldome or never to use either *Arsnick*, *Resalgar*, or *Mercury sublimat*, simply of themselves, but rather to allay them (if the substance whereon they are to worke bee very great) with *Vnguentum Apostolorum* ; but if it bee very little, then with Hogges grease, Turpentine, or such like, And thus much for this potential cauterizing, and the proper uses.



## CHAP. CLXXVIII.

*Of the rowelling of horses, and the use thereof.*

**T**He Rowelling of horses is, amongst our ignorant and simple Smiths, the most ordinary and generall practice of all other whatsoever, insomuch that not any disease can almost bee found about a horse, either how slight or great soever it bee, but presently without any reason or sence thereof, they will rowell him for the same; whereby they not onely put the horse to a needlesse torment, but also bring downe (now and then) such a fluxe of naughty humours, that they lame the horse, which otherwise would bee perfectly sound. But it is not my Theame to dispute of these ignorances; onely this I must say of Rowelling, it is a practice as necessary and commendable for the good estate of a Horses limbes and body, as any medicine whatsoever, so it be applyed in his due time, and in his due place: otherwise on the contrary part, it is contrary to all goodnesse.

The helps which are got by rowelling, are these, it separateth and dissolveth all evil humours, which either through Naturall or unnaturall corruptions are gathered and knit together in any one place, hindring the office of any member, or deforming the body by any superfluity of evill substance; it looseth those parts that are bound, and bindeth those parts that are weakned; it giveth strength unto sicke joynts, and comforteth whatsoever is oppressed with any cold fleame, or hot cholerick substance.

substance: the generall use of Rowelling, is either for our inward strains, especially about the shoulders or hips, or else for great hard swellings, which will not be mollified or corroded by any outward medicine; which is either playster or Unguent: for you must understand, that when a horse receiveth any straine or bruise, either in the upper joynts of his shoulders or his hips, which joynts doe not stand one upon another, as the lower joynts doe, but they goe one into another, as the one end of the Marrow-bone into the pot of the spade-bone, and the other end into the pot of the Elbow, which is a double bone: Now as I say, when a bruise is received in these parts, if by present application of hot and comfortable medicines, the griefe be not taken away, thenest-soones there gathers between the pot and the bone, a certaine bruised jelly, which continually offendeth the tender gristle which covers the ends of every bone, makes the horse to halt vehemently: and then is this corrupt matter not to be taken away by any outward medicine, but by rowelling only: and as I speake of the shoulder, so I speake of the hips also, where the upper thigh bone goeth into the pot of the canel-bone, & there breeds the like infirmity. Now for the manner of rowelling, it is in this sort: First, when you have found out the certaine place of the horses griefe, as whether it be on the fore-pitch of the shoulder, on the hinder Elbow, or on the hippe, then you shall (having cast the horse upon some dung-hill, or soft ground) make a little slit more then a good handfull below the place of his griefe through the skinn, and no more, so bigge



as you may well thrust in a Swannes quill into the same: then with your corner raise the skinne a little from the flesh, and then put in your quill, and blow all the skinne from the flesh upward, even to the top, and all over the shoulder: then stopping the hole with your finger and your thumb, take a small hazle sticke, and all to beate the blowne place all over; and then with your hand spread the winde into every part, and after let it goe: then take a tampin of horse haire twound together, or which is better of red Sarcinet, halfe the bignesse of a mans little finger, and above a foote or fixteene inches in length, putting it into your rowelling needle, which would be at the least seven or eight inches long; thrust it in at the first hole, and so putting it upward, draw it out againe at least fixe inches above; and then, if you please, you may put in another above that: and then tye the two ends of the tampins or Rowels together, and moove and draw them to and fro in the skinne, in any wise not forgetting, both before you put them in, and every day after they are in, to annoynt them well with butter, hogs grease, or oyle de bay.

Now there be other *Farriers*, which in that they are opiniated that these long Rowels, or Tampins of haire or filke, doe make both a double sore, and a great skarre; therefore they make their Rowels of round peeces of stiffe leather, such as is in the upper part of an old shooe, with a round hole in the midst according to this forme: and then doubling it when they put it in, as



soone

soone as it is within, to spread it, and lay it flat betweene the flesh and the skinne, and so as the hole of the Rowel may answere just with the hole that is made in the horses skinne; and then once in two or three dayes to cleanse the Rowell, and to annoint it, and so put it in againe.

Other *Farriers* do use to make the Rowel of lantorne-horne, in the same fashion as is made of leather, and in the like sort to use it. But for mine owne part, I have used them all, and truely in my practice finde not any better than other: onely the leather or the horne is somewhat more cleanly, and lesse offensive to the Eye, yet they aske much more attendance.

Now if you do Rowel your Horse for any swelling, then you shall ever put in your long Rowel the same way that the veines runne, and seldome or never crosse-wise, and the more you blow the skin for a swelling, so much the better it is: for the winde is it which onely occasioneth putrifaction, and makes the festred humours to dissolve, and distill downe from the secreet hollowes of the joynts, into those open places where it falleth away in matter, and so the beast becomes cured.

#### CHAP. CLXXIX.

##### *How to geld Horses or Colts.*

**T**Here is to be observed in the gelding of horses, first, the age: secondly, the season of the yeere: and lastly, the state of the Moone. For the age, if it be a Colt, you may geld him at nine daies old, or fifteene,



teene, if his stones be come downe : for to speak the truth, the sooner that you geld him, it is so much the better both for his growth, shape and courage: albe- it some hold an opinion, that at two yeers old should be the soonest, but they are mistaken, and their rea- sons are weake therein.

Now if it be a horse that you would geld, then there is no speech to be made of his age: for it is with- out any question, that a perfect *Farrier* may geld a horse without danger at any age whatsoever, being carefull in the cure.

Now for the Season of the yeere, the best is in the Spring, betweene *April & May*, or in the beginning of *Iune* at the farthest, or else about the fall of the *Leafe*, which is the latter end of *September*.

Now for the state of the Moone, the fittest time is ever when the Moone is in the wane : as touch- ing the manner of Gelding, it is in this sort, whe- ther it be Foale, Colte, or Horse : First, you shall cast him either upon straw, or upon some dunghill : then taking the stone betweene your fore-most fin- ger and your great finger, you shall with a very fine incision-knife slit the Coddle, so that you may presse the stone forth, and no more : Then with a pair of smal Nippers, made either of Steele, boxe-wood, or Brasil, being very smooth, and clap the strings of the stone betweene them, very neere unto the set- ting on of the stone, and presse them so hard, that there may be no fluxe of blood : then with a thinne drawing cauterizing Iron made red hot, seare a- way the stone; then take a hard plaister made of Ro- zen, Waxe, and washt Turpentine, wel mo'ten toge-  
ther,

ther, and with your hot Iron melt it upon the head of the strings; then seare the strings, and then melt more of the salve, till such time as you have laid a good thicknesse of the salve upon the strings: Then loose the Nippers, and as you did with that stone, so doe with the other also: Then fill the two slits of the Cod with white Salt, and annoint all the outside of the Cod, and all over the Horses belly and thighes with Hogges grease cleane rendered, and so let him rise: And keepe him either in some very warme stable, or otherwise in some very warme pasture, where he may walke up and downe; for there is nothing better for a horie in this case than moderate exercise.

Now if after his Gelding you do perceive that his Cod and sheath doth swell in any extraordinary fashion, then you shall chafe him up and downe, and make him Trot an houre in a day, and it will soone recover him, and make him sound without any impediment.

#### CHAP. CLXXX.

*Of the making of Curtals, or cutting off of the tailes of Horses.*

**T**He Curtayling of Horses is used in no Nation whatsoever, so much as in this kingdom of ours, by reason of much carriage and heavy burthens which our Horses continually are exercised and imployed withall, and the rather sith we are strongly opinionated, that the taking away of those joynts doth make the Horses chine or backe a great deale stronger,



stronger, and more able to support a burden, as in truth it doth, and we dayly finde it by continuall experience.

Now for the manner of curtalling of Horses, it is in this sort: First, you shall with your finger and your thumbe gropetill you finde the third joynt from the setting on of the Horses tayle; and having found it, raise up all the haire, and turne it backward: then taking a very small strong Cord, wrappe it about that joynt, and pull it both with your owne strength, and another mans, so straight as you can possible pull it: then wrappe it about againe, and draw it as straight or straighter againe: and thus doe three or foure times about the taile, with all the possible straightnesse that may be; and then make fast the ends of the cord: then take a peece of wood, whose end is smooth and even, of just height with the strunt of the horses taile, and setting it betweene the horses hinder legges) after you have tramelled all his foure legges in such sort, that hee can no wayes stir) then lay his tayle thereupon, and taking a maine strong sharpe knife made for the purpose, set the edge thereof so neare as you can gesse it, betweene the fourth and fifth joynt, and then with a great Smithy hammer striking upon the backe of the knife cut the taile asunder: then if you see any blood to issue forth, you shal know that the corde is not straight enough, and therefore you must draw it straighter, but if no blood follow, then it is well bound: This done, you shall take a redde hot burning iron, made round after this fashion, of the full



compasse

compasse of the flesh of the Horses tayle, that the bone of the tayle may goe thorow the hole, and with it you shall seare the flesh, till you have mortified it; and in the searing you shall plainly see the ends of the veines start out like pap-heads; but you shall still continue searing them, untill you see all to bee most smooth, plaine, and hard, so that the blood cannot breake through the burning: then may you boldly unloose the cord, and after two or three dayes, that you perceive the sore beginne to rot, you shall not misse to annoint it with fresh butter, or else with hoggesgrease and turpentine, until it be whole.

## CHAP. CLXXXI.

*To make a white starre in any part of a Horse.*

**I**F you will at any time make a white starre, either in your Horses fore-head, or in any other part of his body, you shall (according to the opinion of the most ancient *Farriers*) take a Tile-stone, and after you have burned it, beate it into fine powder: then take Lilly-roots, Daisie-roots, White-bryer-roots, of each a like quantity, and having dried them, beate them also into fine powder, and mixe them with the first: then with a Razer shave that part of your horse where you would have your starre: and then with this powder rubbe it so vehemently, that you scarce leave any skinne on; then take a good quantity of honey-suckle flowres, and a like quantity of hony, and the water wherein a  
Moule



Moule hath beene sodden, and then distil them into la Water, and with that water wash the sore place the space of three dayes together, and keepe the winde from it, and you shal presently see the white haire to grow; for this Receipt hath beene often very wel approoved.

There be other *Farriers* which take a Crab, and roast it, and being fire-hot, bind it to that part which you would have white, and it wil scald away the old haire, and the next haire that groweth wil be white.

Other *Farriers* use, after they have shaved the place, to take the juyce of sharpe onions or leekes, and to bathe the place very much therewith: then to take Barley bread, as fire hot as it commeth from the Oven, and clap it to the shaven place, suffering it to lye so til it be cold: and then after annoint it with hony, and the white haire will come. Other *Farriers* use to annoint the shaven place with the grease of a Mouldy-warpe sodden, and that wil bring the white haire. Other *Farriers* use, after they have shaved it, to rub the place well with Salt, and then twice every day for a fortnight, to wash it with the broath wherein a Mouldy-warpe and some swines grease hath bin sodden.

Other *Farriers* use to boile a Mouldy-warpe in salt water for three dayes together, or else in strong lye, and ever as one liquor consumeth, to supply it with another; then with this decoction being warme, annoynt the shaved place, and it wil bring white haire suddainly. Other *Farriers* take the gall of a Goate, and rub the shaved place therewith, and it wil bring white haire also.

Other

Other *Farriers* take Sheepes milke, and boyle it, and in that wet a linnen cloath, and being very hot, E3 lay it to, renewing it until you may rub off the haire with your finger, this done, apply the milke to it twice a day luke-warme, til the haire do come again, which without all question wil be white.

Other *Farriers* take the roots of Wild Cowcumbers, and twice so much *Nitrum* mingled with oyle and hony, or else adde to your Cowcumbers *Sal nitrum* beaten, and hony, and annoynt the shaven place therewith, and it wil bring white haire.

Other *Farriers* use to take a peece of a bricke-bar, and with it gently to rub and chafe the place, till by the continuance therof, you have rubbed away both the haire & the skin so broad as you would have the *starre*, and then after to annoint it with honey, until the haire come againe: Or else to roast a *Colewoort* stalke like a Warden, or an Egge, untill it be stone-hard: and then as they come hot out of the fire, to clapeyther of them to the Horses fore-head, and it wil scald off the haire, then to annoint it with honey til the haire come againe.

Now to conclude, and to shew you the most perfect and absolute experiment which I have ever found to be most infallible, and it is thus: You E3 shal take a very fine sharpe long bodkin, made for the same purpose, and thrust it up betwixt the skinne & the bone upwards, so long as you would have the *starre*; and in thrusting it up, you shall hollow the skinne from the bone the bignesse that you would have the *starre*, this done, you shall take a peece of Lead, made in the true shape of your bodkin, and



and drawing out the Bodkin, thrust in the Lead into the same holes ; then you shall thrust the Bodkin crosse-wise the forehead underneath the lead ; and then thrusting in such another peece of Lead, you shall see it in the Horses face to present this figure, which being done, you shall take a very strong pack-thread, and putting it underneath all the foure ends of the Leads, and drawing it with all straightnesse, you shall gather all the hollow skinn together on a purse, folding the pack-thread oft and oft about, and still straighter and straighter, so that you shall see it then to present unto you this figure : this done, you shall let it rest at least the space of eight & forty houres, in which time the skin will bee as it were mortified : then may you unloose the pack-thread, and draw forth the leaden pinnes, and with your hand close the hollow skinn to the Fore-head hard againe, and shortly after you shall see the haire to fall away, and the next haire which cometh, will be white ; and this experiment is most infallible.



Now there be some other *Farriers* which will not put in pinnes, nor use any pack-thread, but onely will

will slit the fore-head, and open the skinne on both sides, and then put in either a horne or a plate of Lead as bigge as the starre, and so let it remaine till the skinne rot: Then take out the horne or lead, and anoynt the place with honey, and the water of Mallowes sodde, and it will bring white haire: and surely this experiment also is most infallible; but it maketh a foule sore, and is somewhat long in bringing his vertue to effect.

Againe, I have seene a white starre also made by taking the guts of an henne, or Pullet, and clapping them hot as they come out of the belly, to the horses face, having in a readinesse some hollow round thing made for the same purpose, to keepe the guts together upon the horses face.

### CHAP. CLXXXII.

*How to make a blacke Starre: or white haire blacke.*

**I**F at any time you would have a desire to make up-  
pon a white horse a blacke starre, you shall take a scruple of Inke, and foure scruples of the wood of *Oliander* beaten to powder; incorporate this in as much sheepes suet as will suffice, and then anoynt the place therewith, and it will no doubt make any white haire blacke.

Other old Farriers take the decoction of Fearn rootes, and Sage sod in lye, and wash the place therewith, and it will breed blacke haire; but you must wash the place very oft therewith.



Other Farriers use to take the rust of Iron, Galls, and vitrioll, and stampe them with oyle: or else take Souther inke, Galls, and rust, and beate them well together, and then annoint the place therewith, and it will turne any white haire to blacke.

### CHAP. CLXXXII.

*To make a red starre in a Horses face.*

**I**F you desire to make in your horses face, or any other part, a red starre, you shal take of *Aqua fortis* an ounce, of *Aqua vita* a penny-worth, of silver to the value of eightene pence: put them into a glasse, and heate them well therein, and then annoint the place very well therewith, and it will immediately turne the haire to be of a perfect red colour, only it wil endure no longer then til the casting of the haire: and therefore at every such time you must renew the haire againe, if you wil have the star to continue.


### CHAP. CLXXXIII.

*How to make haire to come very soone, very thicke, and very long.*

Other Farriers take the decoction of *Turkey* **I**F you would have haire to come very soon in any bare place, or to grow thicke where it is thinne, or long where it is short, you shal take according to the

opinion of the most ancient Farriers the Urine of a young boy; and with it first wash the place: after that take lye made of unflecked Lime, *Geruse* and *Litargy*, and with it wash the haire oft, and it wil make it come soone, long, and thicke.

Other *Farriers* use to wash the place with water wherein the roots of *Althæa* have beene sod: then after dry it gently with your hand, and it will encrease haire much. Other *Farriers* use to wash the place with oyle mingled with the ashes of nut-shells burnt, or else *Snail*-shells burnt, and it wil encrease haire also. Other *Farriers* take *Agrimony* punded with Goats milke, and with it annoynt the place, or else oyle wherein a Mouldwarpe hath bin boyled, and annoynt the place with eyther of them, and it wil encrease haire very much. Other *Farriers* take the dung of Goats, *allome*, honey, and the blood of a Swine: mingle them all together, and stir them til they be ready to boyle, and being hot, rub the bare place therewith. Other ancient *Farriers* take *Nettle*-seeds bruised with honey, water, and salt, and then rub the place therewith. Other *Farriers* take the roote of a white *Lilly* beaten and sodde in oyle, and annoynt the place therewith. Others take the juyce of a long Onion, or else the juyce of *Radishes*, and annoynt the place therewith. Others take Tar, Oyle Olive, and hony boyled together, and with it annoynt the bare place. Others take the soote of a Cauldron mixed with hony and oyle, and annoynt the place therewith.

There be other ancient *Farriers* which use this, and it is the best of all, they take greene wal-nut shels, & 



burne them to powder, and then mixe it with Honey; Oyle, and Wine, and anoynt the place therewith, and it will encrease haire wonderfully, and very soone.

### CHAP. CLXXXV.

*To make haire smooth, sleeke, and soft.*

**I**F you will make your horses Coate to be smooth, sleeke, soft, and shining, you shall with sufficient store of cloth, keepe him warme at the heart; for the least inward cold will make the haire stare: then you shall make him sweate oft: for that will raise up the dust and filth, which makes his coate foule and hard: then you shall, when the horse is in his greatest sweate, with an old sword blade turning the edge towards his haire, scrape, or as it were, curry away all the white foame, sweate, and filth which shall be rayfed up, and that will lay his coate even, and make it smooth: And lastly, you shall when you let him blood, rub him all over with his owne blood, and so let it remaine two or three dayes, and then curry and dresse him well, and this wil make his coate shine like glasse.

## CHAP. CLXXXVI.

*How to take off Haire in any part of a horse.*

**I**F you will at any time take off the haire from any part of a horse, you shall dissolve in water, (according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers) eight ounces of unsleckt Lime: and then boyle it till a quarter be consumed, then adde to it an ounce of Orpiment, and then lay a plaister thereof to any part of the horse, and it will in very few houres bring all the haire away.

There bee other ancient Farriers which boyle in running water Rust and Orpiment, and with it being very hot, wash the place, and it will soone bring the haire away.

## CHAP. CLXXXVII.

*How to cast and overthrow a horse.*

**W**Henever you intend to cast or overthrow your horse, after you have brought him into a convenient place: as namely, either upon some greene swarth, or upon some Dung-hil, or in some Barne upon good store of soft straw, you shall take and double a long rope, and cast a knot a yard from the bought; then put the bought about his neck, and the double rope betwixt his fore-legs, & about his hinder pastorns, underneath his fetlocke, then put the ends of the rope under the bought of his neck, and draw them quickly, and they



will overthrow him, then make the ends fast, and hold downe his head, under which alwaies you must bee sure to have good store of straw. Now if you would at any time, either brand your horse on the buttocke, or doe any thing about his hinder legs, that hee may not strike, take up his contrary fore-legge; and when you doe brand your horse, see that the Iron be red hot, and that the haire be both seared quite away, and the flesh scortched in every place before you let him goe, and so you shall be sure to loose no labour.

## CLXXXVIII.

*How to know the age of a horse.*

**T**He age of every horse is knowne; either by his Teeth, by his hoofes, or by his taile.

It is knowne by his Teeth thus; at two yeares old he changeth the foure fore-most teeth in his head; at three yeares old hee changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more apparant foales teeth but two of each side, above and below: at foure yeares old hee changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more foales teeth but one on each side, both above and below; at five yeares old hee hath never a foales tooth before, but then hee changeth his tusshes on each side; at sixe yeares old hee putteth up his tusshes, nere about which you shall see apparantly growing a little circle of new and young flesh, besides, the tussh will be white, small short, and sharpe; at seven yeares old, the two outmost teeth of his neather chappe on both sides will be

be hollow, with a little blacke specke in them: And at eight yeares old, then all his Teeth will be full, smooth, and playne, the blacke speck being cleane gone, and his tusshes will bee somewhat yellow, without any circles of young flesh: At nine yeares old, his fore-most teeth will be very long, broad, yellow, and foule, and his tusshes will bee blunt: At ten yeares old, in the inside of his upper Tusshes will bee no holes at all to bee felt with your fingers end, which till that age, you shall ever most perfectly feele; besides, the Temples of his head wil beginne to bee crooked and hollow; at eleven yeares of age, his teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, blacke, and foule; onely he will cut even, and his teeth will stand directly opposite one against another; at twelve yeares old his teeth will be long, yellow, blacke, and foule; but then his upper teeth wil over-reach and hang over his neather teeth; at thirteene yeares his tusshes wil bee worne close to his chappe, if hee bee a much ridden horse, otherwise they wil be black, foule, and long like the fanges of a boare.

If a horses hooves be rugged, and as it were seamed, one seame over another; if they be dry, ful, and crusty, it is a signe of a very old age; as on the contrary part, a smooth, moyst, hollow, and wel founding hoove, is a signe of yong yeares.

If you take your horse with your finger and your thumbe by the sterne of the taile, close at the setting on by his buttocke, and feeling there hard; if you feele betwixt your finger and your thumbe of each side his tayle, a joynt sticke out more then any



wil overthrow him, then make the ends fast, and hold downe his head, under which alwaies you must bee sure to have good store of straw. Now if you would at any time, either brand your horse on the buttocke, or doe any thing about his hinder legs, that hee may not strike, take up his contrary fore-legge; and when you doe brand your horse; see that the Iron be red hot, and that the haire be both seared quite away, and the flesh scortched in every place before you let him goe, and so you shall be sure to loose no labour.

## CLXXXVIII.

*How to know the age of a horse.*

**T**He age of every horse is knowne; either by his Teeth, by his hooves, or by his taile.

It is knowne by his Teeth thus; at two yeares old he changeth the foure fore-most teeth in his head; at three yeares old hee changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more apparant foales teeth but two of each side, above and below: at foure yeares old hee changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more foales teeth but one on each side, both above and below; at five yeares old hee hath never a foales tooth before, but then hee changeth his tusshes on each side; at sixe yeares old hee putteth up his tusshes, neere about which you shall see apparantly growing a little circle of new and young flesh, besides, the tussh will be white, small short, and sharpe; at seven yeares old, the two out-most teeth of his neather chappe on both sides will be

be hollow, with a little blacke specke in them: And at eight yeares old, then all his Teeth will be full, smooth, and playne, the blacke speck being cleane gone, and his tusshes will bee somewhat yellow, without any circles of young flesh: At nine yeares old, his fore-most teeth will be very long, broad, yellow, and foule, and his tusshes will bee blunt: At ten yeares old, in the inside of his upper Tusshes will bee no holes at all to bee felt with your fingers end, which till that age, you shall ever most perfectly feele; besides, the Temples of his head wil beginne to bee crooked and hollow; at eleven yeares of age, his teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, blacke, and foule; onely he will cut even, and his teeth will stand directly opposite one against another; at twelve yeares old his teeth will be long, yellow, blacke, and foule; but then his upper teeth wil over-reach and hang over his neather teeth; at thirteene yeares his tusshes wil bee worne close to his chappe, if hee bee a much ridden horse, otherwise they wil be black, foule, and long like the fanges of a boare.

If a horses hooves be rugged, and as it were seamed, one seame over another; if they be dry, ful, and crusty, it is a signe of a very old age; as on the contrary part, a smooth, moyst, hollow, and wel founding hoofe, is a signe of yong yeares.

If you take your horse with your finger and your thumbe by the sterne of the taile, close at the setting on by his buttocke, and feeling there hard; if you feele betwixt your finger and your thumbe of each side histayle, a joynt sticke out more then any



other joynt, by the bignesse of an hazell nut, then you may presume, the horse is under ten yeares old; but if his joynts be all plaine, and no such thing to be felt, then hee is above tenne, and at least thirteene. If a horses eyes bee round, full, and starting from his head, if the pits over his eyes bee filled, smooth, and even with his Temples, and wrinkles either about his brow or under his eyes, then the horse is young: if otherwise you see the contrary characters, it is a signe of old age. If you take up a horses skinne on any part of his body, betwixt your finger and your thumb, and plucke it from the flesh: then letting it goe againe, if it suddainely returne to the place from whence it came, and be smooth and plaine without wrinkle, then the horse is young, and full of strength: but if being pulled up it stand, and not returne to his former place, then be assured hee is very old and exceedingly wasted.

Lastly, if a horse that is of any darke colour shall grow grissell onely about his Eye-browes, or underneath his maine, it is then an infallible signe of most extreame old age: and thus much touching a horses age.

#### CHAP. CLXXXIX.

*How to make an old horse seeme young.*

**T**AKE a small crooked Iron, no bigger then a Wheate corne, and having made it red hot, burne a little blacke hole in the toppes of the two outmost teeth of each side the nether chappe before,  
next

next to the tusshes; and then with an aule blade prick it, and make the shel fine and thin; then with a sharpe scraping Iron make all his teeth white and cleane: this done, take a fine Lancet, and above the hollows of the horses eyes which are shrunke downe, make a little hole onely but through the sk inne, and then raising it up, put in a quill that is very small; as the quill of a Raven, or such like: and then blow the skin full of winde til all the hollownesse be filled up, and then take out the quill, and lay your finger a little while on the hole, and the winde wil stay in, and the horses countenance will be as if hee were but fixe yeares old at the most.

## CHAP. CXC.

*How to make a horse that hee shall not neigh either in company, or when he is ridden.*

**I**F either when you are in service in the Warres, and would not bee discovered, or when upon any other occasion, you would not have your Horse to neigh, or make a noise, you shall take a list of Wollen cloath, and tye it fast in many folds about the middest of your horses tongue; and beleeve it, as long as the tongue is so tyed, so long the Horse can by no meanes neigh, or make any other extraordinary noise with his voyce, as hath beene oftentryed and approved of.



## CHAP. CXCI.

*How to make a Horse exceeding quicke and nimble  
of the spurre.*

**I**F your horse be either dull of the Spurre through his naturall inclination, or through tiring, or any other accident, you shall first shave him the breadth of a saucer on both sides, just in the spurring place, on both sides the veine; then with a Launcet make fixe issues, or small Orifices on both sides; then raising the skinne from the flesh, you shall put into the holes a pretty quantity of burnt salt, which wil make the sore to rankle.

In this sort you shall keepe it three dayes, and by no meanes ride the Horse: the third day being ended, you shall set a childe on his backe with spurs, and make him Spurre the horse in the sore place: which done, you shall wash the place with pisse, Salt, and Nettles sodden well together; and this wil make his sides smart so extreame,ly, that he wil never abide the spurre after.

Now you shall let him stand after his washing three dayes more, and then take halfe a pint of honey, and with it annoint his sides once a day til they be whole. Also rub his sides with the powder of glasse, and it will doe the like.

## CHAP. CX CII.

*How to make a horse that tires, or is restife, to  
goe forward.*

**I**F your Horse (as it is the common nature of Jades) through the naughtinesse of his nature, or dulnesse of spirit, be either so restiffe, or so tyred, that he will not goe forward a foote, but standeth stocke stil; You shal then make a running suickle of a good smal cord, and put it about his coddies and stones, in such sort that it may not flippe: then you shal draw the rest of the cord betweene the Girthes and the horses body, and bringing it just up between the horses fore-legges, bee sure to hold the end of the cord in your hand as you sit in the Saddle; then ride the Horse forward, and when hee beginneth to grow restife, or to stand still, then plucke the cord, and crampe him by the stones, and you shall see that immediately hee will goe forward: And in this same manner you shal use him for at least a fortnight together, and it wil cleane take away that evill quality.

## CHAP. CX CIII.

*Other most excellent and approoved wayes to  
preserve an horse from tiring, never  
disclosed till now.*

**I**F your Horse either through violence of labour, distemperature of body, or naughtinesse of nature happen



happen to tire under you, or travaile not with that spirit you desire; then when you come to a baiting place, alight, and set up your Horse warme, but doe not walk him: then after he hath beene wel rubbed, take a quart of strong Ale, and put thereto halfe an ounce of the fine searst powder of *Elicampane*, and brew them together, then give it the Horse with an horne, which done, tye his head to the Racke, for you need not care for Provender til night, at which time Provender him well, and in the morning give him Oats or Bread, or both in plentiful manner, and being ready to take his backe, give him the former quantity of Ale and *Elicampane* as afore-said, and doubtlesse you shall finde him to travaile with great courage and spirit, as hath beene prooved.

Also, if you take a Bunch of *Penny-royall*, and tye it to the mouth of your Bit or Snaffle, you shall find it very comfortable, and it wil cause your Horse to travaile lustily.

Againe, if you take of the best Tobacco, and dry it in the Sunne in a glasse close stopt, then pund it very small, and mixe it with an equal quantity of the Cockle-shels, then with the Oyle of *Dill*, and the Oyle of *Cloves* make the powder into a paste, then make pretty round bals thereof as big as Wal-nuts, and dry them in the shadow in the Dogge-dayes, then keepe them close in a Gally-pot, and give them as pills in the time of necessity: that is to say, a ball at a time, wheosoever your Horse shall faint in travaile: And this doth not onely helpe tyring, but also takes away any cold whatsoever.

Lastly, if your Horse notwithstanding for all this, doe

doe happen at any time to tyre, then presently take off his saddle, and with the hearbe Arsmart rubbe his backe all over very hard, then laying Arsmarte also under the saddle, so ride him gently at the first, and if there be any life in him, it will make him goe, as it hath beene made prooffe of.

V O X C . . . . .  
CHAP. CXCIIII.

*How to make a horse to follow his Master, and to finde him out, and challenge him amongst never so many people.*

**I**F you will have your horse to have such a violent love towards you, that he shal not onely follow you up and downe, but also labour to find you out, and owne you as soone as he hath found you: You shall then take a pound of Oat-meale, and put there to a quarter of a pound of honey, and halfe a pound of *Lunaret*; and then make a Cake thereof, and put it in your bosome next unto your naked skinne: then runne or labour your selfe up and downe untill you sweate, then rub all your sweat upon your Cake, this done, keepe your horse fasting a day and a night, and then give him the cake to eate, which as soone as hee hath eaten, you shall turne him loose, and he wil not onely most eagerly follow you, but also hunt and feeke you out when he hath lost, or doth misse you; and though you bee environed with never so many, yet he wil find you out, and know you; and you shal not faile, but every time that he commeth unto you,  
you



you shall spit in his mouth, and annoint his tongue with your spittle: And thus doing he wil never forsake you.



### CHAP. CXCV.

*The nature and speciall qualities of all the Simples that are spoken of in this whole Worke, set downe in the manner of Alphabet.*

#### A

**A** *Bruteum*, which we call in English Southern-wort, is hot and dry in the third degree, and openeth the pipes of the body, and is good for short winde.

*Abfinthium*, which we call Worme-wood, is hot in the first degree, and dry in the second; it cleanseth and bindeth, and is good for the stomacke.

*Aceto*, which we call Vineger, especially if it be of Wine, is cold and piercing, *to wit*, cold in the first, and dry in the third degree.

*Agaricum* is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree: it expelleth humours, purgeth all fleame and choler, and is good for the liver and kidneies.

*Allium*, which wee call Garlicke, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it draweth, openeth, and expelleth all evill humours.

*Agrecom,*

*Agrecum*, which we call Cresses, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it burneth, draweth, and resolveth, and is exceeding good for scurfe, or wild scabs, or for the Lungs.

*Agripa* is a knowne Unguent that is good against all tumours.

*Allome*, called commonly *Roch Allome*, is hot and dry in the third degree, and is good for cankers.

*Alder*, or *Elder* tree is hot and dry, it purgeth choler and fleame, and healeth wounds.

*Aloes* is hot in the first, and dry in the third degree, it cleanseth and dissolveth, and also comforteth the vitall parts.

*Althea*, which we call white *Mallows*, is hot and dry: it looseth and scattereth humours, warmeth and moisteneth very much.

*Almonds* is hot and moist in the first degree: it provoketh urine, and is very good for the lungs or liver.

*Ambrosia*, which we call *Wood-sage*, represseth driveth backe, and bindeth humours.

*Ammoniacum* is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree, it softneth and dissolveth humours.

*Anetum*, which we call *Dill*, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: it ripeneth crude humours, and expelleth heate.

*Anise-seeds* are hot and dry in the third degree, expell cold, and dissolve humours, and provoke urine.

*Antimonium*, or *Stibium*, is cold and dry, it bindeth, mundifieth, and purgeth.

*Appio*, which we call *Smallage* or *Parsley*, is hot in the



the first, and dry in the second degree : it ripeneth, cleanseth, openeth, and provoketh urine.

*Aristolochia*, which we call *Birthwort*, or *Hartwoort*, is hot, and cleanseth : but if it be *Rotunda*, then it is so much the stronger, being hot and dry in the fourth degree : it draweth, and purgeth thinne water and fleame, and is good to open the Lungs ; it is good against all manner of poyson whatsoever, or biting of any venemous beasts.

*Armoniacke* both dryeth, cooleth, softneth, and draweth.

*Artemisia*, which we call great Tansey, or Mugwoort, is hot in the second, and dry in the third degree : it is very good for the wormes, and swellings in the sinews.

*Arsnicke* of both kinds is hot in the third, and dry in the first degree, it bindeth, eateth, and fretteth, being a very strong Corrosive.

*Assafetida* is a gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the first degree, it cleanseth evill humours.

*Asphaltum* is a pitch that is mixt with *Bitumen* : it is hot and dry, and comforteth any swelling.

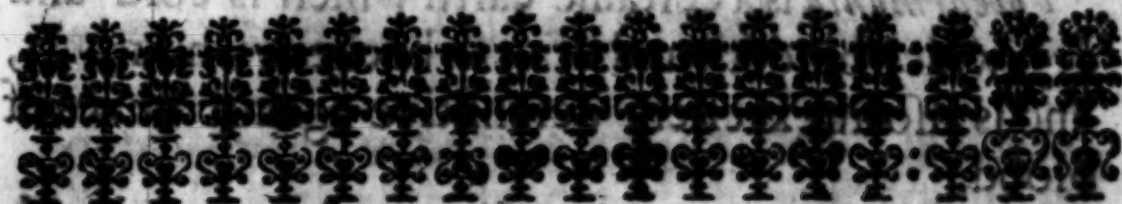
*Assontero* is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree : it cleanseth and dryeth, and is good for to comfort the stomacke.

*Assungia*, which we call soft or fresh grease, is hot and moist in the first degree : It mollifieth, ripeneth, and healeth any wound, Impostume, or Ulcer.

*Avena*, which we commonly call Oates, are naturally dry : they doe dry, binde, cleanse, and comfort all the inward parts, and are the only principal  
simple

simple which doth naturally agree with the composition of a horses body, and therefore the oyle or the quintessence of them is the only absolute and perfect medicine that can bee administred for any inward sicknesse, as experience will approve and make perfect.

*Avelanne*, which wee call the ashes of Nut-shells burnt, are hot and dry, and doe skin or stop the flux of matter.



B.

**B**ay-berries are vehemently hot and dry, and are good for all manner of rheumes, or shortnesse of Winde, especially for any disease in the Lungs: it is good against poyson, Consumptions, short breath, flegme, hardnesse of hearing, helps tyring cramps, Scurvy, the Stone, stoppings of the Liver, cures the yellowes and drop sic.

*Balsammum* is hot and dry in the second degree: it cleanseth, draweth, and comforteth.

*Bdelium* is a gumme that is hot and dry; it softenneth, and draweth away moy sture, and is excellent against all hard swellings whatsoever.

*Bertonicum*, or *Bettonicum*, which wee call Dog-stone, or Kegwort, is hot and dry in the first degree: it purgeth and cleanseth all evill humours.

00

Biacca



*Blacca* is cold and dry in the second degree, it closeth things opened, it softens hardnesse, filleth places empty, and doth extenuate all excressions.

*Bietole*, which we call Beets, is cold and moyst, and cleanseth Ulcers.

*Bitumen* is a kinde of Brimstone, or fatnesse from the sea, and it is hot and dry in the second degree, and is comfortable against any swelling.

*Bottiro* is hot in the first, and moyst in the second degree, and it ripeneth impostumes.

*Bolearmonia* is a certaine earth which is cold and dry, which bindeth and driveth backe evil humours, and is also an excellent defensive against fluxes of blood.

*Brackurfin* is a wonderfull great softner and mollifier.

*Brasica*, which wee call Cole-worts, is very dry, it doth conglutinate wounds, it healeth ulcers and tumours, it holdeth the seede, and killeth evil humours.

*Brotano*, which is the same that *Abrotanum* is, looke there.

*Eruſeo*, which wee call Butchers Broome, or knee holme, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first, it provoketh urine.

*Briony*, of this there are two kinds, the white and blacke, but the white is more effectually, the root of it is hot and drye in the second degree: it cleanseth and ripeneth, and is good for all cold diseases, it also dryeth, draweth, and mollifieth all manner of hardnesse.

*Calafonia*

Reed, draweth out prickles, if you lay the roots too

dry in the third degree, they will raise blisters in the

C.

Capilla, women, which we call maidens hair, is dry,

**C** *Alafonia*, or *Colephonia*, doth incarnate ulcers, and  
doth conglutinate things which are separated.  
*Calaminto*, which wee call wilde *Penny-royall*,  
or wild Mint, of which, that which growes on the  
Mountaines is the best, is hot and dry in the third  
Degree, doth dissolve tumours, and draweth away  
humours.

*Calcina viva*, which we call unsleckt Lime, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it adusteth, dryeth, and corrodeeth.

*Camamila*, which wee call Camomile, is hot and dry in the first degree: it mollifieth and dissolveth al griefes, and is good especially for the Liver. 221890

**Camedros**, which we call **Germander**, is hot and drye in the third degtee; and is good against all moist colds.

*Camphora* is a kind of Gum which is cold and dry in the third degree; it preserveth the body from putrifaction, and bindeth humours.

*Canabis*, which wee call Hempe, is hot, the seede whereof driveth away extraordinary colds: it ripeneth and dissolveth humours, and mollifieth and dryeth inflammations.

*Cinamon* is hot and dry in the third degree, and is comfortable in all inward sicknesses.

**Ganna**, which we call reeds, especially the hedge



Reed, draweth out prickles, if you lay the rootes too with the knobs.

*Cantharides* are certaine flyes, which are hot and dry in the third degree; they will raise blisters in the sound parts.

*Capilli venere*, which we call maidens haire, is dry, and bindeth loose humours.

*Cardimonium* is hot, it extenuateth humours, and being mixt with vinegar killeth scabs.

*Cloves* are hot and dry in the third degree, and are very comfortable to the inward parts.

*Carumains* are hot and dry in the third degree; it helpeth Wind, and cleanseth evill humours.

*Cassia* is hot and moyft in the first degree, it expelleth Wind, dissolveth humours, and purgeth the stomacke of Choler and flegme.

*Castoreum* is hot and dry, and purgeth much.

*Cabbage* is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree, it cleanseth and ripeneth humours.

*Cenere*, which we call Ashes, are hot and dry in the fourth degree, and cleanseth mightily.

*Centuaria*, which we call wilde running *Betty*, smelling like *Marjoram*, is hot and drye in the third degree, it bindeth wounds, and conglutinateth, and is good for diseased Livers, for the wormes, old sores and wounds, and is commonly called *Century*.

*Cepe*, which we call Onions, is hot in the fourth degree: it doth cleanse corruptions, and ripens swellings.

*Cervil* is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

*Cerusa* is a white ointment made of oile and white Lead,

**Lead**, it is cold and dry in the second degree: and for the effects it hath all those which *Bractea* hath.

*Cerecollo*: see *Serococollo*.

*Chelidonium*, which we call *Selandine*, is hot and dry in the third degree; it cleaneth all putractive humours, and is excellent against inward sicknesses, especially yellowes or jaundies.

*Citrus*, which we call *Hemlocke*, is cold in the fourth degree, it numbeth and astonieth.

*Cicoria*, which we call *Succory*, is cold and dry in the first degree, and bindeth much.

*Comen*, is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second: it mollifieth and ripeneth.

*Cipolle*, which is *Leeks*, or as we call them, *chives*: see *Cepa*.

*Cinabar*, or *Sanguis draconis*, or as we call it *Vermilion*, is a certain mettle drawne from quick-sulphure, and quick-silver, it dryeth, healeth, incarnateth, bindeth, and comforteth ulcers.

*Cito*, or *Cisto*, is dry in the second degree, and bindeth much.

*Citrons*, or *Chithrons*, are cold and moist in the second degree, they doe cleanse and peirce.

*Coloquintida* is hot and dry in the third degree, and mundifieth onely.

*Colofonia*, which we commonly call *leath-pitch*, or *Greeke pitch*, is hot and dry in the third degree: it conglutinateth and gathereth together. See *Picee Greece*.

*Cocumeri*, see *Cucumeri*.

*Consolida*, which we call *Camphery*, is cold: it



conglutinateth and bindeth, and is good against Ruptures.

*Costro*, or *Cosso*, being bitter, is hot, and healeth Ulcers.

*Costus*, is hot in the third, and dry in the second Degree: and it raieth up Wormes, and is that which wee call Hearbe *Mary*, or the roote of *Angelica*.

*Corno di ceruo*, which we call Harts horne, is dry, yet it strengthneth very much, and expelleth poyson.

*Crocum*, which we call Saffron, is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree: it bindeth, comforteth, and resolveth impostumes.

*Cucumeri silvaggi*, is hot and dry in the third degree: it dissolveth, softneth, and purgeth flegme.

*Cucumeri elaterium* is cold and moyst in the second degree, it cleanse much, and is made of the juyce of wilde Cowcumbers.



D.

**D**ates are hot and moyst in the second degree: they doe resolve and disperse things knit together.

*Diacatholicon* purgeth al offensive humours which offend the body, whatsoever.

*Diafinicon*, or *Diaphenicon*, purgeth winde exceedingly,

dingly, and comforteth all griefes of the belly which are begot by crude humours, springing from Cholicke, or such like paines.

*Dialtea*, or *Dialthea*, is an oyntment made of Holly-hoxe, or Sea-mallowes: it warmeth and moistneth.

*Dragonwort* is hot and dry, and bindeth much.



**E***Buli*, which wee call Elder, is hot and dry in the third Degree: it dryeth and driveth out Water, and expelleth Choler and thinne flegme, see *Sambucus*.

*Ederaterrestris*, which wee call ground Lyy, see *Hedera*.

*Elatrium*, see *Cucumeri*.

*Eleboro*, which wee call needling powder, of it are two kinds, the white and blacke, it is hot and dry in the third degree.

*Eruca*, which wee call rocket, and of which the wilde is the best; the seeds thereof are hot and dry, and expelleth urine, Wormes, and water.

*Elusa*, which is a hearbe like spurge, is hot in the fourth degree, and dryeth and cleanseth exceedingly; and of some is called Wolfes milke.

*Euforbium* is a gumme that is hot in the fourth degree: it dryeth, purgeth, cleanseth, and exulcerareth much.

*Exerution*, which is that which wee call Oxidra-



*tion* is a certaine composition or mixture made of *Aceto*, and water, and is good to allay swellings and tumours.



## F

**Faba**, which we call a beane, is cole and dry, and it cleanseth, and dissolveth.

**Farina**, which we call branne, is hot and dry in the first degree, and dissolveth very much.

**Fearne** is dry and binding, but the roote is hot and cleansing, and killeth wormes.

**Felle**, which wee call Gall, is hot and dry, and it cleanseth and mundifieth.

**Ferugo**, which wee call the rust of Iron, is hot and dry in the second degree, it comforteth and restraineth evill humours.

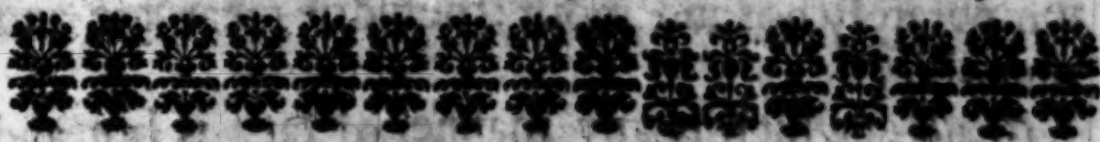
**Fici aridi**, which wee call dry figs, are hot and dry in the second degree, they ripen tumors, soften and consume hardnesse, and are good for purrsicknesse, coughes, and diseases of the Lungs.

**Filamentane**, which wee call a Dodder, being a thing that cleaveth to hearbes, winding about them like threeds, it openeth the liver and milt, and purgeth all flegme and choler.

**Filanie** is a composition, which will astonish or benumbe any part or member.

**Fennell** is hot in the third, and dry in the first degree: it doth dissolve all manner of grosse humours, and is good for the liver or lungs.

*Foligene*, which we call foot, is hot and dry, and it dryeth marvellously, and so doth all foots whatsoever.



## G.

*Allanga*, which we call Galingale, is hot and dry in the third degree: it easeth the stomacke of all griefes which proceed from cold causes: it strengtheneth the braine, and comforteth the senses.

*Galbanum* is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second: it softeneth, stoppeth, and draweth away evill humours, and is good against cold.

*Galla*, which we call Gallies, or a light fruite of Qakes, are hot and piercing.

*Garisflata*, which we call hearbe Bennet, is hot and dry in the second degree.

*Garofoli*, which we call Cloves, are hot and dry in the third degree, and are very comfortable for inward sicknesse.

*Ginger* is hot, and is excellent to preserve heate in the inward parts.

*Genista* or *Ginestra*, which we call Broome, is hot and dry in the third degree: it killeth Wormes, and scoureth much.

*Gentian*, especially the roote, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: it doth extenuate, purge, and cleanse all evill humours, and is good for the liver and stomacke, and for wounds and sores.

Gillio,



*Gillio*, which we cal Lillies, softneth sinewes, and are good for wounds and sores.

*Gramen*, which is any manner of graine or pulse, is cold and dry, except Wheate, and that is temperately hot and moist: they doe incarnate and mundifie.

*Grasso*, which is any manner of fat, is hot and moist, and doth ripen and soften.



### H.

**H** *Arundinis cortex*, which we cal Cane-reed, is hot and dry in the third degree.

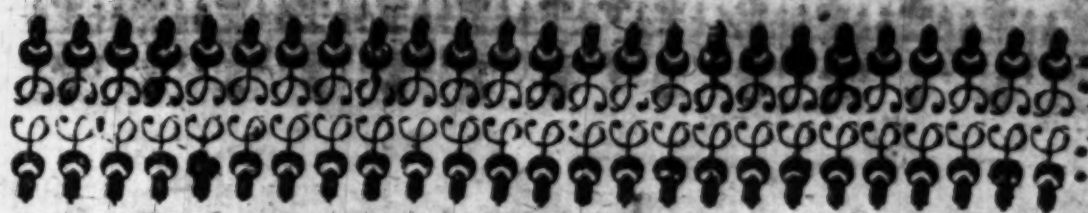
*Hedera*, which we call Ivy, is a great drawer and opener.

*Helxine*, which we call *Pellitory* of the wall, cleanseth and bindeth, and is good for any old cough, or for any inflammations.

*Hyssope*, which we cal Hyssope, there is both wild, and that of the Garden, but the Garden is the best, it is hot and dry in the third degree, it cleanseth and warmeth, it is good for inflammations of the Lungs, old coughes, pozes, Rhumes, and short winde.

*Hordea*, which we call Barley, is cold and dry in the first degree, and it mundifieth and cooleth.

*Incense,*



## I.

**I**ncense, which we cal Frankinsence, it dryeth and incarnateth : see *Olibanum*.

*Ipericon*, which we cal Saint Johns woort, expelleth moisture, and healeth burnings.

*Irios Florentina*, which wee cal Flower-de-luce, especially the roote, it warmeth, ripeneth, and cleanseth, and is good for the cough, and is hot and dry in the third degree.

*Irride Illyrica* : see *Helpine*.

*Iris* is a roote that is hot and dry : it cleanseth and ripeneth, and is good against colds, and purgeth ulcers.

*Iasquiani*, which we cal Henbane, is cold in the fourth degree : it astonieth and benumbeth.

*Juniper* is hot and dry in the third degree, the berries are good for the Stomacke, Lungs, Liver, and Kidneyes, cureth all coughes, gripings, and Windiness of the belly, and provoketh urine, is good against all venome, the infection of the plague, and kils wormes.

*Ligustum*





## L.

**L** *Igustum*, which wee call Lovage, is hot and dry in the third degree: it expelleth wind, especially the seed and roote.

*Lapathum*, which we call a Docke, is cold and moist, and it mollifieth.

*Lauri*, which we call Laurell, or Bayes, are hot and dry, and they cleanse and mundifie.

*Lentisco* is a gumme that is like Masticke; it is dry in the second degree, and moderately bindeth: it is bitter in taste, and ever Greene.

*Linosa*, which we call flaxe or Line, the seed thereof is hot and dry, and it ripeneth and mollifieth tumours.

*Lee* is hot and dry in the fourth degree: it is very adustive, cleansing, and piercing.

*Lithargirio*, of which there are two kinds, the one of the colour of gold, the other of silver: it is very dry, it bindeth, softneth, incarnateth, cooleth, and closeth up, and of these two, that which is like gold is the best.

*Lolium*, which we call Cockle, is hot and dry in the third degree, and dissolveth much.

*Lumache*, which we call house-snailes without shels, doe conglutinate very much.



## M.

**M** *Alua* is cold and moist, it stoppeth, softneth, and mitigateth paine.

*Maluaviscus* is very dry, it softneth, looseneth, and incarnateth.

*Mace* is dry in the third degree, without heate, and onely bindeth.

*Manna* is of equall temper, hot, and dry; it openeth, it mollifieth and incarnateth.

*Mariaton* or *Martiaton*, is a hot unguent against all cold humours: it helpeth the grieve of sinewes, purgeth cold watry matters, and ripeneth tumours.

*Marrobio*, which we call Hore-hound, of which there are two kinds, the white and the blacke; but the white is the better: it is hot in the second, and dry in the third degree; it helpeth obstructions in the Liver, openeth and purgeth, and is good against colds, or for sores.

*Masticke* is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree: it draweth and dryeth, bindeth and softneth, and is good against old cold.

*Medulla*, which we call Marrow, of what kind soever, is cold and moist, and mollifieth Ulcers; now the best marrow is that of a Hart, or old Stagge, the next that of a Calfe, the next that of a Sheepe, and the last that of a Goate.

*Mel*, which we commonly call Honey, is hot and dry



dry in the second degree, it cleanseth the stomacke and entrailes, stoppeth humours, and incarnateth Wounds.

*Melissa*, which wee call Balmie; is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree; it cleanseth and conglutinateth.

*Mentha*, which wee call Mints, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree, of which the wilde Minte is the best; it killeth wormes, it bindeth, it dissolveth, and is good for the stomacke, or a cold Liver.

*Minio*, which wee call red Lead, is cold and dry and good against swellings.

*Myrre* or *Myrrha*, is a soveraigne gumme; it is hot and dry in the second degree; it conglutinateth, bindeth, and cleanseth wounds, is good against all colds, killeth wormes, and helpeth the puficke: for though it doth cleanse much, yet it doth not exasperate the Arteries; also it doth incarnate.

*Morcosita*, or *Marcasita*, is hot and dry, it comforteth, bindeth, and melteth humours.

*Mertilla* is the fruit of the Mertle tree, it is dry in the third degree, it doth binde good, and loosen evil humours.

*Morcas*, which wee call the Mulberry, the unripe is cold and dry, in the second degree the barke: but chiefly the roote is hot and dry in the third degree, it doth cleanse, purge, and binde; the roote thereof killeth wormes, and the gumme thereof doth loosen, and the juyce of the berry doth heale cankers, or sore mouthes.

*Narcissi*

character his qualities according to the nature of the



from, it doth assist and provoke sleep.

Opoponax is a gumme that is hot in the third and

**N**arcissiradix, which we call the root of a white Daffadil, or else prim-rose pearlesse, is dry, it cleanseth and draweth, and healeth wounds.

**Nardiradix**, which we call Setwall, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree, it bindeth, and

**Spica Nardo** provoketh urine.

**Nasturtio** is hot and dry in the fourth Degree, it burneth, it draweth and melteeth, and killeth worms: see **Agrecum**, which we call Cresses.

**Nigilla**, which we call Git, is hot and dry in the third Degree, it stayeth winde, killeth wormes, and looseth, yet to give too great a quantity, is dangerous.

**Nitro** is of the same nature that Salt-peter is, and it mundifieth exceedingly.



O.

**O**libanum is a gumme, it is hot and dry in the second Degree, it warmeth, bindeth, closeth wounds, and incarnateth.

**Oyle of Olives** is of a very temperate nature, and changeth



changeth his qualities according to the nature of the simples which are mixt with him.

*Opium* is cold and dry in the fourth degree, and is a liquor made of Poppy, dried and mixt with Saffron, it doth astonish and provoke sleepe.

*Opoponaxe* is a gumme that is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: it softeneth and stayeth humours; is good against all colds: see *Rapum*, *Galbanum*, *Bidellium*, and *Sagarenum*.

*Orpimento* is a kinde of Metall, of which the artificiall is called Arsnicke, is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second, it bindeth, corrodeeth, burneth, and fretteth, and is a corrosive.

*Origano*, which we call Wild Marjoram, or Pennyryall, is hot and dry in the third degree; it taketh away stoppings, and is good for coughes.

*Orobis*, which we call fitches, are hot in the first, and dry in the second degree, they doe open and cleanse.

*Orzo*, which we call Barley, is cold and dry in the first degree; it ripeneth and cleanseth.

*Ortica*, which we call Nettles, are hot and dry: they are biting, and wholesome for the lungs, or for sores.

*Oria*, which we call Egges, the white is cold, and the yolke is hot, and doth incarnate.



*Panacea,*



**P***anacea* is that hearbe whose fruite wee call *Oponax*.

*Panico* is a graine which wee call *Panicke*, it is cold and dry, and bindeth.

*Papaver*, which we call *Poppy*, the seedesthereof are white, and hot in the fourth degree: see *Opium*.

*Pastinache*, which we cal *Parfnips*, are hot, and do provoke urine.

*Pece*, which we commonly cal *Pitch*, is hot and dry in the second degree, draweth, dryeth, and ripeneth.

*Pece liquida*, which we call *Tarre*, is hot and dry in the second degree, is good against colds, or evill humours gathered together in the brest, and draweth wounds.

*Pece Rasina*, which we cal *Rozen*, or *Pitch of Greece*, it draweth, healeth, and incarnateth.

*Pece Rasina*, & *liquida*, which wee call *Turpentine*, it doth draw, skin, incarnate, and conglutinate things together.

*Pepper* is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it is both attractive and mundificative, and good for al diseases of the breast or Lungs.



*Peacheas* are cold and moyst in the second degree: they bind and stirre up wormes.

*Petasites*, which we call Butter-burre, is dry in the third degree.

*Petroleum* is a certaine oyle made of Salt-peter and *Bitumen*, it is hot and dry in the second degree: it healeth wounds, and comforteth weake members.

*Petroselinum*, which we call Parsley, or stone Parsley, is, and especially his feede, hot and dry in the third degree: it stayes winde, openeth, and provoketh urine.

*Philonium*, of which there are two kinds, *Philonium Romanum*, and *Philonium Persicum*, are excellent Compositions, and most comfortable after the losse of blood.

*Poligono*, which we call Knot-grasse, is cold in the second degree, and keepeth backe humours.

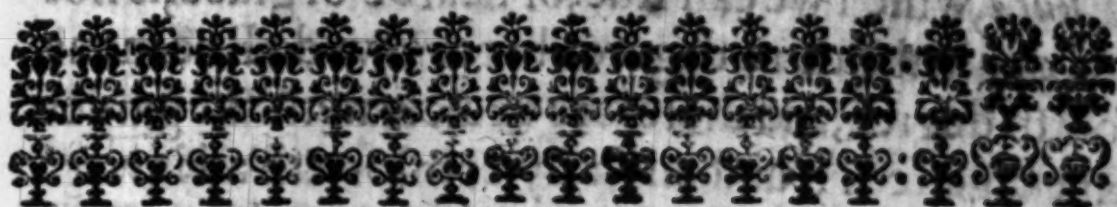
*Plantago*, which we call Plantaine, is cold and dry in the third degree: it comforteth, dryeth, bindeth, and incarnateth wounds.

*Parri*, which we call Leekes, Scallions, or Onions, are hot and dry, and doe extenuate obstructions, and raise and loosen all evill humours in the body.

*Pucee*, or *Porrus*, is hot in the second degree, and is good for all cold watrish stomacks.

*Pulegium*, which we call Penyrill, is hot and dry in the third degree: it doth vehemently dry in moisture, warmeth, ripeneth, and is good for the Lungs: see *Origono*.

*Punicum Malum*, which we call Pomegranate, is cold and dry: it bindeth, provoketh urine, and is good for the stomacke.



R.

**R**afano, or Raphanus, which we call Radish, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: they comfort, and are good for old colds; but especially they provoke urine.

Resina, which we call Rozen, is hot and dry in the second degree, it stoppeth, softneth, cleanseth, draweth, and purgeth wounds, and is good against cold causes.

Resalgar: se Risigalla.

Rogoretio, or Rigolitio, which we call Lycoras, is temperate in heate, and moystneth, and ripneth, and is good for heate in the stomacke, or Liver, and profitable against wounds.

Risigallo is a Composition of Sulphure, Orpiment, and unsleckt lime; and is a most strong corrosive.

Rosaflos, which wee call rose leaves, or rose cakes, are dry binding.

Rubra, which we call Madder, is dry: it comforteth and incarnateth, the roote thereof provoketh urine, and is good for the yellowes.

Ruberb, or Rubarb is hot and dry in the second degree: it purgeth choler and flegme, and putteth away stoppings.



*Ruca*, which we call Rue, or hearbe of grace, is hot and dry in the third degree: but the wilde Rue in the fourth degree, and therefore exulcerateth the garden Rue digesteth, and mightily comforteth all inward inflammation, it ripeneth, and dryeth, and expelleth Winde.



*Savina*, which we commonly call Savine, is hot and dry in the third degree: it openeth, dissolveth, dryeth mightily, and is most soveraigne against Wormes.

*Sacaro* is hot and moyst, and very comfortable.

*Sagapenum*: see *Serapino*.

*Sagina*, or *Saggina*, or *Sorgo*, of some called *Panicum Indicum*, is onely hot and dry.

*Salo*, which wee call salt, is hot and dry in the second degree and cleanseth.

*Salamora*, which we cal brine, or water and salt, is of the same nature that salt is.

*Sal-armoniacke* is hot and dry in the fourth degree, and it cleanseth.

*Salee*, which we cal Sallowes, or willow, it bindeth and dryeth vehemently.

*Salgemma* is a kind of Salt which is hot and dry, it cleanseth and mundifieth.

*Salnitro*

*Salnitro*, some use for this Salt-peter, it is hot and dry, and evaporateth: it comforteth sinewes, and taketh away tyring or wearinesse.

*Salvia*, which we call Sage, is hot and dry in the second degree; it cleanseth and bindeth, it is good for wounds or exulceration of the lungs.

*Sambucus*, which we call Elder-tree, or Walwoort, that is like Elder-tree, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first, it dryeth, digesteth, and conglutinateth.

*Sandolo*, which we call Saunders, are cold and dry in the second degree, and drive backe humours.

*Sandolo Rosso*, or *Sandolo Bianca*, which we call red sand, or white sand, are hot and dry, and bring on skinne.

*Sanguis draconis*, see *Cinaber*; yet some take it for the red dock, or red patience, but it is not so.

*Sapone*, which we call Sope, is hot, it draweth, mollifieth, dryeth, cleanseth, and purgeth.

*Sassifragia*, which we call Saxifrage, is hot, dry, and binding.

*Scabioso*, which we call Scallions, is hot and dry in the second degree: they do regenerate, and are good for scabbes, for the Lungs, or for the sorenesse in the brest.

*Scamonicum*, which is the juyce of a root, is hot in the third degree: it digesteth and purgeth choler, but must never be given inwardly, unlesse it be corrected.

*Scariola*, which we call Endive, is cold and dry, and binding.

*Scarcocollo* is a gumme of the kind of *Euforbium*,



it is hot and dry in the second degree, it cleanseth, incarnateth, and comforteth wounds.

*Sea onions* is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree: it ripeneth and expel eth humours, it hindereth putrifaction, and preserveth health.

*Semola*, which we call yong Coleworts, are hot and dry in the first degree.

*Semper vive*, which we call Housleek, and some call stone crop, is cold in the third, and dry in the second degree; it is good for burnings, frettings, inflammations of ulcers, it driveth back humours, cooleth, & blindeth.

*Seva delce* is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree: it cleanseth and openeth.

*Serapino* is a gumme of *Ferula*, it is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: it mollifieth, loosneth, and is good for colds.

*Serpillo*, which we call wilde running Bettony, or Time, smelling like Marjoram, is hot and dry in the third degree.

*Sinapi*, which we call Mustard, is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it draweth and resolveth, and is good for scurfes, or wilde scabbes.

*Solatro*, which we call Night-shade, is cold in the third degree.

*Sulphure vive*, which we call Brimstone, is hot and dry in the third degree, it draweth, disperseth humours, and killeth wormes.

*Sparaci*, which we call *Asparagus*, is without manifest heat or cold.

*Spelta*, which we call Beere Barley, is a graine lesse then Wheat, and shorter then Rye, but not so blacke, is coole and cleansing.

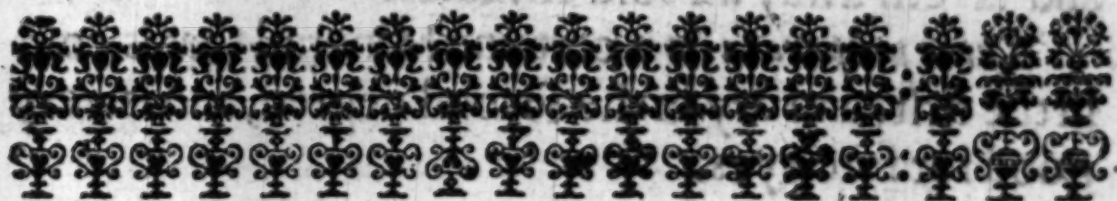
*Spiga*,

*Spiga*, or *Spica*, which we call Lavender, is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree, it cleanseth; and is good for the head, especially the conserve, which is very comfortable.

*Squille* is that which we call the Sea onion: see Sea onion.

*Stecados* which we call French Lavender, is hot and dry.

*Storax*, or *Stirax* is a sweete Gumme which is hot and dry, it correcteth, softneth, and is good for coughes, or any sicknesse in the head.



## T.

**T** *Artaro*, which we call *Tartar*, is the excrements of Wine, which sticke to the vessel, it is hot and dry in the third degree: and onely cleanseth.

*Tartaruch*, which we call Snailshells, are of the same nature that Snailshells without shells are.

*Tasso barbarosso*, which we call Yew, is of nature poyson.

*Turpentine* is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree: it draweth, cleanseth, skinneth, and comforteth.

*Thymum*, which we call Time, is hot and dry in the third degree, and expelleth flegme.

*Thuris Lacrima*, which we call Frankincense, is hot



hot in the second, and dry in the first degree : see *Olibanum*.

*Thuris cortex* is dry in the second degree, and bindeth.

*Thuris succulis* is hot and dry in the third Degree.

*Tithimalis*, which we call Spurge, or milke-thistle, is hot and dry in the fourth Degree ; it cleanseth and purgeth fleame and choler, and is good for old sores or fistulaes.

*Trifora magna* is a certaine composition which will provoke sweate, helpeth grieve in the stomach, and taketh away all cold Rhumes.

*Tutia preparata* is a certaine Minerall that is cold in the first, and dry in the second degree, and is very good for sore eyes.



V.

**V** *Eratro* : see *Ellebro*.

*Verbena*, which wee call Vervin, is hot and dry, it comforteth and mundifieth.

*Verderame*, which we call Verdigrease, is hot and dry in the third degree, and is a corrosive that eateth away dead flesh.

*Vermi*, which we call Wormes, doe conglutinate and comfort sinewes.

*Verze* is hot and dry : see *Brasica*.

*Vetro*,

*Vetro*, which we call Glasse, is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree, and it cleanseth.

*Vinacceæ*, which we call the kirkels of Grapes, are dry.

*Virga pastoris*, which we call Wild Tassil, is cold in the third, and dry in the first degree, it comforteth and bindeth.

*Vischio*, which we call Lime, is hot in the fourth Degree: it dryeth and skinneth, but being mixed with any liquid stuffe, it burneth, and is corrosive.

*Vitalia* or *vitis alba*, which we call Briony, is hot, chiefly the roote, it cleanseth and killeth scabs, it dryeth, it draweth, mollifieth, and dissolveth.

*Vitelli*, which we call the yolkes of any egges, are hot, and do strengthen and incarnate.

*Vitrioll*, which we call Copporas, is of two kinds, that is, *Vitriolo Romanum*, which wee call greene Copporas, and *Vitriolo album*, which wee call white Copporas; they both are hot and dry, but the white is much the stronger: they take away scurfes, and kill scabbes.

*Vitriola Calcanthum* is reckoned amongst mettals, and is a kinde of inky earth: it dryeth and fretteth.

*Vitriolo herba*, is an hearbe that groweth on the Wall, and is taken for *Pellitory* of the Wall: see *Helxin*.

*Vrtica*, which we call Nettles, are hot and dry, and stop and cleanse humours, and are good for sores.





## Z.

**Z** *Afarano*, which we call Saffron, is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree; it comforteth and expelleth all inward poyson, and incarnateth wounds.

*Zebulus*: see *Ziziphe*.

*Zeutonico*, which we call worm-seed, is hot and dry.

*Zenzero*, which we call Ginger, is of the nature of pepper, and hath the strength of long Pepper; it maintaineth naturall heate, and is good for cold stomacks.

*Ziziphet* taketh away coughes, and helpeth the shortnesse of breath.

*Zucche*, which we call Gourds, are cold and moist in the second degree, and it alayeth all manner of inflammations or hot swellings.



## CHAP. CXCVI.

*Certaine principles touching Simples.*

**Y** Ou shal understand that touching simples, some are onely to ease paine, as Lin-seed, Camomile, soft grease, suet of all sorts, or any other oyle that is hot in the first degree; and whensoever any of these  
Simples

Simples are compounded with their like, the medicine is called *Anodina* or *Lynogs*.

There are other simples which are astonying, benumbing, or bringing a sleepe, as *Opium*, *Mandrake*, *Poppy*, *Hemlocke*, and such like, which are grosse and cold in the fourth degree, and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, then the medicine is amongst Leaches, called *Narcotica*.

The third sort of simples are such as incarnate, or breed flesh, as *Frankinsence*, *Flower*, *Saffron*, yolkes of Egges, and such like, which are hot in the second Degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, then the medicine is called *Sarcotica*.

The fourth sort of simples, are corroding, fretting, or burning, as *Arsnicke*, *Resigallo*, *Mercury*, *Lime*, and such like, which are hot in the fourth Degree; and whensoever they are applyed simple or compound, then the medicine is called *Corrosive*.

The fift sort of simples are those which bee called mollifying, and bee foure in number: That is, greene *Mallows*, white *Mallows*, *Violets*, and *Brankurfin*.

The last sort of simples, are those which are called *Cordials*, and are three in number: that is to say, *Violets*, and *Buglosse* of both kinds.

And thus much touching the nature, use, propriety, and operation of simples.





## CHAP. CXCVII.

*Of Weights and Measures, and how to know them  
by their Characters.*

**A**lbe I have in this Worke set downe your Waights and Measures in such plaine English, that every one may understand them, yet for as much as the more curious doe set downe many excellent receits under obscure Characters, I thinke it good heere to acquaint you with them all, that when you finde any such, you may not be ignorant in the understanding of them.

Know then that the least of all waights is a graine, which is the waight either of a Barley corne, or of a Pepper-corne, and his character is *G.* or *Gr.*

*Siliqua* is foure graines, and his character is *f.*

An English halfe-penny is five graines, and his character is *ob.*

A Scruple is tenne Graines, and his character is *℞.*

A Dramme is three scruples, or the eighth part of an ounce, and his character is *℥.*

A Roman penny is the same that a Dramme is, and his character is *X.*

An ounce is the twelfth part of a pound, which is twenty foure scruples, and foure hundred and eighty graines, and his character is *℥.*

The character of halfe an ounce is *℥.*





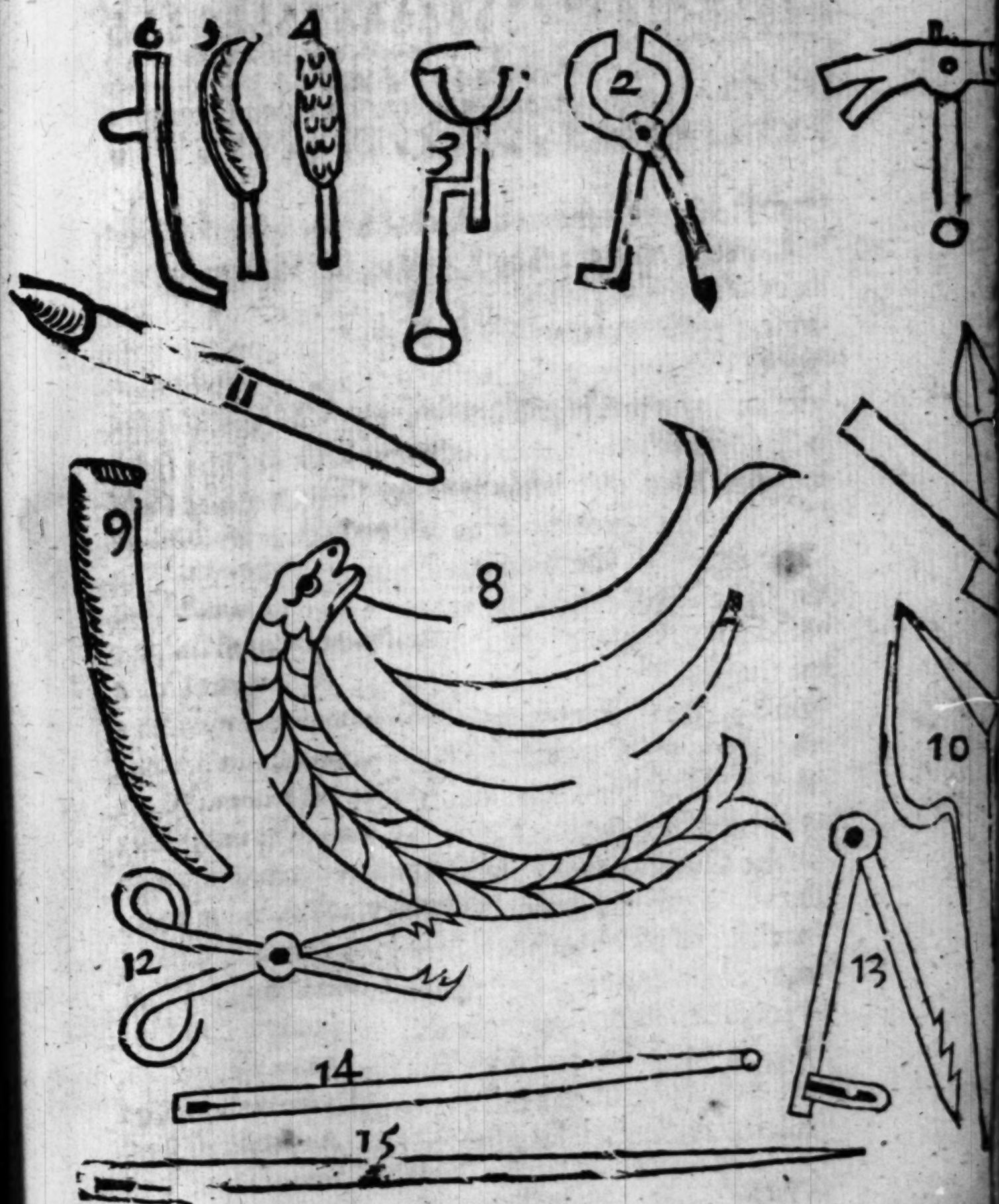


## CHAP. CXCVIII.

*The Farriers Instruments expounded, with  
their names and properties.*

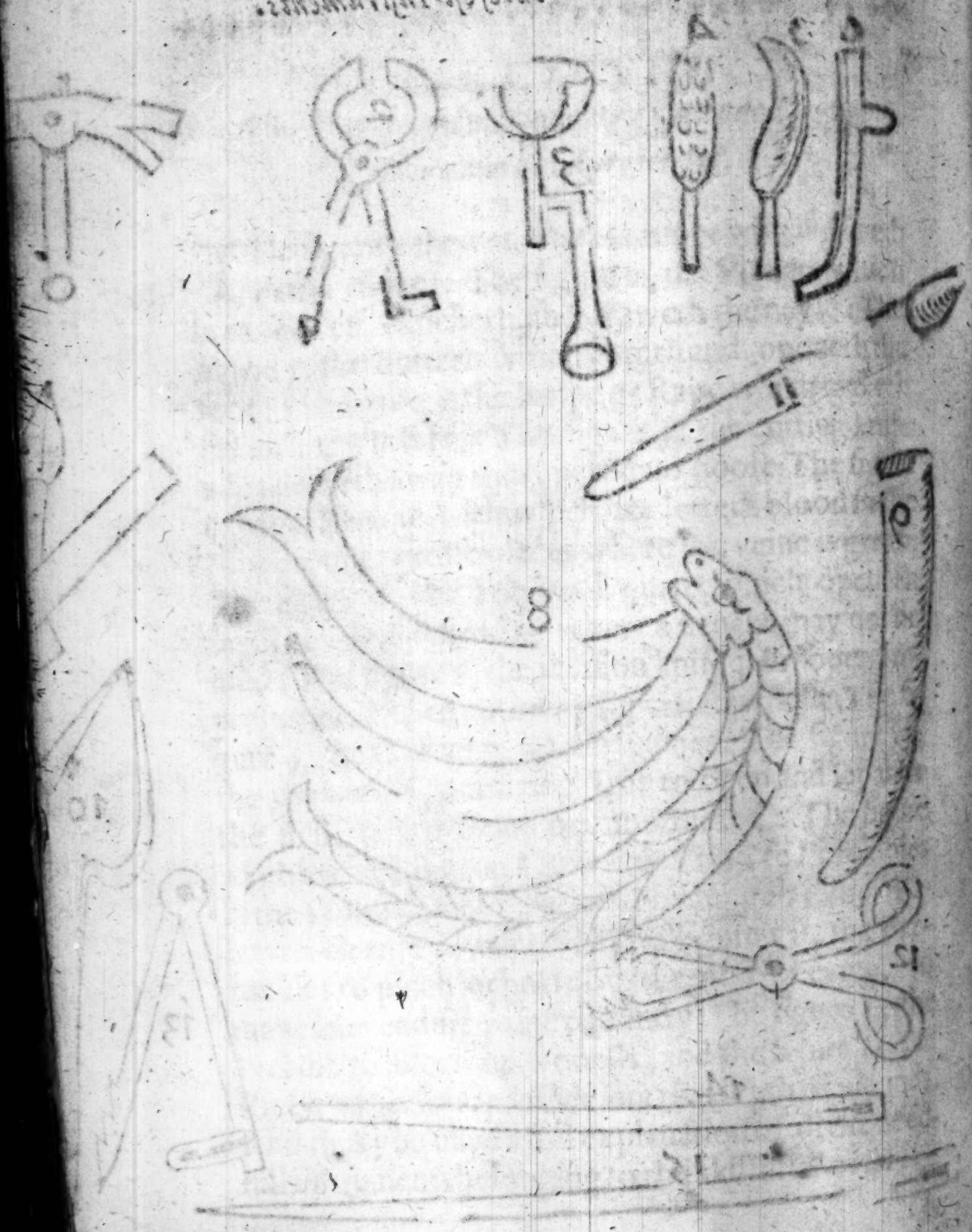
**T**He figure 1 sheweth the Hammer which driveth in the nayle : The figure 2, the Pincers which breaketh off, clincheth, and draweth the nayle : The figure 3, the Butteris which pareth and openeth the foot : The figure 4, the Raspe or Rape which maketh smooth the hooft : The figure 5, the cutting knife which taketh away the superfluous hooft : The figure 6, the Fleame with which hee letteth blood in the Necke, or in grosse places where the veine is great : The figure 7, the Farriers Launcet which openeth small veines and thrids, where a stroake may not be used : The figure 8, the incision knife, to open Impostumes, and to cut away superfluous flesh : The figure 9, the Cornet or take up veines : The figure 10, the drawing Cauterizing Iron to open and separate the flesh either sound or impostumed : The figure 11, the round Button Cauterizing iron to bore holes in the skin and sweld places : The figure 12, the Mullet to cleanse a wound : The figure 13, the Barnackles to pinch an horse by the nose or eares, to make him endure paine patiently : The figure 14, the Needle to steech up wounds ; and the figure 15, the Probe to search and finde out the depth of wounds. And thus you have a full explanation of all the needfull instruments belonging to the skilfull Farrier.

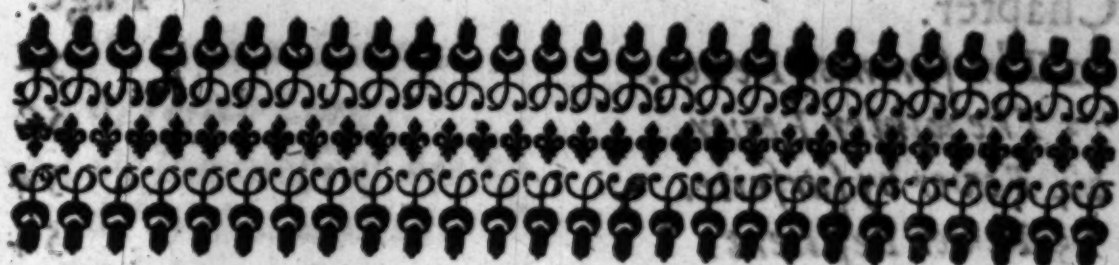
*The*

*The Farriers chieft Instruments.*



The Farriers chief Instruments.





# THE TABLE OF THE

## first Booke containyng all

### Cures Physicall.

Chapter.	Page.
<b>H</b> E Composition of horses bodies.	1
2 Of Elements.	2
3 Of Temperaments.	8
4 Humours.	10
5 Of members.	13
6 Of Powers.	15
7 Of actions or operations.	16
8 Of Spirits.	18
9 Of things not naturall.	20
10 Of Complexions.	25
11 Of inward sicknesses.	28
12. Signes of sicknesses.	30
13 Observations in Physicking.	36
14 Of urine and excrements.	38
15 Of Fevers.	42
16 The Quotidian.	46
17 The Tertian.	47
18 The Quartan.	48
19 The Continuall.	49
20 The Hetique.	50
21 The Autumne Fever.	52



## The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
22 <i>The summer Fever.</i>	51
23 <i>The winter Fever.</i>	52
24 <i>Fever by surfeite.</i>	54
25 <i>Fever Pestilent.</i>	54
26 <i>Of the Plague.</i>	56
27 <i>Fever accidentall.</i>	58
28 <i>One general approved cure for al Fevers.</i>	59
29 <i>Diseases in the head.</i>	60
30 <i>Of Head-ache.</i>	61
31 <i>Of Frenzie.</i>	62
32 <i>Of the sleeping evill.</i>	64
33 <i>A horse taken.</i>	65
34 <i>Of the Staggers.</i>	67
35 <i>Of the falling evil.</i>	70
36 <i>Of the Night-mare.</i>	72
37 <i>Of the Palsie.</i>	74
38 <i>Of the generall Cramp.</i>	76
39 <i>Of the Cold.</i>	78
40 <i>How to take away any cold.</i>	80
41 <i>The best of all medicines for the cold.</i>	82
42 <i>Of Hide-bound.</i>	82
43 <i>Of the Glaunders.</i>	83
44 <i>Two certaine cures for the Glaunders.</i>	85
45 <i>Of the mourning of the Chine.</i>	92
46 <i>A certaine approved medicine for the mourning of the Chine.</i>	95
47 <i>Of the Cough.</i>	96
48 <i>Of the wet Cough.</i>	98
49 <i>Of the dry cough.</i>	100
50 <i>Two approved cures for any cold or cough.</i>	104
51 <i>The best of medicines for any dry cough.</i>	105
	52 of

## The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
52 Of broken Lungs.	105
53 Of rotten Lungs.	107
54 Of shortnesse of breath.	108
55 Of broken winded.	111
56 Of the Consumption.	115
57 Consumption of the flesh.	117
58 To make a horse fat.	118
59 The mirrour and master of al medicines to fatten an horse.	122
60 Of the breast paine.	124
61 Of the Anticor, or heart-sicknesse.	125
62 Of tyred horses.	128
63 Of loathing of meate.	133
64 Of casting out drinke.	135
65 Of glut of provender.	136
66 Of foundring in the body.	138
67 Of the hungry evill.	141
68 Of inflammation in the Liver.	142
69 Of obstructions in the Liver.	144
70 Consumption of the Liver.	147
71 Of diseases in the Gall.	149
72 Diseases in the spleene.	150
73 Of the Yellowes.	152
74 Of the Dropsie.	157
75 Of the Cholicke.	160
76 Of the Belly-ake.	161
77 Of Costivenesse.	162
78 Of the Laxe.	164
79 Of the bloody fluxe.	166
80 Falling of the fundament.	168
81 Of Bots and Wormes.	169
82 Of paine in the Kidneyes.	174



## The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
83 Of the Strangurie.	176
84 Of the Paine-pisse.	177
85 Of the Stone.	178
86 Of pissing blood.	181
87 Of the Colt evill.	181
88 Of the mattering of the yard.	184
89 Of the shedding the seed.	185
90 Falling of the yard.	186
91 Barrennesse of Mares.	187
92 Consumption in Mares.	188
93 Rage of love in Mares.	189
94 Of casting of Foales.	190
95 Of hardnesse in foaling.	190
96 Of making Mares cast their foales.	191
97 Drinking of Horse-leaches.	192
98 Eating of Hens Dung.	192
99 Of the suppositary.	193
100 Of Glisters.	196
101 Of Purgations.	200
102 An excellent and approved scawring.	207
103 Of neesing or fumes.	208
104 Of frictions and bathes.	211
105 Generall drenches.	211
106 To make Diapente.	214
107 A famous drench and oyntment.	215
108 Of the oyle of Oates.	216
109 Briefe observations, &c.	218
110 Principles in foales and horses.	225
111 Observations in Mares.	226
112 Observations in buying a horse.	228
113 Notes concerning some simples	230
	The

THE TABLE OF THE  
second Booke containing all  
Cures Chirurgicall.

Chapter.	Page.
<b>P</b> Proportions of members.	235
2 Of the veines.	237
2 The Anatomy of veines.	239
3 Of the sinewes.	241
3 The Anatomy of sinewes.	243
4 Of all the Bones.	244
4 The Anatomy of bones.	245
5 Of letting blood.	246
6 Of outward Sorranes.	253
7 Of weeping eyes.	256
8 Of blood-shotten eyes.	258
9 Dimnesse of sight.	259
10 A certaine and approved medicine for any Blind- nesse, &c.	260
11 Another to the same effect.	261
12 Pearle, Pin, or Web.	262
13 An infallible cure for any Pin, Pearle, or Web.	263
14 Of the Haw.	265
15 Of Moone eyes.	267
16 Canker in the eye.	269
17 Stripe in the eye.	270
18 Wart in the eye.	271
19 Inflammation in the eye.	272
20 Impostume in the eye.	273



## The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
21 The Pole-evill.	274
22 A rare and certaine cure for the Pole-evill.	278
23 Of leaved eares	278
24 Of the Vives.	280
25 A rare & certaine approved cure for the vives.	283
26 Another excellent cure for the Vives.	283
27 Of the Strangle.	284
28 Canker in the nose.	286
29 Bleeding at the nose.	288
30 Bloody rifts.	290
31 The Gigges.	290
32 Of the Lampasse.	292
33 Of the Camerce.	293
34 Canker in the mouth.	294
35 Heate in the mouth.	296
36 The tongue hurt.	297
37 Of the Barbes.	297
38 Paine in the teeth, and of wolfe teeth.	298
39 Cricke in the necke.	301
40 Wens in the necke.	303
41 Swelling after blood letting.	305
42 To stanch blood.	306
43 Falling of the crest.	307
44 A certaine approved way to raise the Crest.	309
45 Mainginesse in the Maime.	311
46 Of shedding the haire.	312
47 Griefe in the Withers.	312
48 Any galled backe.	316
49 Canker in the Withers.	320
50 Of the sitfast.	321

## The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
51 Wens below the saddle.	322
52 Navell gall.	323
53 Swaying of the backe.	325
54 Weaknesse in the backe.	326
55 Swelling of the Cods.	327
56 Of burstnesse, or incording.	330
57 Botch in the Groyne.	332
58 A certaine approved cure for the Botch.	333
59 Itch in the tayle.	333
60 Of the general scab.	335
61 Two most excellent and approved cures for the scabs.	338
62 Of halting before.	340
63 Of halting behinde.	344
64 Of hidden griefes.	345
65 Of griefe in the shoulder.	346
66 Wrench in the shoulder.	348
67 Wrench in the nether ioynt.	351
68 Splinting the shoulder.	352
69 Shoulder pight.	353
70 A certaine cure for any desperate straine in the shoulder, &c.	355
71 Swelling of the fore-legs.	356
72 Foundring in the feete.	358
73 Of the splent.	365
74 An approved and certaine cure for any splent.	370
75 Of the Serew.	370
76 Of the Mallander.	371
77 Of an upper Attaint.	374
78 An approved medicine for any new straine.	376



## The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
79 A neather attaint.	376
80 An over-reach on the heele.	377
81 The Mellet.	378
82 False quarters.	379
83 An horse hipped.	380
84 Of stifling.	383
85 Bone-spaven.	385
86 Blood-spaven.	390
87 An approved cure for any blood-spaven whatso- ever.	392
88 Of the Sell.	393
89 Of the hough-bone.	393
90 Of the Curbe.	394
91 Of the paines.	396
92 The Mules.	401
93 Of Wind-gats.	402
94 Straine in the pastorne.	406
95 To helpe any halting.	407
96 Three rare and approved medicines to cure any strayne or swelling whatsoever.	408
97 Another approved cure for any straine.	412
98 Of enterfearing.	412
99 The shackle-gall.	413
100 Casting in the halter.	413
101 The scratches.	415
102 A certaine and approved cure for the scratch- es.	418
103 Of the ring-bone.	419
104 Hurts on the cronet.	421
105 A certaine approved cure for any hurt on the Cronet.	422

# The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
106 The crowne scab.	423
107 The Quitter-bone.	424
108 Of gravelling.	426
109 Of surbaiting.	428
110 Pricke in the soale.	429
111 To draw out a stub.	431
111 The Figge.	432
112 A Retraite.	433
113 Of cloying.	435
114 Observations for the hooves.	437
115 Loosening the hoove.	440
116 Casting the hoove.	442
117 Of hoove-bound.	443
118 The running Frush.	445
119 An approved and certaine cure for the running Frush.	447
120 Of evill hooves.	448
121 Of brittle hooves.	448
122 To preserve hooves.	449
123 Hurts on the hooves.	451
124 To soften hooves.	451
125 To harden hooves.	452
126 Of the Mat long.	452
127 To skinne a sore foot.	453
128 Of gourded legges.	453
129 A most certaine and approved cure for gourded legges.	455
130 Of the Farcy.	457
131 Of the Canker.	469
132 Of the Fistula.	472
133 A rare and approved cure for any fistula.	479
	134 Of



# The Table.

Chapter.	Page
134 Of the Anbury.	479
135 of the Cords.	480
136 of the String-halt.	481
137 of Spur-gall.	482
138 of wounds in generall.	482
139 Hurts with arrows.	487
140 of healing old sores.	487
141 A certaine and approved cure for any old sore.	488
142 of bruifings or swellings.	489
143 of Impostumes.	492
144 of cold impostumes.	493
145 of hot impostumes.	494
146 of the tetter.	495
147 of sinewes cut, &c.	495
148 of fretting with the girths.	496
149 of blisters.	497
150 To take away bones, &c.	498
151 To eat dead flesh.	499
152 of knots in ioynts.	502
153 Wounds made with Gun-powder.	503
154 of burning with Lime.	505
155 Biting of a mad dog.	506
156 Hurts with a Boares tuskes.	507
157 The stinging of serpents.	507
158 of Lice.	508
159 Defence from flies.	509
160 of bones broken.	510
161 Bones out of ioynt.	513
162 To dry up humour.	513
163 To dry superfluous moisture.	515
164 To	

## The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
164 To dry any swelling.	515
165 To dissolve humours.	516
166 To mollifie hardnesse.	516
167 To harden softnesse.	517
168 to Conglutinate.	518
169 to mundifie.	518
170 Repercussive medicines.	519
171 Of burning compositions.	519
172 For all manner of hurts.	520
173 Powder of honey and lime.	522
174 the taking up of veines.	523
175 Of cauterizing.	526
176 Cauterize actuall.	527
177 Cauterize Potentiall.	532
178 Of Rowelling.	534
179 To geld Horses.	537
180 To make Curtals.	539
181 To make a white Starre.	541
182 To make a blacke Starre.	545
183 To make a red Star.	546
184 To make haire to come very soone.	546
185 to make haire smoot h and fine.	548
186 How to take off haire in any part of a horse.	549
187 How to cast and overthrow a Horse.	549
188 How to know the age of a Horse.	550
189 How to make an old horse seeme young.	552
190 How to make a horse that he shall not neigh, either in company, or when he is ridden.	553
191 How to make a Horse exceeding quicke and nimble of the spurte.	554

192 How



## The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
192 How to make a Horse that tires, or is restive, to goe forward.	555
193 Other most excellent and approved wayes to preserve an horse from tiring, never disclosed till now.	555
194 How to make a Horse to follow his Master, and to finde him out, and challenge him amongst never so many people.	557
195 The nature and speciall qualities of all the Simples that are spoken of in this whole Worke, set downe in the manner of Alphabet.	558
196 Certaine principles touching Simples.	596
197 Of Weights and measures, and how to know them by their Characters.	598
198 The Farriers instruments expounded, with their names and properties.	600

FINIS.



